

**HITACHI**

PART NO. EM1P1-1-3

# Operator's Manual

# ZAXIS

## 70-3

## 70LC-3

## 75US-3

## 80LCK-3

## 85USB-3

# Hydraulic Excavator

ZX70-3 · 70LC-3 · 75US-3 · 80LCK-3 · 85USB-3 HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR OPERATOR'S MANUAL

 Hitachi Construction Machinery Co., Ltd.

URL:<http://www.hitachi-c-m.com>



Recycle This book is printed on recycled paper.

PRINTED IN JAPAN (K) 2012, 06

EM1P1-1-3

Serial No.	
ZX70-3	080000 and up
ZX70LC-3	080001 and up
ZX75US-3	060001 and up
ZX80LCK-3	080001 and up
ZX85USB-3	080001 and up

## INTRODUCTION

---

**Read this manual** carefully to learn how to operate and service your machine correctly. Failure to do so could result in personal injury or machine damage.

**This standard specification machine** can be operated under the following conditions without being modified.  
Atmospheric Temperature: -20 °C to 40 °C (-4 °F to 104 °F)  
Altitude: 0 m to 2000 m (0 ft to 6600 ft)

In case the machine is used under conditions other than described above, consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

**This manual should be considered** a permanent part of your machine and should remain with the machine when you sell it.

**This machine is of metric** design. Measurements in this manual are metric. Use only metric hardware and tools as specified.

**Right-hand and left-hand** sides are determined by facing in the direction of forward travel.

**Write product identification numbers** in the Machine Numbers section. Accurately record all the numbers to help in tracing the machine should it be stolen. Your dealer also needs these numbers when you order parts. If this manual is kept on the machine, also file the identification numbers in a secure place off the machine.

Use only diesel fuel with quality specified in JIS K-2204, EN-590, ASTM D-975, GOST R52368 or GB252. Failure to use diesel fuel with quality as specified above may allow the engine to emit exhaust gas which cleanliness can not conform to the requests in various relevant regulations. In addition, serious damage to the engine may result. Consult with your nearest Hitachi dealer for detailed information.

**Warranty** is provided as a part of Hitachi's support program for customers who operate and maintain their equipment as described in this manual. The warranty is explained on the warranty certificate which you should have received from your dealer.

This warranty provides you the assurance that Hitachi will back its products where defects appear within the warranty period. In some circumstances, Hitachi also provides field improvements, often without charge to the customer, even if the product is out of warranty.

**Should the equipment be abused, or modified to change its performance beyond the original factory specifications, the warranty will become void and field improvements may be denied.**

Setting fuel delivery above specifications or otherwise overpowering machines will result in such action.

Only qualified, experienced operators officially licensed (according to local law) should be allowed to operate the machine. Moreover, only officially licensed personnel should be allowed to inspect and service the machine.

**PRIOR TO OPERATING THIS MACHINE, INCLUDING COMMUNICATION SYSTEM, IN A COUNTRY OTHER THAN A COUNTRY OF ITS INTENDED USE, IT MAY BE NECESSARY TO MAKE MODIFICATIONS TO IT SO THAT IT COMPLIES WITH THE LOCAL REGULATORY STANDARDS (INCLUDING SAFETY STANDARDS) AND LEGAL REQUIREMENTS OF THAT PARTICULAR COUNTRY. PLEASE DO NOT EXPORT OR OPERATE THIS MACHINE OUTSIDE OF THE COUNTRY OF ITS INTENDED USE UNTIL SUCH COMPLIANCE HAS BEEN CONFIRMED. PLEASE CONTACT HITACHI CONSTRUCTION MACHINERY CO., LTD. OR ANY OF OUR AUTHORIZED DISTRIBUTOR OR DEALER IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS CONCERNING COMPLIANCE.**

All information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest product information available at the time of publication. The right is reserved to make changes at any time without notice.

**CALIFORNIA**

**Proposition 65 Warning**

**Diesel engine exhaust and some of its constituents are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, and other reproductive harm.**

# INDEX

MACHINE NUMBERS

SAFETY

SAFETY SIGNS

COMPONENTS NAME

OPERATOR'S STATION

BREAK-IN

OPERATING THE ENGINE

DRIVING THE MACHINE

OPERATING THE MACHINE

TRANSPORTING

MAINTENANCE

MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

STORAGE

TROUBLESHOOTING

SPECIFICATIONS

OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

INDEX

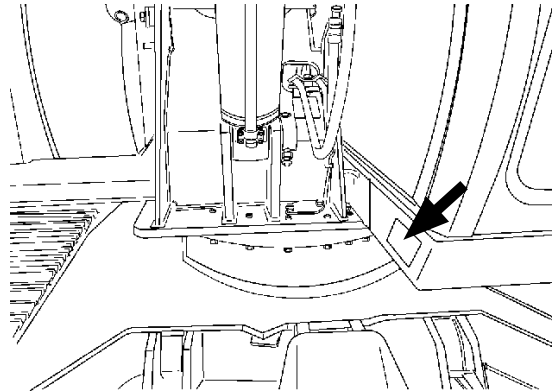


# MACHINE NUMBERS

The manufacturing Nos. explained in this group is the individual number (serial No.) given to each machine and hydraulic components. These numbers are requested when inquiring any information on the machine and/or components. Fill these serial Nos. in the blank spaces in this group to immediately make them available upon request.

## MACHINE


TYPE: \_\_\_\_\_  
PRODUCT  
IDENTIFICATION  
NUMBER: \_\_\_\_\_

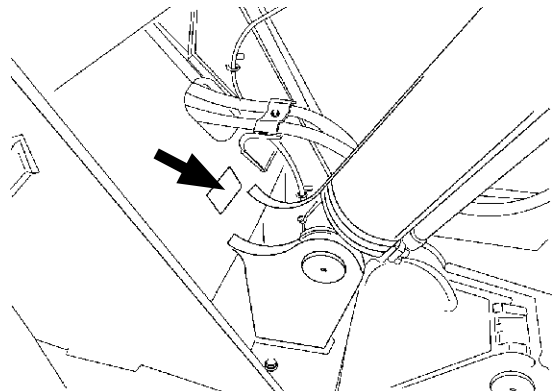


M1CD-01-002

## PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

PRODUCT  
IDENTIFICATION  
NUMBER: \_\_\_\_\_

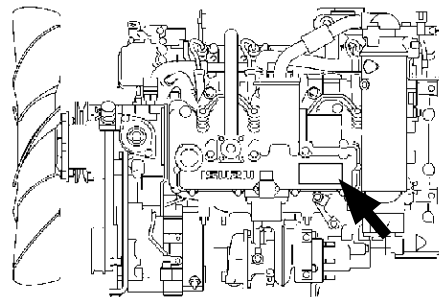
 **NOTE:** Marks to indicate the start and end of the PIN  
\*HCM1P100L00100001\*  
PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION  
NUMBER (PIN)



M1CD-01-003

## ENGINE

TYPE: \_\_\_\_\_  
MFG. NO.: \_\_\_\_\_



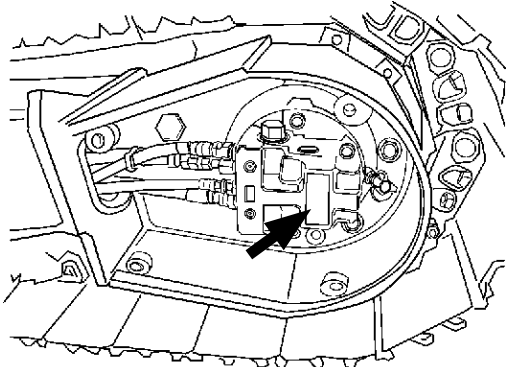
M1P1-01-001

# MACHINE NUMBERS

## TRAVEL MOTOR

TYPE: \_\_\_\_\_

MFG. NO.: \_\_\_\_\_

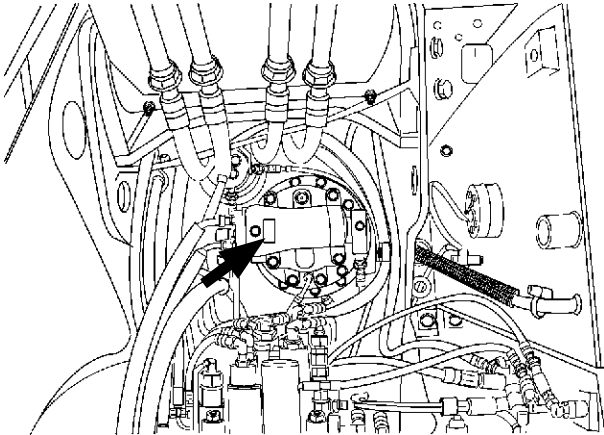


M1CD-01-005

## SWING MOTOR

TYPE: \_\_\_\_\_

MFG. NO.: \_\_\_\_\_

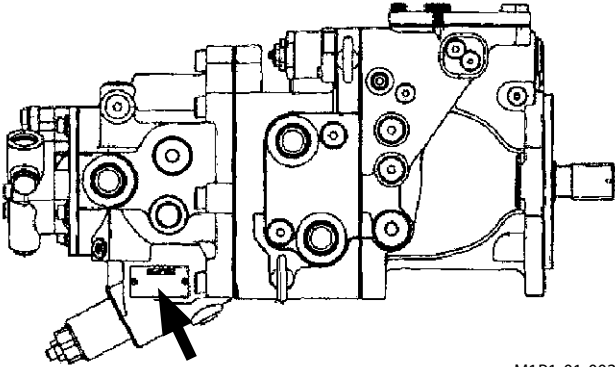


M1CD-07-004

## HYDRAULIC PUMP

TYPE: \_\_\_\_\_

MFG. NO.: \_\_\_\_\_



M1P1-01-002

# CONTENTS

## MACHINE NUMBERS

### SAFETY

Recognize Safety Information .....	S-1
Understand Signal Words .....	S-1
Follow Safety Instructions .....	S-2
Prepare for Emergencies.....	S-3
Wear Protective Clothing.....	S-3
Protect Against Noise .....	S-3
Inspect Machine .....	S-4
General Precautions for Cab.....	S-4
Use Handholds and Steps .....	S-5
Adjust the Operator's Seat .....	S-5
Ensure Safety Before Rising From or Leaving Operator's Seat .....	S-5
Fasten Your Seat Belt .....	S-6
Move and Operate Machine Safely.....	S-6
Handle Starting Aids Safely .....	S-6
Operate Only From Operator's Seat.....	S-7
Jump Starting .....	S-7
Keep Riders Off Machine .....	S-7
Precautions for Operations .....	S-8
Investigate Job Site Beforehand .....	S-9
Equipment of Head Guard, Rops, Fops.....	S-10
Provide Signals for Jobs Involving Multiple Numbers of Machines.....	S-10
Confirm Direction of Machine to Be Driven.....	S-10
Drive Machine Safely.....	S-11
Avoid Injury From Rollaway Accidents .....	S-13
Avoid Injury From Back-over and Swing Accidents.....	S-14
Keep Person Clear From Working Area.....	S-15
Never Position Bucket Over Anyone .....	S-15
Avoid Undercutting.....	S-15
Avoid Tipping.....	S-16
Never Undercut a High Bank.....	S-16
Dig with Caution.....	S-17
Operate with Caution .....	S-17
Avoid Power Lines.....	S-18
Precautions for Lightning.....	S-18
Object Handling .....	S-18
Protect Against Flying Debris .....	S-19
Park Machine Safely.....	S-19
Handle Fluids Safely—avoid Fires .....	S-19
Transport Safely .....	S-20
Practice Safe Maintenance .....	S-21
Warn Others of Service Work .....	S-22
Support Machine Properly .....	S-22
Stay Clear of Moving Parts .....	S-22
Prevent Parts From Flying .....	S-23
Store Attachments Safely .....	S-23
Prevent Burns.....	S-24
Replace Rubber Hoses Periodically.....	S-24
Avoid High-pressure Fluids.....	S-25
Prevent Fires.....	S-26
Evacuating in Case of Fire.....	S-28

Beware of Exhaust Fumes.....	S-28
Precautions for Welding and Grinding .....	S-28
Avoid Heating Near Pressurized Fluid Lines .....	S-29
Avoid Applying Heat to Lines Containing Flammable Fluids .....	S-29
Remove Paint Before Welding or Heating .....	S-29
Beware of Asbestos Dust .....	S-30
Prevent Battery Explosions .....	S-30
Service Air Conditioning System Safely .....	S-30
Handle Chemical Products Safely.....	S-31
Dispose of Waste Properly.....	S-31
Precaution for Communication Teaminal Equipment .....	S-32

<b>SAFETY SIGNS</b> .....	S-33
---------------------------	------

<b>COMPONENTS NAME</b> .....	1-1
------------------------------	-----

<b>GETTING ON/OFF THE MACHINE</b> .....	1-2
---	-----

### OPERATOR'S STATION

Cab Features.....	1-3
Multi Function Monitor .....	1-5
Basic Screen.....	1-6
Monitor Operation .....	1-7
Displaying Basic Screen.....	1-7
Hour Meter (8) .....	1-8
Fuel Gauge (10) .....	1-8
Clock (13).....	1-8
Coolant Temperature Gauge (21) .....	1-8
Back Monitor Screen Selector (14) (Optional) .....	1-9
Menu Key (15) .....	1-10
Optional Function Keys (16, 17, 18 and 19).....	1-10
Return to basic Screen Key (20).....	1-10
Menu Screen .....	1-13
Alarm Occurrence Screen.....	1-18
Alarm List.....	1-19
Clock Setting .....	1-20
Maintenance Setting.....	1-21
Mail (Optional).....	1-27
Password Revising (Optional) .....	1-29
Back Monitor Setting (Optional) .....	1-32
Language Setting .....	1-35
Monitoring .....	1-37
Switch Panel .....	1-38
Engine Control Dial.....	1-40
Auto-idle Switch .....	1-40
Power Mode Switch .....	1-41
Travel Mode Switch .....	1-41
Work Light Switch .....	1-42
Wiper/Washer Switch.....	1-43
Switch Panel (Optional).....	1-45
Key Switch.....	1-47
Horn Switch .....	1-47
Cigar Lighter.....	1-48
Cab Light .....	1-49



# CONTENTS

Installing Fire Extinguisher (Optional) .....	1-49	Attachment Pedal (Hydraulic Breaker) .....	5-2
Pilot Control Shut-off Lever .....	1-50	Attachment Pedal (Hydraulic Crusher) .....	5-3
Engine Stop Knob .....	1-51	Blade Lever .....	5-4
Fuse Box .....	1-52	Precautions For Blade Operation .....	5-4
Auto Air Conditioner .....	1-53	Pilot Control Shut-off Lever .....	5-5
Cab Heater Operation .....	1-56	Warming-up Operation .....	5-6
Cooling Operation .....	1-57	Engine Speed Control .....	5-7
Defroster Operation .....	1-58	Auto-idle .....	5-8
Tips for Optimal Air Conditioner Usage .....	1-59	Power Mode .....	5-9
Cab Heater (Optional) .....	1-60	Operating Backhoe .....	5-10
Cab Heater Operation .....	1-62	Grading Operation .....	5-10
Defroster Operation .....	1-63	Face Shovel Operation .....	5-11
AM/FM Radio Operation .....	1-64	Avoid Abusive Operation .....	5-11
Cab Door Release Lever .....	1-67	Operating Tips .....	5-12
Opening Upper Front Window .....	1-68	Select Correct Track Shoes .....	5-12
Closing Upper Front Window .....	1-70	Avoid Hitting Blade With Front-end Attachment .....	5-13
Removing and Storing Lower Front Window .....	1-71	Avoid Hitting Blade With Bucket .....	5-13
Opening Side Windows .....	1-72	Avoid Striking The Blade Into A Rock .....	5-13
Opening/Closing Overhead Window .....	1-73	Hydraulic Breaker and Hydraulic Crusher .....	5-14
Emergency Exit .....	1-74	Pipings for Breaker and Crusher .....	5-15
Adjusting the Seat .....	1-76	Secondary Relief Pressure Adjustment .....	5-16
Adjusting the Seat (Optional) .....	1-77	Precautions for Breaker Operation .....	5-17
Adjusting Console Height .....	1-79	Breaker Maintenance .....	5-20
Seat Belt .....	1-80	Precautions for Crusher Operation .....	5-21
<b>BREAK-IN</b>		Attachment .....	5-23
Observe Engine Operation Closely .....	2-1	Attachment Connection Parts .....	5-26
Every 8 Hours or Daily .....	2-1	Precaution for Arm Roll-in/bucket Roll-in Combined Operation --- If Headguard-integrated Cab or Rainguard is Equipped .....	5-27
After the First 50 Hours .....	2-1	When Installing an Attachment Longer Than Standard Bucket .....	5-27
After the First 100 Hours .....	2-1	Shackle Hole Usage .....	5-28
<b>OPERATING THE ENGINE</b>		Overnight Storage Instructions .....	5-28
Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting .....	3-1	Emergency Boom Lowering Procedure (Without Hose-rupture Safety Valve) .....	5-29
Before Starting Engine .....	3-2	Object Handling --- If Equipped .....	5-30
Starting the Engine in Ordinary Temperature .....	3-3	<b>TRANSPORTING</b>	
Starting in Cold Weather .....	3-5	Transporting by Road .....	6-1
Check Instruments After Starting .....	3-6	Loading/Unloading on a Trailer .....	6-1
Using Booster Batteries .....	3-7	Machine Lifting Procedure .....	6-5
Stopping the Engine .....	3-9	<b>MAINTENANCE</b>	
<b>DRIVING THE MACHINE</b>		Correct Maintenance and Inspection Procedures .....	7-1
Drive the Machine Carefully .....	4-1	Check the Hour Meter Regularly .....	7-2
Steering the Machine Using Pedals .....	4-2	Use Correct Fuels and Lubricants .....	7-2
Steering the Machine Using Levers .....	4-3	Layout .....	7-3
Travel Mode Switch .....	4-4	Maintenance Guide Table .....	7-4
Travel Alarm (Optional) .....	4-5	Prepare Machine for Maintenance .....	7-6
Operating on Soft Ground .....	4-6	Hood and Access Covers .....	7-7
Raise One Track Using Boom and Arm .....	4-6	Periodic Replacement of Parts .....	7-9
Towing Machine a Short Distance .....	4-7	Use Electrical Outlet .....	7-10
Operating in Water or Mud .....	4-8	Maintenance Guide .....	7-11
Parking the Machine on Slopes .....	4-9	A. Greasing .....	7-16
Parking the Machine .....	4-9	Front Joint Pins .....	7-16
<b>OPERATING THE MACHINE</b>			
Control Lever (ISO Pattern) .....	5-1		

# CONTENTS

Swing Bearing.....	7-18	Clean and Replace Air Conditioner Filter	
Swing Internal Gear .....	7-19	Clean Filter .....	7-74
Maintenance Blade Joint Pins.....	7-20	Replace Filter .....	7-74
B. Engine.....	7-21	Check the Air Conditioner .....	7-78
Engine Oil Level.....	7-21	Clean Cab Floor .....	7-79
Change Engine Oil .....	7-22	Check Injection Nozzle .....	7-80
Replace Engine Oil Filter .....	7-22	Retighten Cylinder Head Bolt.....	7-80
C. Transmission.....	7-24	Inspect and Adjust Valve Clearance.....	7-80
Travel Reduction Gear.....	7-24	Check Fuel Injection Timing .....	7-80
D. Hydraulic System .....	7-26	Check Starter and Alternator.....	7-80
Inspection and Maintenance of		Check and Replace EGR Device.....	7-80
Hydraulic Equipment .....	7-26	Measure Engine Compression Pressure .....	7-80
Breaker Maintenance .....	7-28	Check Tightening Torque of Bolts and Nuts .....	7-81
Check Hydraulic Oil Level .....	7-29		
Drain Hydraulic Oil Tank Sump.....	7-30	<b>MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL</b>	
Change Hydraulic Oil .....	7-31	<b>ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS</b>	
Suction Filter Cleaning .....	7-31	Maintenance Under Special Environmental Conditions..	9-1
Replace Hydraulic Oil Tank Filter .....	7-34		
Replace Pilot Oil Filter .....	7-35	<b>STORAGE</b>	
Replace Swing Drain Filter Element.....	7-36	Storing the Machine .....	10-1
Replace Air Breather Element .....	7-37	Removing the Machine from Storage.....	10-2
Check Hoses and Lines .....	7-38		
Service Recommendations for Hydraulic Fittings .....	7-41	<b>TROUBLESHOOTING</b>	
E. Fuel System.....	7-43	Impossible to Start the Engine .....	11-1
Drain Fuel Tank Sump .....	7-45	Engine.....	11-2
Check Water Separator .....	7-46	Electrical System.....	11-6
Replace Fuel Filter Element.....	7-48	Mode Selection .....	11-8
Clean Fuel Solenoid Pump Strainer .....	7-49	Control Levers.....	11-9
Check Fuel Hoses.....	7-50	Hydraulic System.....	11-10
F. Air Cleaner.....	7-51		
Clean the Air Cleaner Outer Element .....	7-51	<b>SPECIFICATIONS</b>	
Replace the Air Cleaner Outer and Inner Elements..	7-51	Specifications	
G. Cooling System .....	7-53	(ZX70-3, 70LC-3).....	12-1
Check Coolant Level .....	7-54	Working Ranges	
Check and Adjust Fan Belt Tension .....	7-55	(ZX70-3, 70LC-3).....	12-2
Change Coolant .....	7-56	Shoe Types and Applications	
Clean Radiator Interior.....	7-56	(ZX70-3, 70LC-3).....	12-3
Clean Radiator, Oil Cooler and Inter Cooler Core .....	7-57	Specifications	
Clean Oil Cooler, Radiator and Inter		(ZX75US-3) .....	12-4
Cooler Front Screen .....	7-57	Working Ranges	
Clean Air Conditioner Condenser.....	7-57	(ZX75US-3) .....	12-5
H. Electrical System .....	7-58	Shoe Types and Applications (with Blade)	
Batteries .....	7-58	(ZX75US-3) .....	12-6
Replace Batteries .....	7-61	Specifications	
Replacing Fuses.....	7-62	(ZX80LCK-3) .....	12-7
Additional Fuse Box (Optional).....	7-64	Working Ranges	
I. Miscellaneous .....	7-65	(ZX80LCK-3) .....	12-8
Check Bucket Teeth.....	7-65	Shoe Types and Applications	
Change Bucket .....	7-67	(ZX80LCK-3) .....	12-9
Convert Bucket Connection Into Face Shovel.....	7-68	Specifications	
Adjust the Bucket Linkage .....	7-69	(ZX85USB-3) .....	12-10
Remove the Travel Levers.....	7-70	Working Ranges	
Check and Replace Seat Belt Check.....	7-70	(ZX85USB-3) .....	12-11
Check Windshield Washer Fluid Level.....	7-71	Shoe Types and Applications	
Check Track Sag.....	7-72	(ZX85USB-3) .....	12-12

---

# CONTENTS

---

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

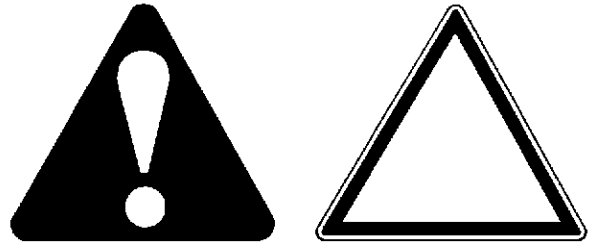
Specifications	
(ZX70-3, 70LC-3) (with Blade).....	13-1
Working Ranges	
(ZX70-3, 70LC-3) (with Blade).....	13-2
Shoe Types and Applications	
(ZX70-3, 70LC-3) (with Blade).....	13-3
Specifications	
(ZX75US-3) (with Blade) .....	13-4
Working Ranges	
(ZX75US-3) (with Blade) .....	13-5
Shoe Types and Applications	
(ZX75US-3) (with Blade) .....	13-6
Specifications	
(ZX80LCK-3) (with Blade) .....	13-7
Working Ranges	
(ZX80LCK-3) (with Blade) .....	13-8
Shoe Types and Applications	
(ZX80LCK-3) (with Blade) .....	13-9
Offset Arm Front .....	13-10
Precautions For Operating With The Offset Function ...	13-12
Maintenance .....	13-13
Specifications	
(ZX70-3,70LC-3) (with Offset Arm Front).....	13-14
Working Ranges	
(ZX70-3,70LC-3) (with Offset Arm Front).....	13-17
Shoe Types and Applications	
(ZX70-3,70LC-3) (with Offset Arm Front).....	13-18
Specifications	
(ZX75US-3) (with Offset Arm Front) .....	13-20
Working Ranges	
(ZX75US-3) (with Offset Arm Front) .....	13-21
Shoe Types and Applications	
(ZX75US-3) (with Offset Arm Front) .....	13-22
Registration/Registration	
Cancellation Of Ordinary Operation Key .....	13-23
Additional Registration Procedure.....	13-24
Registration Deactivation Procedure	
(To Make The Lost Key Unavailable) .....	13-25
<b>INDEX</b> .....	14-1

---

## SAFETY

### RECOGNIZE SAFETY INFORMATION


- These are the **SAFETY ALERT SYMBOLS**.
  - When you see these symbols on your machine or in this manual, be alert to the potential for personal injury.
  - Follow recommended precautions and safe operating practices.



001-E01A-0001

SA-688

### UNDERSTAND SIGNAL WORDS

- On machine safety signs, signal words designating the degree or level of hazard - **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION** - are used with the safety alert symbol.
  - **DANGER** indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
  - **WARNING** indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
  - **CAUTION** indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury.
  - **DANGER or WARNING safety signs** are located near specific hazards. General precautions are listed on **CAUTION safety signs**.
  - Some safety signs do not use any of the designated signal words above after the safety alert symbol are occasionally used on this machine.
- To avoid confusing machine protection with personal safety messages, a signal word **IMPORTANT** indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in damage to the machine.
-  **NOTE** indicates an additional explanation for an element of information.



**IMPORTANT**



002-E01A-1223

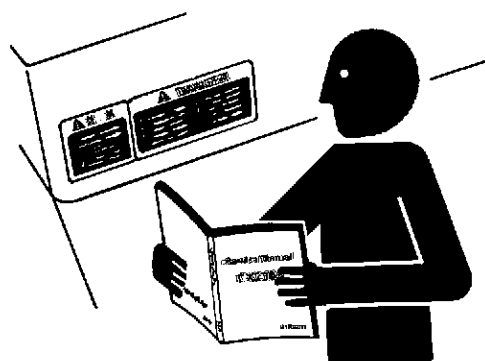
SA-1223

## SAFETY

---

### FOLLOW SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

- Carefully read and follow all safety signs on the machine and all safety messages in this manual.
- Safety signs should be installed, maintained and replaced when necessary.
  - If a safety sign or this manual is damaged or missing, order a replacement from your authorized dealer in the same way you order other replacement parts (be sure to state machine model and serial number when ordering).
- Learn how to operate the machine and its controls correctly and safely.
- Allow only trained, qualified, authorized personnel to operate the machine.
- Keep your machine in proper working condition.
  - Unauthorized modifications of the machine may impair its function and/or safety and affect machine life.
  - Do not modify any machine parts without authorization. Failure to do so may deteriorate the part safety, function, and/or service life. In addition, personal accident, machine trouble, and/or damage to material caused by unauthorized modifications will void Hitachi Warranty Policy.
  - Do not use attachments and/or optional parts or equipment not authorized by Hitachi. Failure to do so may deteriorate the safety, function, and/or service life of the machine. In addition, personal accident, machine trouble, and/or damage to material caused by using unauthorized attachments and/or optional parts or equipment will void Hitachi Warranty Policy.
- The safety messages in this SAFETY chapter are intended to illustrate basic safety procedures of machines. However it is impossible for these safety messages to cover every hazardous situation you may encounter. If you have any questions, you should first consult your supervisor and/or your authorized dealer before operating or performing maintenance work on the machine.



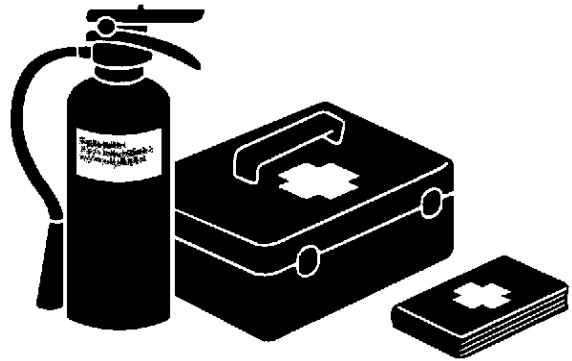
SA-003

003-E01B-0003

## SAFETY

### PREPARE FOR EMERGENCIES

- Be prepared if a fire starts or if an accident occurs.
  - Keep a first aid kit and fire extinguisher on hand.
  - Thoroughly read and understand the label attached on the fire extinguisher to use it properly.
  - To ensure that a fire extinguisher can be always used when necessary, check and service the fire extinguisher at the recommended intervals as specified in the fire extinguisher manual.
  - Establish emergency procedure guidelines to cope with fires and accidents.
  - Keep emergency numbers for doctors, ambulance service, hospital, and fire department posted near your telephone.



SA-437

004-E01A-0437

### WEAR PROTECTIVE CLOTHING

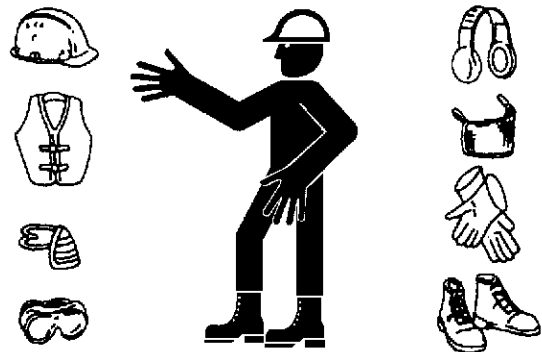
- Wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate to the job.

You may need:

- A hard hat
- Safety shoes
- Safety glasses, goggles, or face shield
- Heavy gloves
- Hearing protection
- Reflective clothing
- Wet weather gear
- Respirator or filter mask.

Be sure to wear the correct equipment and clothing for the job. Do not take any chances.

- Avoid wearing loose clothing, jewelry, or other items that can catch on control levers or other parts of the machine.
- Operating equipment safely requires the full attention of the operator. Do not wear radio or music headphones while operating the machine.



SA-438

005-E01A-0438

### PROTECT AGAINST NOISE

- Prolonged exposure to loud noise can cause impairment or loss of hearing.
  - Wear a suitable hearing protective device such as earmuffs or earplugs to protect against objectionable or uncomfortably loud noises.



006-E01A-0434

SA-434

---

## SAFETY

---

### INSPECT MACHINE

- Inspect your machine carefully each day or shift by walking around it before you start it to avoid personal injury.
- In the walk-around inspection be sure to cover all points described in the "PRE-START INSPECTION" chapter in the operator's manual.



SA-435

---

### GENERAL PRECAUTIONS FOR CAB

- Before entering the cab, thoroughly remove all dirt and/or oil such as mud, grease, soil or stones that may mess up the cab from the soles of your work boots. If any controls such as a pedal is operated while with dirt and/or oil on the soles of the operator's work boots the operator's foot may slip off the pedal, possibly resulting in a personal accident.
- Do not mess up around the operator's seat with parts, tools, soil, stones, obstacles that may fold up or turn over, cans or lunch box. The levers or pedals become inoperable if obstacle jams in operation stroke of the travel levers/pedals, pilot control shut-off lever or control levers, which may result in serious injury or death.
- Avoid storing transparent bottles in the cab. Do not attach any transparent type window decorations on the windowpanes as they may focus sunlight, possibly starting a fire.
- Refrain from listening to the radio, or using music headphones or mobile telephones in the cab while operating the machine.
- Keep all flammable objects and/or explosives away from the machine.
- After using the ashtray, always cover it to extinguish the match and/or tobacco.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the cab. When the temperature in the cab increases, the lighter may explode.
- Use proper floor mat dedicated to the machine. If another floor mat is used, it may be displaced and contact with the travel pedals during operation, resulting in serious injury or death.

524-E01A-0000

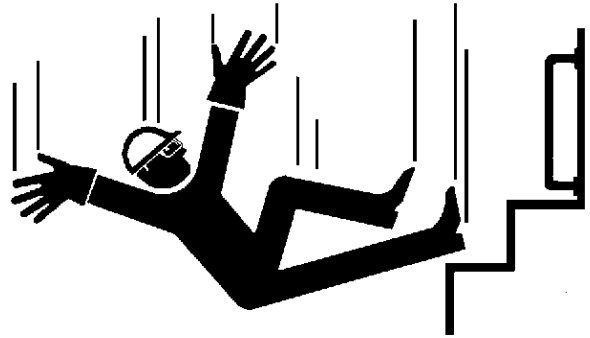
---

## SAFETY

---

### USE HANDHOLDS AND STEPS

- Falling is one of the major causes of personal injury.
  - When you get on and off the machine, always face the machine and maintain a three-point contact with the steps and handrails.
  - Do not use any controls as hand-holds.
  - Never jump on or off the machine. Never mount or dismount a moving machine.
  - Be careful of slippery conditions on platforms, steps, and handrails when leaving the machine.



008-E01A-0439

SA-439

---

### ADJUST THE OPERATOR'S SEAT

- A poorly adjusted seat for either the operator or for the work at hand may quickly fatigue the operator leading to misoperations.
  - The seat should be adjusted whenever changing the operator for the machine.
  - The operator should be able to fully depress the pedals and to correctly operate the control levers with his back against the seat back.
  - If not, move the seat forward or backward, and check again.
  - Adjust the rear view mirror position so that the best rear visibility is obtained from the operator's seat. If the mirror is broken, immediately replace it with a new one.



009-E01A-0462

SA-378

---

### ENSURE SAFETY BEFORE RISING FROM OR LEAVING OPERATOR'S SEAT

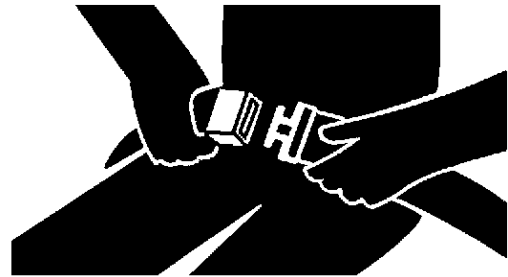
- Before rising from the operator's seat to open/close either side window or to adjust the seat position, be sure to first lower the front attachment to the ground and then move the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position. Failure to do so may allow the machine to unexpectedly move when a body part unintentionally comes in contact with a control lever, possibly resulting in serious personal injury or death.
- Before leaving the machine, be sure to first lower the front attachment to the ground and then move the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position. Turn the key switch OFF to stop the engine.
- Before leaving the machine, close all windows, doors, and access covers and lock them up.



## SAFETY

### FASTEN YOUR SEAT BELT

- If the machine should overturn, the operator may become injured and/or thrown from the cab. Additionally the operator may be crushed by the overturning machine, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Prior to operating the machine, thoroughly examine webbing, buckle and attaching hardware. If any item is damaged or worn, replace the seat belt or component before operating the machine.
- Be sure to remain seated with the seat belt securely fastened at all times when the machine is in operation to minimize the chance of injury from an accident.
- We recommend that the seat belt be replaced every three years regardless of its apparent condition.

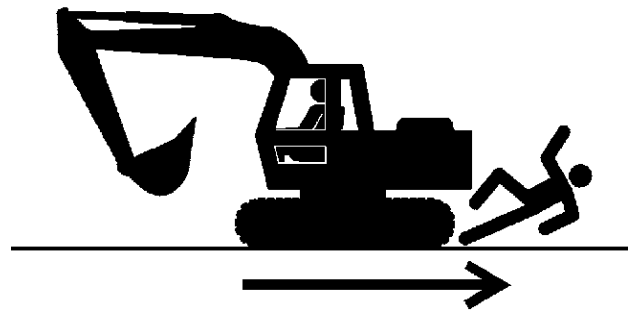


SA-237

010-E01A-0237

### MOVE AND OPERATE MACHINE SAFELY

- Bystanders can be run over.
- Take extra care not to run over bystanders. Confirm the location of bystanders before moving, swinging, or operating the machine.
- Always keep the travel alarm and horn in working condition (if equipped). It warns people when the machine starts to move.
- Use a signal person when moving, swinging, or operating the machine in congested areas. Coordinate hand signals before starting the machine.
- Use appropriate illumination. Check that all lights are operable before operating the machine. If any faulty illumination is present, immediately repair it.



SA-426

011-E01A-0398

### HANDLE STARTING AIDS SAFELY

Starting fluid:

- Starting fluid is highly flammable.
- Keep all sparks and flame away when using it.
- Keep starting fluid well away from batteries and cables.
- Remove container from machine if engine does not need starting fluid.
- To prevent accidental discharge when storing a pressurized container, keep the cap on the container, and store it in a cool, well-protected location.
- Do not incinerate or puncture a starting fluid container.



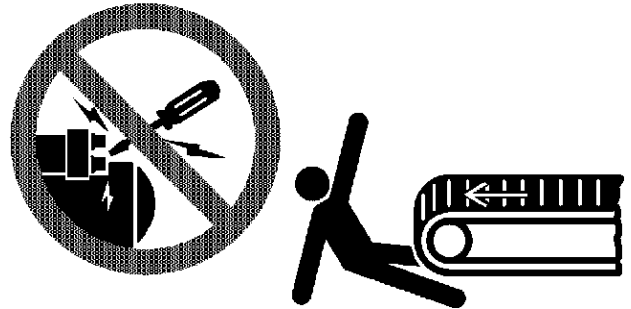
SA-293

036-E01A-0293-3

## SAFETY

### OPERATE ONLY FROM OPERATOR'S SEAT

- Inappropriate engine starting procedures may cause the machine to runaway, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
  - Start the engine only when seated in the operator's seat.
  - NEVER start the engine while standing on the track or on ground.
  - Do not start engine by shorting across starter terminals.
  - Before starting the engine, confirm that all control levers are in neutral.
  - Before starting the engine, confirm the safety around the machine and sound the horn to alert bystanders.

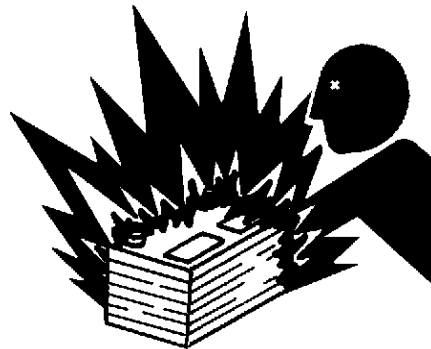


SA-444

012-E01B-0431

### JUMP STARTING

- Battery gas can explode, resulting in serious injury.
  - If the engine must be jump started, be sure to follow the instructions shown in the "OPERATING THE ENGINE" chapter in the operator's manual.
  - The operator must be in the operator's seat so that the machine will be under control when the engine starts. Jump starting is a two-person operation.
  - Never use a frozen battery.
  - Failure to follow correct jump starting procedures could result in a battery explosion or a runaway machine.



SA-032

S013-E01A-0032

### KEEP RIDERS OFF MACHINE

- Riders on machine are subject to injury such as being struck by foreign objects and being thrown off the machine.
  - Only the operator should be on the machine. Keep riders off.
  - Riders also obstruct the operator's view, resulting in the machine being operated in an unsafe manner.



014-E01B-0427

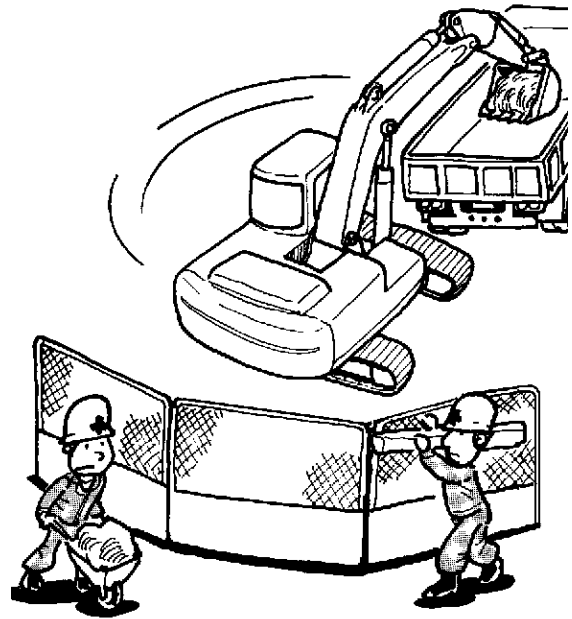
SA-379

## SAFETY

---

### PRECAUTIONS FOR OPERATIONS

- Investigate the work site before starting operations.
  - Be sure to wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate for the job, such as a hard hat, etc. when operating the machine.
  - Clear all persons and obstacles from area of operation and machine movement.  
Always beware of the surroundings while operating. When working in a small area surrounded by obstacles, take care not to hit the upperstructure against obstacles.
- When loading onto trucks, bring the bucket over the truck beds from the rear side. Take care not to swing the bucket over the cab or over any person.



M178-05-007

---

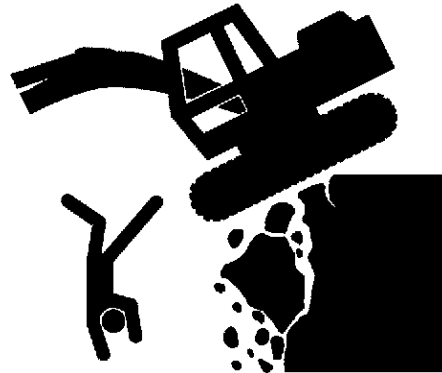
## SAFETY

---

### INVESTIGATE JOB SITE BEFOREHAND

- When working at the edge of an excavation or on a road shoulder, the machine could tip over, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
  - Investigate the configuration and ground conditions of the job site beforehand to prevent the machine from falling and to prevent the ground, stockpiles, or banks from collapsing.
  - Make a work plan. Use machines appropriate to the work and job site.
  - Reinforce ground, edges, and road shoulders as necessary. Keep the machine well back from the edges of excavations and road shoulders.
  - When working on an incline or on a road shoulder, employ a signal person as required.
  - Confirm that your machine is equipped a FOPS cab before working in areas where the possibility of falling stones or debris exist.
  - When the footing is weak, reinforce the ground before starting work.
  - When working on frozen ground, be extremely alert. As ambient temperatures rise, footing becomes loose and slippery.
  - Beware the possibility of fire when operating the machine near flammable objects such as dry grass.
- Make sure the work site has sufficient strength to firmly support the machine.

When working close to an excavation or at road shoulders, operate the machine with the tracks positioned perpendicular to the cliff face with travel motors at the rear, so that the machine can more easily evacuate if the cliff face collapses.
- If working on the bottom of a cliff or a high bank is required, be sure to investigate the area first and confirm that no danger of the cliff or bank collapsing exists. If any possibility of cliff or bank collapsing exists, do not work on the area.
- Soft ground may collapse when operating the machine on it, possibly causing the machine to tip over. When working on soft ground is required, be sure to reinforce the ground first using large pieces of steel plates strong and firm enough to easily support the machine.
- Note that there is always a possibility of machine tipping over when working on rough terrain or on slopes. Prevent machine tipping over from occurring. When operating on rough terrain or on slopes:
  - Reduce the engine speed.
  - Select slow travel speed mode.
  - Operate the machine slowly and be cautious with machine movements.



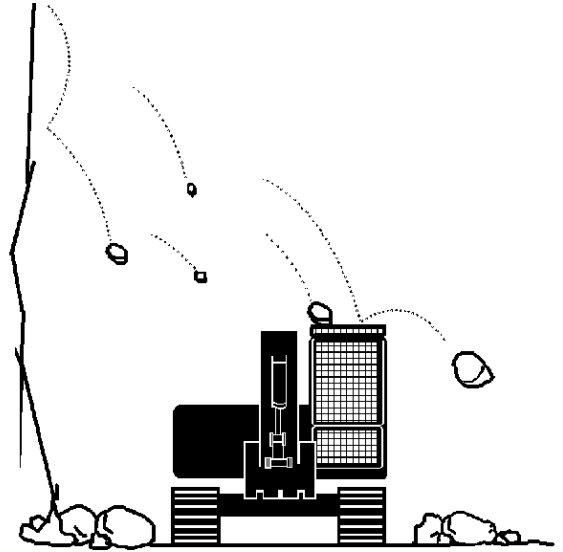
SA-380

## SAFETY

### EQUIPMENT OF HEAD GUARD, ROPS, FOPS

In case the machine is operated in areas where the possibility of falling stones or debris exist, equip a head guard, ROPS, or FOPS according to the potential hazardous conditions. (The standard cab for this machine corresponds to ROPS and FOPS.)

ROPS: Roll-Over Protective Structure  
FOPS: Falling Object Protective Structure



SA-490

### PROVIDE SIGNALS FOR JOBS INVOLVING MULTIPLE NUMBERS OF MACHINES

- For jobs involving multiple numbers of machines, provide signals commonly known by all personnel involved. Also, appoint a signal person to coordinate the job site. Make sure that all personnel obey the signal person's directions.

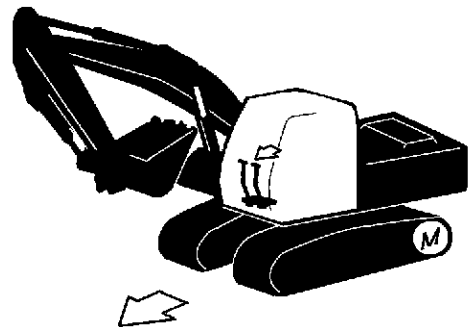


018-E01A-0481

SA-481

### CONFIRM DIRECTION OF MACHINE TO BE DRIVEN

- Incorrect travel pedal/lever operation may result in serious injury death.
- Before driving the machine, confirm the position of the undercarriage in relation to the operator's position. If the travel motors are located in front of the cab, the machine will move in reverse when travel pedals/levers are operated to the front.



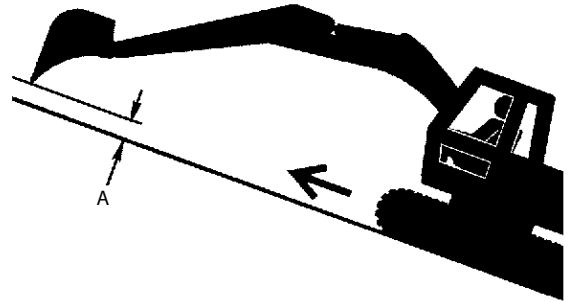
017-E01A-0491

SA-491

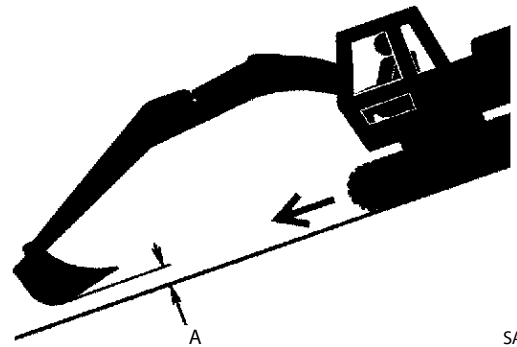
## SAFETY

### DRIVE MACHINE SAFELY

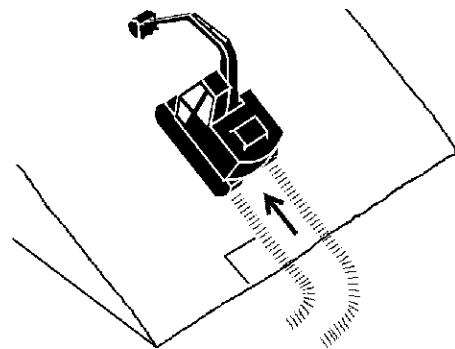
- Before driving the machine, always confirm that the travel levers/pedals direction corresponds to the direction you wish to drive.
  - Be sure to detour around any obstructions.
  - Avoid traveling over obstructions. Soil, fragments of rocks, and/or metal pieces may scatter around the machine. Do not allow personnel to stay around the machine while traveling.
- Driving on a slope may cause the machine to slip or overturn, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
  - Never attempt to ascend or descend 35 degrees or steeper slopes.
  - Be sure to fasten the seat belt.
  - When driving up or down a slope, keep the bucket facing the direction of travel, approximately 0.5 to 1.0 m (A) above the ground.
  - If the machine starts to skid or becomes unstable, immediately lower the bucket to the ground and stop.
  - Driving across the face of a slope or steering on a slope may cause the machine to skid or turnover. If the direction must be changed, move the machine to level ground, then, change the direction to ensure safe operation.
  - Avoid swinging the upperstructure on slopes. Never attempt to swing the upperstructure downhill. The machine may tip over. If swinging uphill is unavoidable, carefully operate the upperstructure and boom at slow speed.
  - If the engine stalls on a slope, immediately lower the bucket to the ground. Return the control levers to neutral. Then, restart the engine.
  - Be sure to thoroughly warm up the machine before ascending steep slopes. If hydraulic oil has not warmed up sufficiently, sufficient performance may not be obtained.



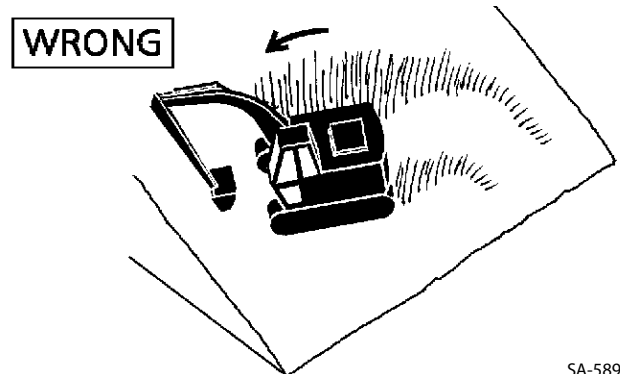
SA-657



SA-658



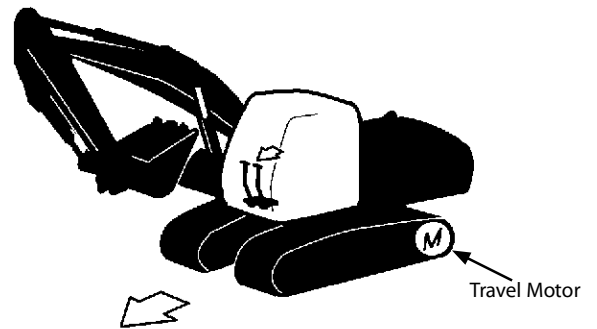
SA-441



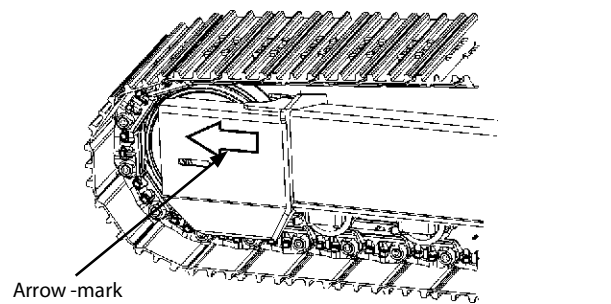
SA-589

## SAFETY

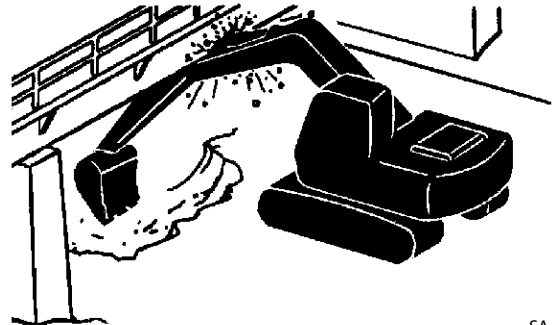
- Use a signal person when moving, swinging or operating the machine in congested areas. Coordinate hand signals before starting the machine.
- Before moving machine, determine which way to move travel pedals/levers for the direction you want to go. When the travel motors are in the rear, pushing down on the front of the travel pedals or pushing the levers forward moves the machine forward, towards the idlers. An arrow-mark seal is stuck on the inside surface of the side frame to indicate the machine front direction.
- Select a travel route that is as flat as possible. Steer the machine as straight as possible, making small gradual changes in direction.
- Before traveling on them, check the strengths of bridges and road shoulders, and reinforce if necessary.
- Use wood plates in order not to damage the road surface. Be careful of steering when operating on asphalt roads in summer.
- When crossing train tracks, use wood plates in order not to damage them.
- Do not make contact with electric wires or bridges.
- When crossing a river, measure the depth of the river using the bucket, and cross slowly. Do not cross the river when the depth of the river is deeper than the upper edge of the upper roller.
- When traveling on rough terrain, reduce engine speed. Select slow travel speed. Slower speed will reduce possible damage to the machine.
- Avoid operations that may damage the track and under-carriage components.
- During freezing weather, always clean snow and ice from track shoes before loading and unloading machine, to prevent the machine from slipping.



M104-05-008



M178-03-001



SA-011

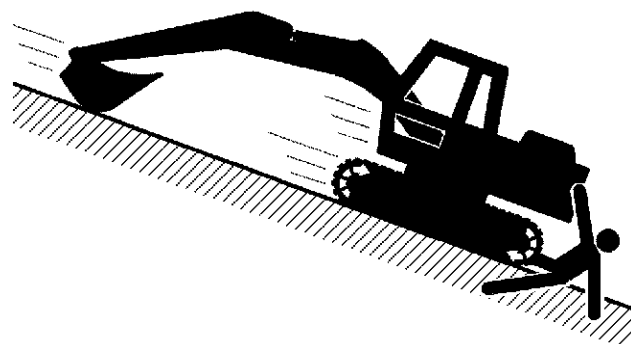
## SAFETY

### AVOID INJURY FROM ROLLAWAY ACCIDENTS

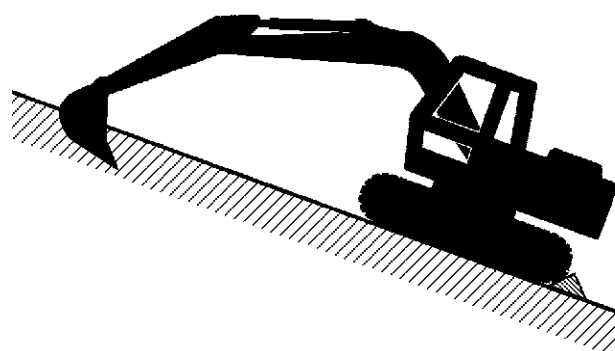
- Death or serious injury may result if you attempt to mount or stop a moving machine.

To avoid rollaways:

- Select level ground when possible to park the machine.
- Do not park the machine on a grade.
- Lower the bucket and/or other work tools to the ground.
- Turn the auto-idle switch OFF.
- Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes to cool down the engine.
- Stop the engine and remove the key from the key switch.
- Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to LOCK position.
- Block both tracks and lower the bucket to the ground. Thrust the bucket teeth into the ground if you must park on a grade.
- Position the machine to prevent rolling.
- Park a reasonable distance from other machines.



SA-391



SA-392

020-E02A-0493



## SAFETY

---

### AVOID INJURY FROM BACK-OVER AND SWING ACCIDENTS

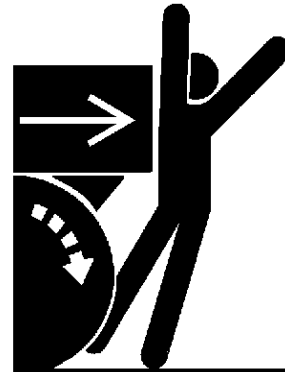
- If any person is present near the machine when backing or swinging the upperstructure, the machine may hit or run over that person, resulting in serious injury or death.

To avoid back-over and swing accidents:

- Always look around **BEFORE YOU BACK UP AND SWING THE MACHINE**. BE SURE THAT ALL BYSTANDERS ARE CLEAR.
- Keep the travel alarm in working condition (if equipped). ALWAYS BE ALERT FOR BYSTANDERS MOVING INTO THE WORK AREA. USE THE HORN OR OTHER SIGNAL TO WARN BYSTANDERS BEFORE MOVING MACHINE.
- USE A SIGNAL PERSON WHEN BACKING UP IF YOUR VIEW IS OBSTRUCTED. ALWAYS KEEP THE SIGNAL PERSON IN VIEW.

Use hand signals, which conform to your local regulations, when work conditions require a signal person.

- No machine motions shall be made unless signals are clearly understood by both signalman and operator.
- Learn the meanings of all flags, signs, and markings used on the job and confirm who has the responsibility for signaling.
- Keep windows, mirrors, and lights clean and in good condition.
- Dust, heavy rain, fog, etc., can reduce visibility. As visibility decreases, reduce speed and use proper lighting.
- Read and understand all operating instructions in the operator's manual.



SA-383



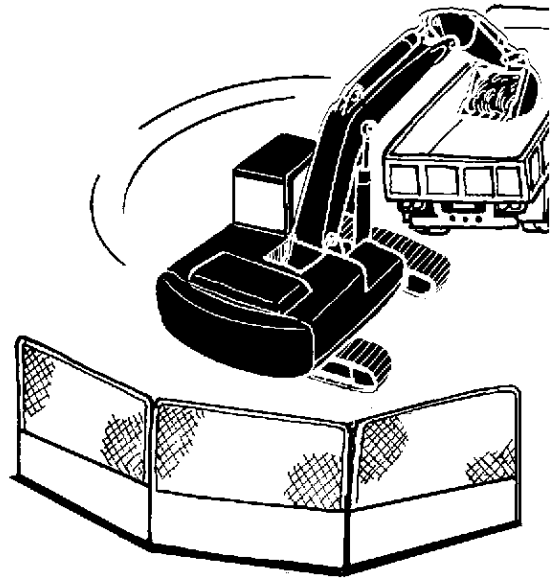
SA-384

021-E01A-0494

## SAFETY

### KEEP PERSON CLEAR FROM WORKING AREA

- A person may be hit severely by the swinging front attachment or counterweight and/or may be crushed against an other object, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Keep all persons clear from the area of operation and machine movement.
- Before operating the machine, set up barriers to the sides and rear area of the bucket swing radius to prevent anyone from entering the work area.



022-E01A-0386

SA-386

### NEVER POSITION BUCKET OVER ANYONE

- Never lift, move, or swing bucket above anyone or a truck cab.
- Serious injury or machine damage may result due to bucket load spill or due to collision with the bucket.

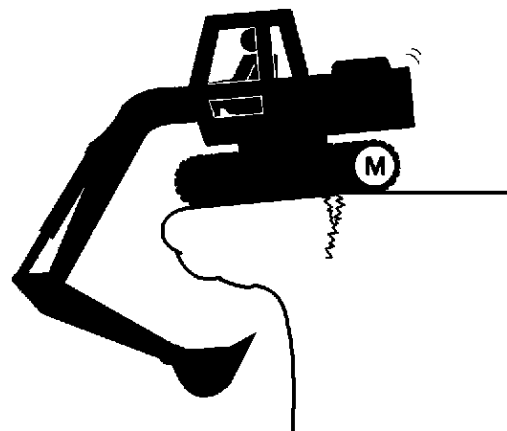


023-E01A-0487

SA-487

### AVOID UNDERCUTTING

- In order to retreat from the edge of an excavation if the footing should collapse, always position the undercarriage perpendicular to the edge of the excavation with the travel motors at the rear.
- If the footing starts to collapse and if retreat is not possible, do not panic. Often, the machine can be secured by lowering the front attachment, in such cases.



024-E01A-0488

SA-488

## SAFETY

### AVOID TIPPING

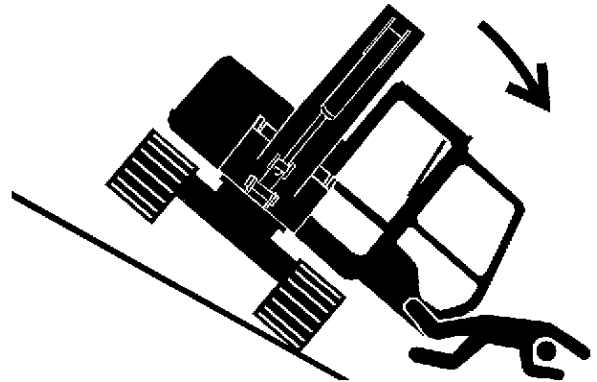
**DO NOT ATTEMPT TO JUMP CLEAR OF TIPPING MACHINE  
---SERIOUS OR FATAL CRUSHING INJURIES WILL RESULT  
MACHINE WILL TIP OVER FASTER THAN YOU CAN JUMP  
FREE**

#### **FASTEN YOUR SEAT BELT**

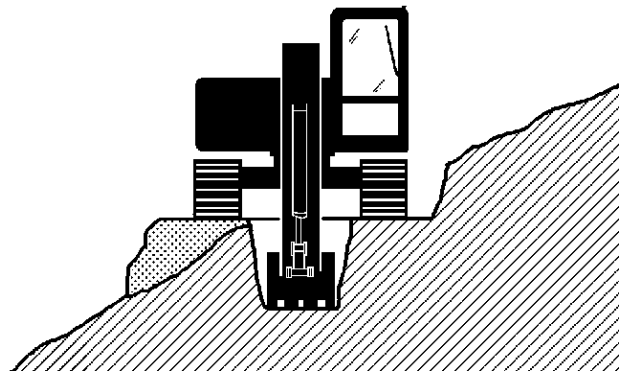
- The danger of tipping is always present when operating on a grade, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.

To avoid tipping:

- Be extra careful before operating on a grade.
  - Prepare machine operating area flat.
  - Keep the bucket low to the ground and close to the machine.
  - Reduce operating speeds to avoid tipping or slipping.
  - Avoid changing direction when traveling on grades.
  - NEVER attempt to travel across a grade steeper than 15 degrees if crossing the grade is unavoidable.
  - Reduce swing speed as necessary when swinging loads.
- Be careful when working on frozen ground.
  - Temperature increases will cause the ground to become soft and make ground travel unstable.



SA-012

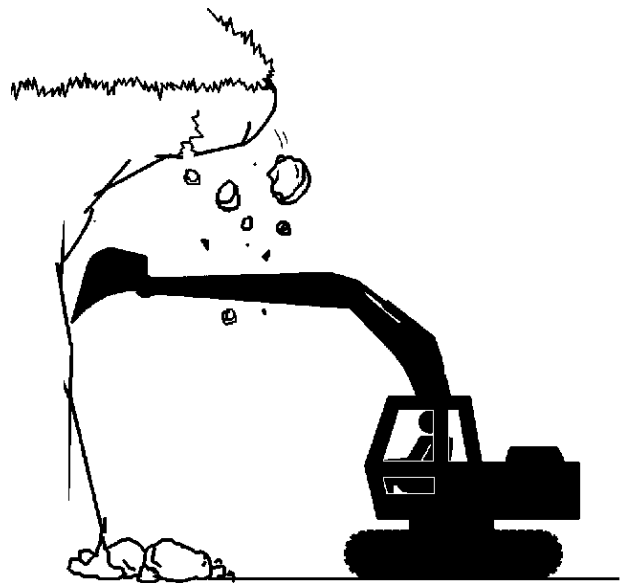


SA-440

025-E03B-0463

### NEVER UNDERCUT A HIGH BANK

- The edges could collapse or a land slide could occur causing serious injury or death.



026-E01A-0519

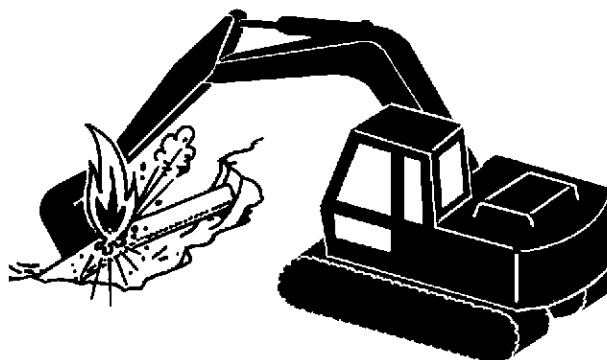
SA-489

## SAFETY

---

### DIG WITH CAUTION

- Accidental severing of underground cables or gas lines may cause an explosion and/or fire, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
  - Before digging check the location of cables, gas lines, and water lines.
  - Keep the minimum distance required, by law, from cables, gas lines, and water lines.
  - If a fiber optic cable should be accidentally severed, do not look into the end. Doing so may result in serious eye injury.
  - Contact your local "diggers hot line" if available in your area, and/or the utility companies directly.  
Have them mark all underground utilities.

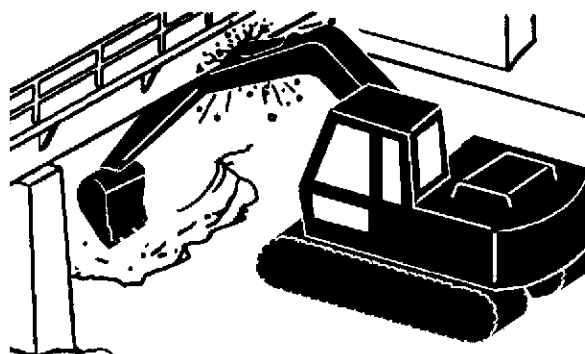


SA-382

027-E01A-0382

### OPERATE WITH CAUTION

- If the front attachment or any other part of the machine hits against an overhead obstacle, such as a bridge, both the machine and the overhead obstacle will be damaged, and personal injury may result as well.
  - Take care to avoid hitting overhead obstacles with the boom or arm.



SA-389

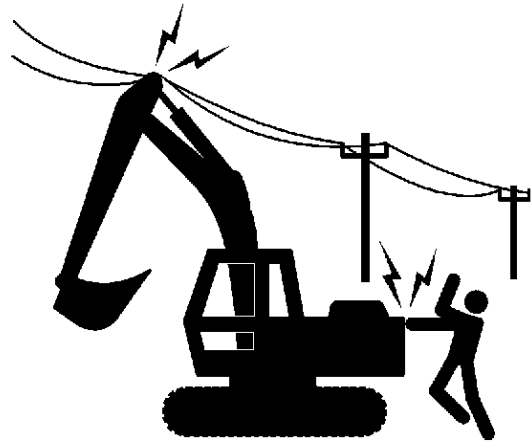
028-E01A-0389

## SAFETY

### AVOID POWER LINES

- Serious injury or death can result if the machine or front attachments are not kept a safe distance from electric lines.
- When operating near an electric line, NEVER move any part of the machine or load closer than 3 m plus twice the line insulator length.
- Check and comply with any local regulations that may apply.
- Wet ground will expand the area that could cause any person on it to be affected by electric shock. Keep all bystanders or co-workers away from the site.

029-E01A-0381



SA-381

### PRECAUTIONS FOR LIGHTNING

- The machine is vulnerable to lightning strikes.
- In the event of an electrical storm, immediately stop operation, and lower the bucket to the ground. Evacuate to a safe place far away from the machine.
- After the electrical storm has passed, check all of the machine safety devices for any failure. If any failed safety devices are found, operate the machine only after repairing them.

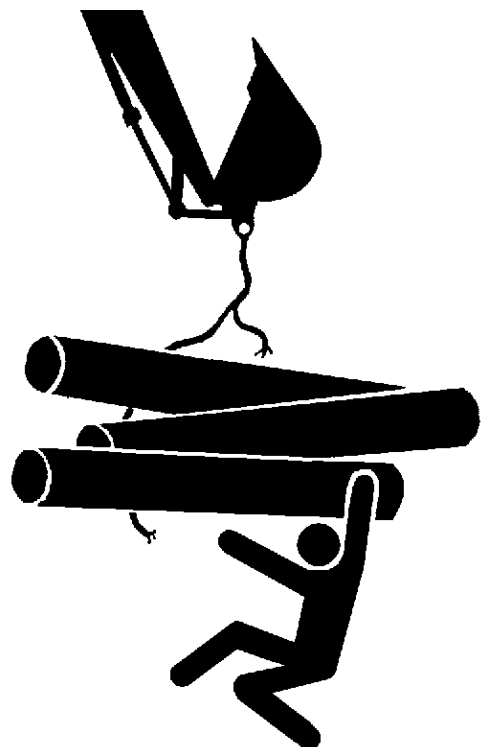


SA-1088

### OBJECT HANDLING

- If a lifted load should fall, any person nearby may be struck by the falling load or may be crushed underneath it, resulting in serious injury or death.
- When using the machine for craning operations, be sure to comply with all local regulations.
- Do not use damaged chains or frayed cables, sables, slings, or ropes.
- Before craning, position the upperstructure with the travel motors at the rear.
- Move the load slowly and carefully. Never move it suddenly.
- Keep all persons well away from the load.
- Never move a load over a person's head.
- Do not allow anyone to approach the load until it is safely and securely situated on supporting blocks or on the ground.
- Never attach a sling or chain to the bucket teeth. They may come off, causing the load to fall.

032-E01A-0132



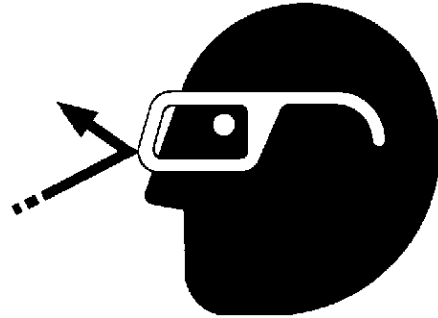
SA-014

## SAFETY

### PROTECT AGAINST FLYING DEBRIS

- If flying debris hit eyes or any other part of the body, serious injury may result.
  - Guard against injury from flying pieces of metal or debris; wear goggles or safety glasses.
  - Keep bystanders away from the working area before striking any object.

031-E01A-0432

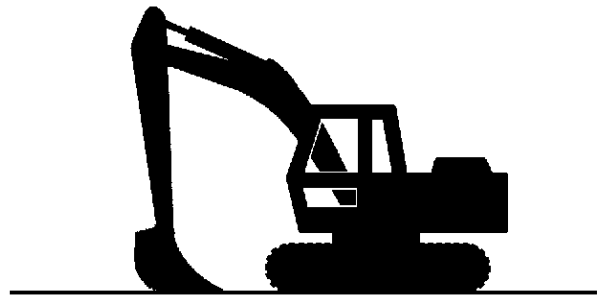


SA-432

### PARK MACHINE SAFELY

To avoid accidents:

- Park machine on a firm, level surface.
- Lower bucket to the ground.
- Turn auto-idle switch OFF.
- Run engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
- Turn key switch to OFF to stop engine.
- Remove the key from the key switch.
- Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
- Close windows, roof vent, and cab door.
- Lock all access doors and compartments.



SA-390

### HANDLE FLUIDS SAFELY—AVOID FIRES

- Handle fuel with care; it is highly flammable. If fuel ignites, an explosion and/or a fire may occur, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
  - Do not refuel the machine while smoking or when near open flame or sparks.
  - Always stop the engine before refueling the machine.
  - Fill the fuel tank outdoors.
- All fuels, most lubricants, and some coolants are flammable.
  - Store flammable fluids well away from fire hazards.
  - Do not incinerate or puncture pressurized containers.
  - Do not store oily rags; they can ignite and burn spontaneously.
  - Securely tighten the fuel and oil filler cap.

034-E01A-0496



SA-018



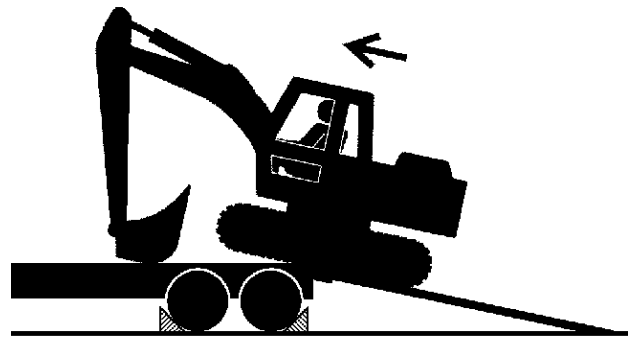
SA-019

## SAFETY

---

### TRANSPORT SAFELY

- Take care the machine may turn over when loading or unloading the machine onto or off of a truck or trailer.
  - Observe the related regulations and rules for safe transportation.
  - Select an appropriate truck or trailer for the machine to be transported.
  - Be sure to use a signal person.
  - Always follow the following precautions for loading or unloading:
    1. Select solid and level ground.
    2. Always use a ramp or deck strong enough to support the machine weight.
    3. Turn auto-idle switch OFF.
    4. Always select the slow speed mode with the travel mode switch.
    5. Never load or unload the machine onto or off a truck or trailer using the front attachment functions when driving up or down the ramp.
    6. Never steer the machine while on the ramp. If the traveling direction must be changed while the ramp, unload the machine from the ramp, reposition the machine on the ground, then try loading again.
    7. The top end of the ramp where it meets the flatbed is a sudden bump. Take care when traveling over it.
    8. Place blocks in front of and behind the tires. Securely hold the machine to the truck or trailer deck with wire ropes.



SA-395

Be sure to further follow the details described in the TRANSPORTING section.

035-E07A-0454

## SAFETY

### PRACTICE SAFE MAINTENANCE

To avoid accidents:

- Understand service procedures before starting work.
- Keep the work area clean and dry.
- Do not spray water or steam inside cab.
- Never lubricate or service the machine while it is moving.
- Keep hands, feet and clothing away from power-driven parts.

Before servicing the machine:

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.
4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
5. Turn the key switch to OFF to stop engine.
6. Relieve the pressure in the hydraulic system by moving the control levers several times.
7. Remove the key from the key switch.
8. Attach a "Do Not Operate" tag on the control lever.
9. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
10. Allow the engine to cool.

- If a maintenance procedure must be performed with the engine running, do not leave the machine unattended.
- If the machine must be raised, maintain a 90 to 110 ° angle between the boom and arm. Securely support any machine elements that must be raised for service work.
- Inspect certain parts periodically and repair or replace as necessary. Refer to the section discussing that part in the "MAINTENANCE" chapter of this manual.
- Keep all parts in good condition and properly installed.
- Fix damage immediately. Replace worn or broken parts. Remove any buildup of grease, oil, or debris.
- When cleaning parts, always use nonflammable detergent oil. Never use highly flammable oil such as fuel oil and gasoline to clean parts or surfaces.
- Disconnect battery ground cable (–) before making adjustments to electrical systems or before performing welding on the machine.



SA-028



SA-527

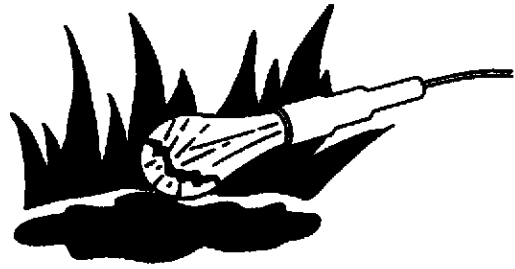
500-E02C-0520



## SAFETY

---

- Sufficiently illuminate the work site. Use a maintenance work light when working under or inside the machine.
- Always use a work light protected with a guard. In case the light bulb is broken, spilled fuel, oil, antifreeze fluid, or window washer fluid may catch fire.



SA-037

---

### WARN OTHERS OF SERVICE WORK

- Unexpected machine movement can cause serious injury.
  - Before performing any work on the machine, attach a “Do Not Operate” tag on the control lever.
    - This tag is available from your authorized dealer.



501-E01A-0287

SS2045102

---

### SUPPORT MACHINE PROPERLY

- Never attempt to work on the machine without securing the machine first.
  - Always lower the attachment to the ground before you work on the machine.
  - If you must work on a lifted machine or attachment, securely support the machine or attachment. Do not support the machine on cinder blocks, hollow tires, or props that may crumble under continuous load. Do not work under a machine that is supported solely by a jack.



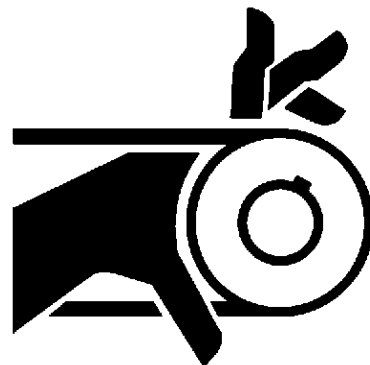
SA-527

519-E01A-0527

---

### STAY CLEAR OF MOVING PARTS

- Entanglement in moving parts can cause serious injury.
  - To prevent accidents, care should be taken to ensure that hands, feet, clothing, jewelry and hair do not become entangled when working around rotating parts.



502-E01A-0026

SA-026

## SAFETY

---

### PREVENT PARTS FROM FLYING

- Grease in the track adjuster is under high pressure. Failure to follow the precautions below may result in serious injury, blindness, or death.
  - Do not attempt to remove GREASE FITTING or VALVE ASSEMBLY.
  - As pieces may fly off, be sure to keep body and face away from valve.
  - Never attempt to disassemble the track adjuster. Inadvertent disassembling of the track adjuster may cause the parts such as a spring to fly off, possibly resulting in severe personal injury or death.
- Travel reduction gears are under pressure.
  - As pieces may fly off, be sure to keep body and face away from AIR RELEASE PLUG to avoid injury.
  - GEAR OIL is hot. Wait for GEAR OIL to cool, then gradually loosen AIR RELEASE PLUG to release pressure.



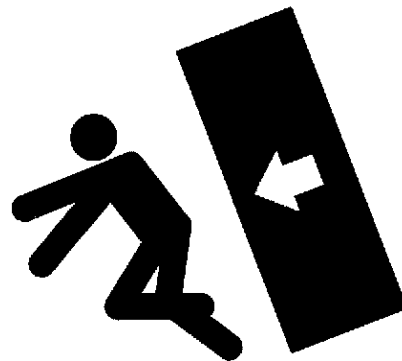
SA-344

503-E01B-0344

---

### STORE ATTACHMENTS SAFELY

- Stored attachments such as buckets, hydraulic hammers, and blades can fall and cause serious injury or death.
  - Securely store attachments and implements to prevent falling. Keep children and bystanders away from storage areas.



504-E01A-0034

SA-034

## SAFETY

### PREVENT BURNS

Hot spraying fluids:

- After operation, engine coolant is hot and under pressure. Hot water or steam is contained in the engine, radiator and heater lines.

Skin contact with escaping hot water or steam can cause severe burns.

- To avoid possible injury from hot spraying water. DO NOT remove the radiator cap until the engine is cool. When opening, turn the cap slowly to the stop. Allow all pressure to be released before removing the cap.
- The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Again, be sure to release all pressure before removing the cap.



SA-039

Hot fluids and surfaces:

- Engine oil, gear oil and hydraulic oil also become hot during operation.

The engine, hoses, lines and other parts become hot as well.

- Wait for the oil and components to cool before starting any maintenance or inspection work.



SA-225

505-E01B-0498

### REPLACE RUBBER HOSES PERIODICALLY

- Rubber hoses that contain flammable fluids under pressure may break due to aging, fatigue, and abrasion. It is very difficult to gauge the extent of deterioration due to aging, fatigue, and abrasion of rubber hoses by inspection alone.
  - Periodically replace the rubber hoses. (See the page of "Periodic replacement of parts" in the operator's manual.)
- Failure to periodically replace rubber hoses may cause a fire, fluid injection into skin, or the front attachment to fall on a person nearby, which may result in severe burns, gangrene, or otherwise serious injury or death.



SA-019

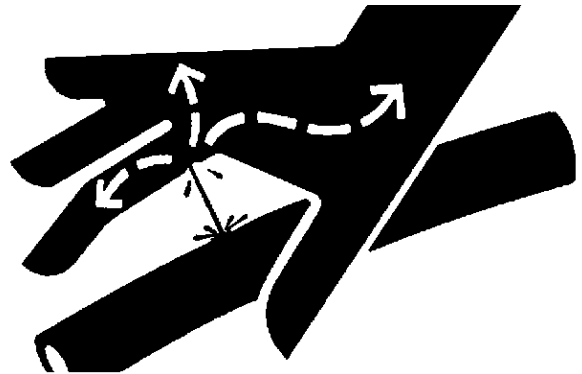
S506-E01A-0019

## SAFETY

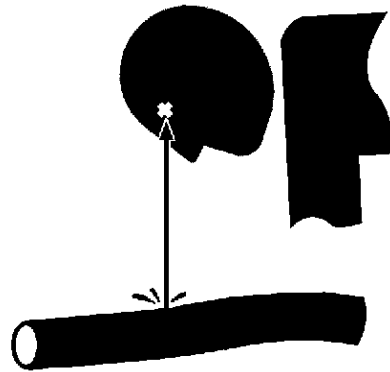
### AVOID HIGH-PRESSURE FLUIDS

- Fluids such as diesel fuel or hydraulic oil under pressure can penetrate the skin or eyes causing serious injury, blindness or death.
- Avoid this hazard by relieving pressure before disconnecting hydraulic or other lines.
- Tighten all connections before applying pressure.
- Search for leaks with a piece of cardboard; take care to protect hands and body from high-pressure fluids. Wear a face shield or goggles for eye protection.
- If an accident occurs, see a doctor familiar with this type of injury immediately. Any fluid injected into the skin must be surgically removed within a few hours or gangrene may result.

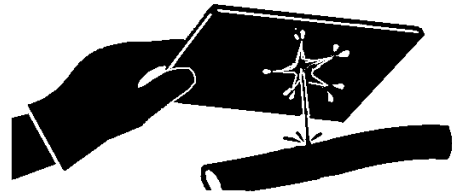
507-E03A-0499



SA-031



SA-292



SA-044

## SAFETY

---

### PREVENT FIRES

Check for Oil Leaks:

- Fuel, hydraulic oil and lubricant leaks can lead to fires.
  - Check for oil leaks due to missing or loose clamps, kinked hoses, lines or hoses that rub against each other, damage to the oil-cooler, and loose oil-cooler flange bolts.
  - Tighten, repair or replace any missing, loose or damaged clamps, lines, hoses, oil-cooler and oil-cooler flange bolts.
  - Do not bend or strike high-pressure lines.
  - Never install bent or damaged lines, pipes, or hoses.



SA-019

Check for Shorts:

- Short circuits can cause fires.
  - Clean and tighten all electrical connections.
  - Check before each shift or after eight (8) to ten (10) hours operation for loose, kinked, hardened or frayed electrical cables and wires.
  - Check before each shift or after eight (8) to ten (10) hours operation for missing or damaged terminal caps.
  - **DO NOT OPERATE MACHINE** if cable or wires are loose, kinked, etc..

## SAFETY

---

### Clean up Flammables:

- Spilled fuel and oil, and trash, grease, debris, accumulated coal dust, and other flammables may cause fires.
  - Prevent fires by inspecting and cleaning the machine daily, and by removing adhered oil or accumulated flammables immediately. Check and clean high temperature parts such as the exhaust outlet and mufflers earlier than the normal interval.
  - Do not wrap high temperature parts such as a muffler or exhaust pipe with oil absorbents.
  - Do not store oily cloths as they are vulnerable to catching fire.
  - Keep flammables away from open flames.
  - Do not ignite or crush a pressurized or sealed container.
- Wire screens may be provided on openings on the engine compartment covers to prevent flammables such as dead leaves from entering. However, flammables which have passed through the wire screen may cause fires. Check and clean the machine every day and immediately remove accumulated flammables.

### Check Key Switch:

- If a fire breaks out, failure to stop the engine will escalate the fire, hampering fire fighting.

Always check key switch function before operating the machine every day:

1. Start the engine and run it at slow idle.
  2. Turn the key switch to the OFF position to confirm that the engine stops.
- If any abnormalities are found, be sure to repair them before operating the machine.

508-E02B-0019

### Check Heat Shields:

- Damaged or missing heat shields may lead to fires.
  - Damaged or missing heat shields must be repaired or replaced before operating the machine.

508-E02A-0393

## SAFETY

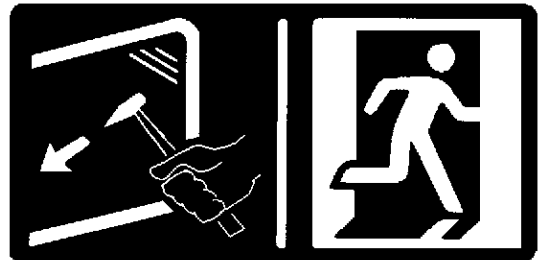
### EVACUATING IN CASE OF FIRE

- If a fire breaks out, evacuate the machine in the following way:
  - Stop the engine by turning the key switch to the OFF position if there is time.
  - Use a fire extinguisher if there is time.
  - Exit the machine.
- In an emergency, if the cab door or front window can not be opened, break the front or rear window panes with the emergency evacuation hammer to escape from the cab. Refer the explanation pages on the Emergency Evacuation Method.



SA-393

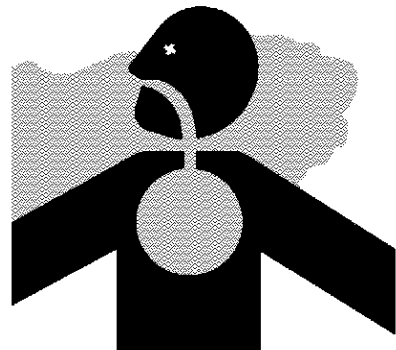
18-E02B-0393



SS-1510

### BEWARE OF EXHAUST FUMES

- Prevent asphyxiation. Engine exhaust fumes can cause sickness or death.
  - If you must operate in a building, be sure there is adequate ventilation. Either use an exhaust pipe extension to remove the exhaust fumes or open doors and windows to bring enough outside air into the area.

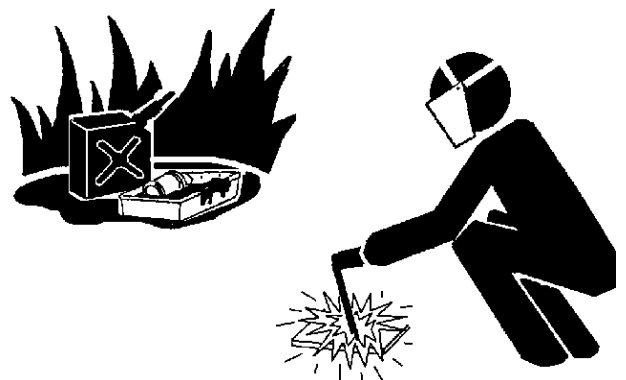


509-E01A-0016

SA-016

### PRECAUTIONS FOR WELDING AND GRINDING

- Welding may generate gas and/or small fires.
  - Be sure to perform welding in a well ventilated and prepared area. Store flammable objects in a safe place before starting welding.
  - Only qualified personnel should perform welding. Never allow an unqualified person to perform welding.
- Grinding on the machine may create fire hazards. Store flammable objects in a safe place before starting grinding.
- After finishing welding and grinding, recheck that there are no abnormalities such as the area surrounding the welded area still smoldering.



SA-818

523-E01A-0818

## SAFETY

---

### AVOID HEATING NEAR PRESSURIZED FLUID LINES

- Flammable spray can be generated by heating near pressurized fluid lines, resulting in severe burns to yourself and bystanders.
- Do not heat by welding, soldering, or using a torch near pressurized fluid lines or other flammable materials.
- Pressurized lines can be accidentally cut when heat goes beyond the immediate flame area. Install temporary fire-resistant guards to protect hoses or other materials before engaging in welding, soldering, etc.



SA-030

### AVOID APPLYING HEAT TO LINES CONTAINING FLAMMABLE FLUIDS

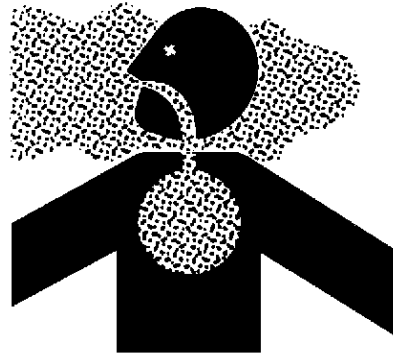
- Do not weld or flame cut pipes or tubes that contain flammable fluids.
- Clean them thoroughly with nonflammable solvent before welding or flame cutting them.

510-E01B-0030

---

### REMOVE PAINT BEFORE WELDING OR HEATING

- Hazardous fumes can be generated when paint is heated by welding, soldering, or using a torch. If inhaled, these fumes may cause sickness.
  - Avoid potentially toxic fumes and dust.
  - Do all such work outside or in a well-ventilated area. Dispose of paint and solvent properly.
- Remove paint before welding or heating:
    1. If you sand or grind paint, avoid breathing the dust. Wear an approved respirator.
    2. If you use solvent or paint stripper, remove stripper with soap and water before welding. Remove solvent or paint stripper containers and other flammable material from area. Allow fumes to disperse at least 15 minutes before welding or heating.



SA-029

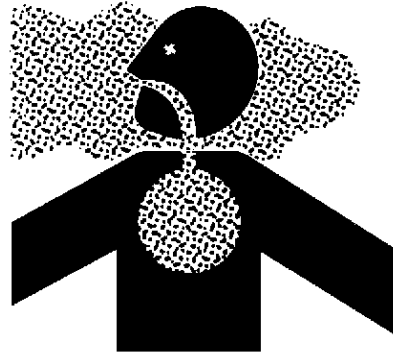
511-E01A-0029



## SAFETY

### BEWARE OF ASBESTOS DUST

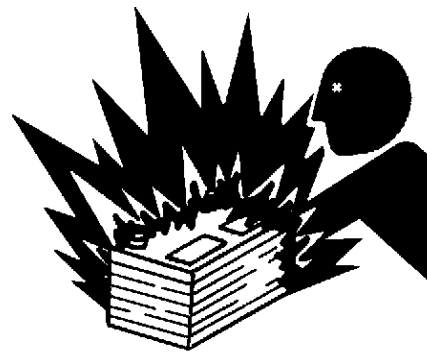
- Take care not to inhale dust produced in the work site. Inhalation of asbestos fibers may be the cause of lung cancer.
  - Depending on the work site conditions, the risk of inhaling asbestos fiber may exist. Spray water to prevent asbestos from becoming airborne. Do not use compressed air.
  - When operating the machine in a work site where asbestos might be present, be sure to operate the machine from the upwind side and wear a mask rated to prevent the inhalation of asbestos.
  - Keep bystanders out of the work site during operation.
  - Asbestos might be present in imitation parts. Use only genuine Hitachi Parts.



SA-029

### PREVENT BATTERY EXPLOSIONS

- Battery gas can explode.
  - Keep sparks, lighted matches, and flame away from the top of battery.
  - Never check battery charge by placing a metal object across the posts. Use a voltmeter or hydrometer.
  - Do not charge a frozen battery; it may explode. Warm the battery to 16 °C (60 °F) first.
  - Do not continue to use or charge the battery when electrolyte level is lower than specified. Explosion of the battery may result.
  - Loose terminals may produce sparks. Securely tighten all terminals.
- Battery electrolyte is poisonous. If the battery should explode, battery electrolyte may be splashed into eyes, possibly resulting in blindness.
  - Be sure to wear eye protection when checking electrolyte specific gravity.

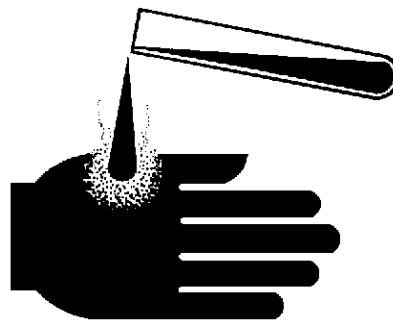


SA-032

512-E01B-0032

### SERVICE AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM SAFELY

- If spilled onto skin, refrigerant may cause a cold contact burn.
  - Refer to the instructions described on the container for proper use when handling the refrigerant.
  - Use a recovery and recycling system to avoid leaking refrigerant into the atmosphere.
  - Never touch the refrigerant.



513-E01A-0405

SA-405

## SAFETY

---

### HANDLE CHEMICAL PRODUCTS SAFELY

- Direct exposure to hazardous chemicals can cause serious injury. Potentially hazardous chemicals used with your machine include such items as lubricants, coolants, paints, and adhesives.
  - A Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) provides specific details on chemical products: physical and health hazards, safety procedures, and emergency response techniques.
  - Check the MSDS before you start any job using a hazardous chemical. That way you will know exactly what the risks are and how to do the job safely. Then follow procedures and use recommended equipment.
  - See your authorized dealer for MSDS's (available only in English) on chemical products used with your machine.

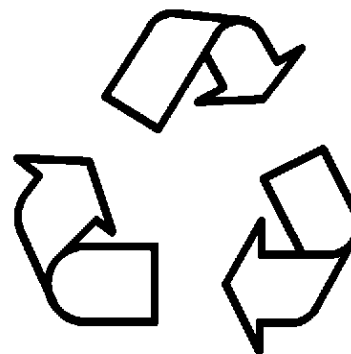


SA-309

515-E01A-0309

### DISPOSE OF WASTE PROPERLY

- Improperly disposing of waste can threaten the environment and ecology. Potentially harmful waste used with HITACHI equipment includes such items as oil, fuel, coolant, brake fluid, filters, and batteries.
  - Use leakproof containers when draining fluids. Do not use food or beverage containers that may mislead someone into drinking from them.
  - Do not pour waste onto the ground, down a drain, or into any water source.
  - Air conditioning refrigerants escaping into the air can damage the Earth's atmosphere. Government regulations may require a certified air conditioning service center to recover and recycle used air conditioning refrigerants.
  - Inquire on the proper way to recycle or dispose of waste from your local environmental or recycling center, or from your authorized dealer.



SA-226

516-E01A-0226

## SAFETY

---

### PRECAUTION FOR COMMUNICATION TERMINAL EQUIPMENT

This machine has a communication terminal equipment emitting electrical waves installed inside a rear tray which is situated at the back of the driver's seat. There is a possibility that a medical device, including an implantable device such as a cardiac pacemaker, would be affected and would malfunction by the electrical waves emitted from the communication terminal equipment.

Any person affixed with a medical device such as the above should not use this machine, unless the medical device and the rear tray are at least 22 centimeters (8.662 inches) apart at all times. If such condition cannot be met, please contact our company's nearest dealer and have the person in charge stop the communication terminal equipment from functioning completely and confirm that it is not emitting electrical waves.

Specific Absorption Rate ("SAR") (measured by 10 g per unit) of communication terminal equipments:

E-GSM900      0.573 W/Kg ( 914.80 MHz )

DCS-1800      0.130 W/Kg (1710.20 MHz)

WCDMA B and I   0.271 W/Kg (1950.00 MHz)

\*This data was measured by having each type of communication terminal equipment, such as the communication terminal equipment used with this machine, and a human body set apart by 3 cm (1.18 inches).

\* SAR is a measure of the amount of radio frequency energy absorbed by the body when using a wireless application such as a mobile phone.

In Japan: \*Under the Japanese Radio Act and other relevant Japanese regulations, the maximum SAR value is 2 W/kg (as of March 2010).

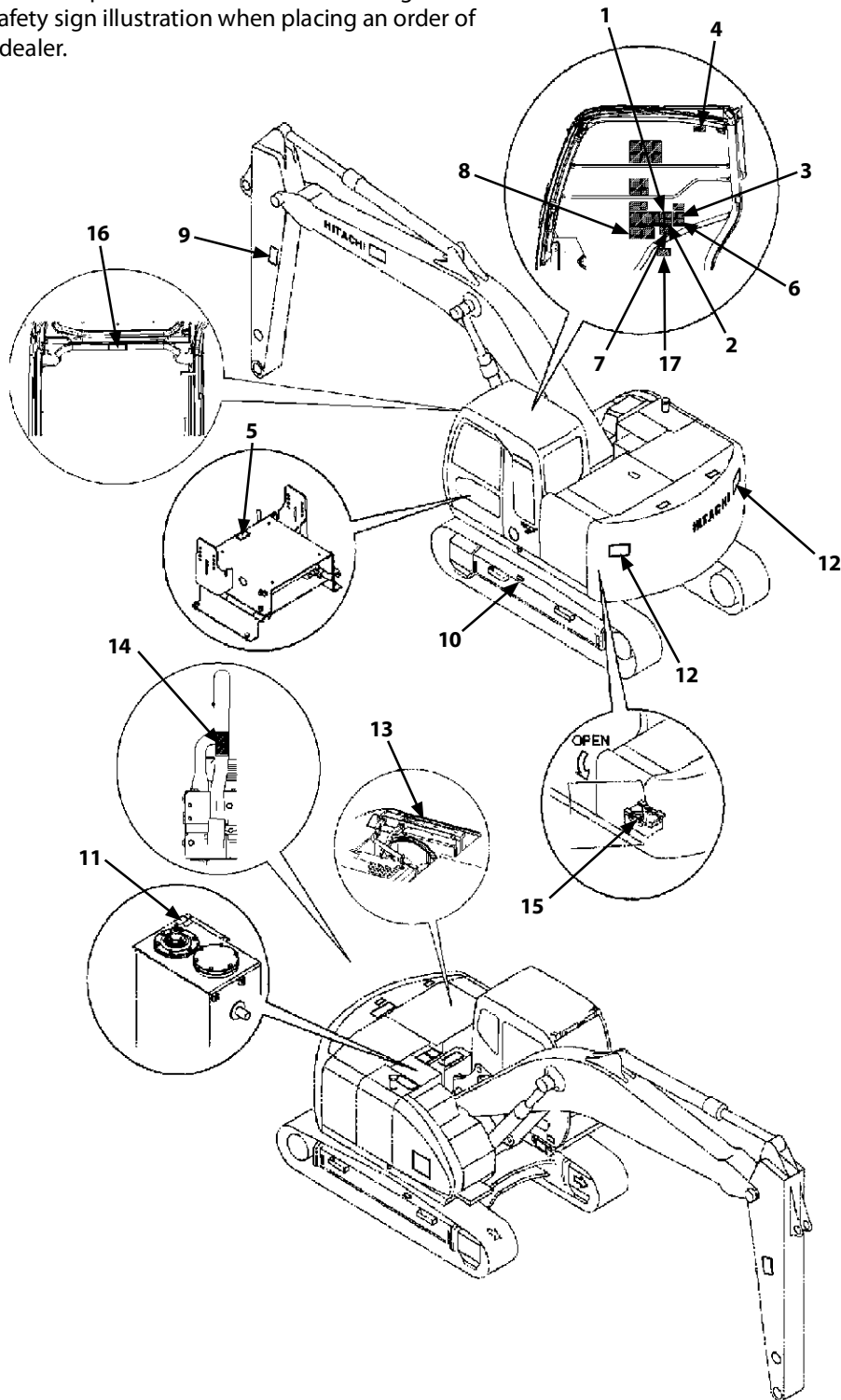
In EU Member nation: \*Under the "Council Recommendation 1999/519/EC 12 July 1999", the maximum SAR value is 2 W/kg (as of March 2010).



SA-2293

## SAFETY SIGNS/Asia/Middle and Near East Model Only

All safety signs and their locations affixed on the machine are illustrated in this group. Make sure of the contents described in the safety signs through reading actual ones affixed on the machine to ensure safe machine operation. Always keep the safety signs clean. In case a safety sign is broken or lost, immediately, obtain a new replacement and affix it again in position on the machine. Use the part No. indicated under the right corner of each safety sign illustration when placing an order of it to the Hitachi dealer.

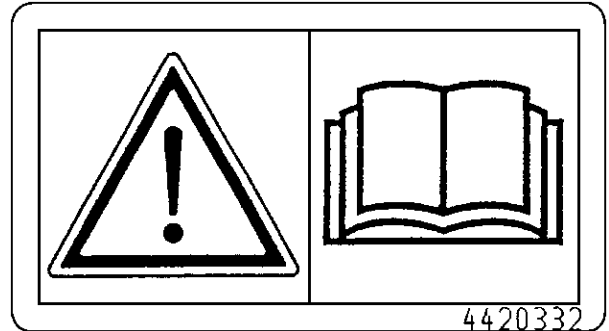


## SAFETY SIGNS/Asia/Middle and Near East Model Only

1.

### WARNING!

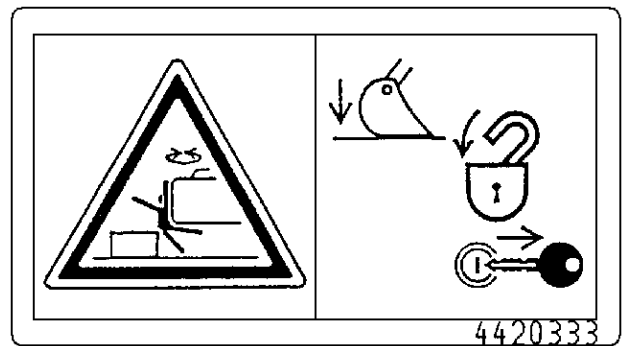
Prior to operation, maintenance, disassembling, and transportation of the machine, be sure to read and understand the Operator's Manual.



SS-1616

2.

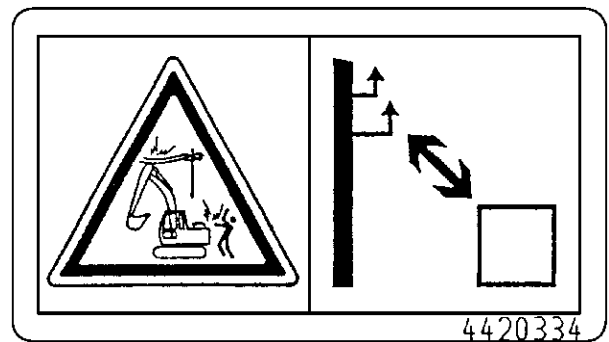
If the parked machine is unexpectedly moved, serious injury or death due to crushing may result. Be sure to lower the front attachment to the ground, lock the control levers, and remove the engine key before leaving the machine unattended.



SS4420333

3.

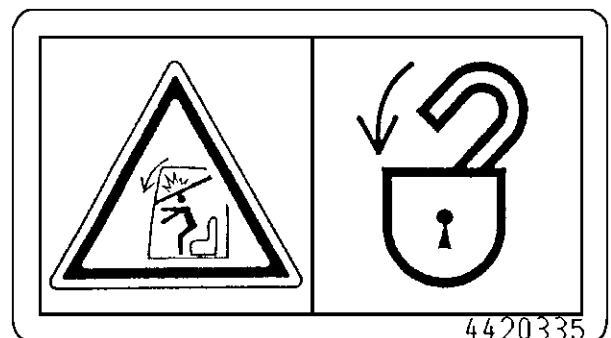
Sign indicates an electrocution hazard if machine is brought too near electric power lines. Keep a safe distance from electric power lines.



SS-1613

4.

Sign indicates a hazard from falling window. After raising window, be sure to lock it in place with lock pins.

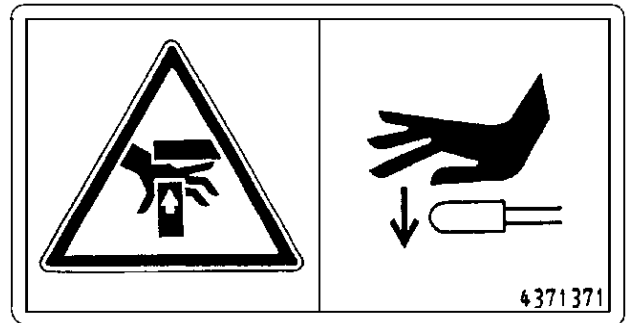


SS-1618

## SAFETY SIGNS/Asia/Middle and Near East Model Only

**5.**

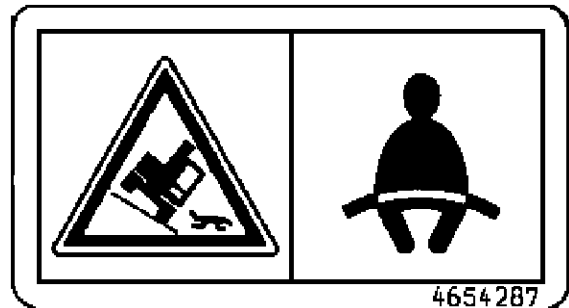
When moving the seat height/tilt lever downward, press the lever grip with a palm from the top side. Do not grasp the lever grip to operate the lever, possibly resulting in pinch of your fingers into the seat stand.



SS-955

**6.**

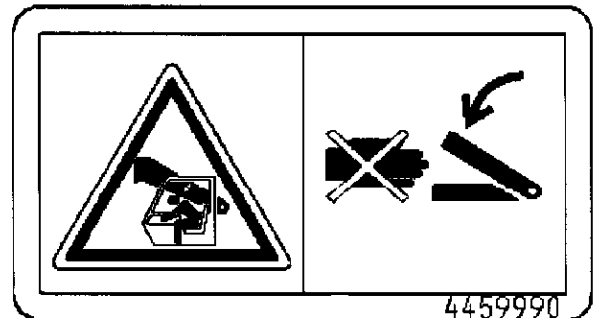
If the machine should overturn, the operator may become injured and/or thrown from the cab and/or crushed by the overturning machine.



SS4654287

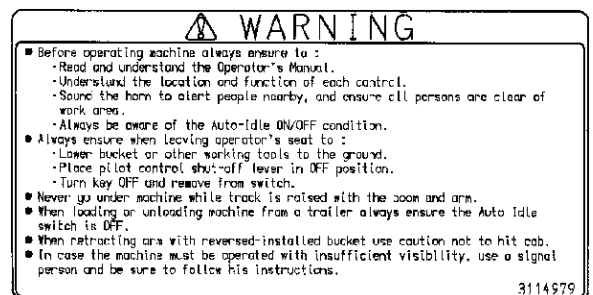
**7.**

Do not extend your hands or head from the window. Your hands or head may come in contact with the boom.



SS4459990

**8.**



3114979

SS3114979

## SAFETY SIGNS/Asia/Middle and Near East Model Only

**9.**

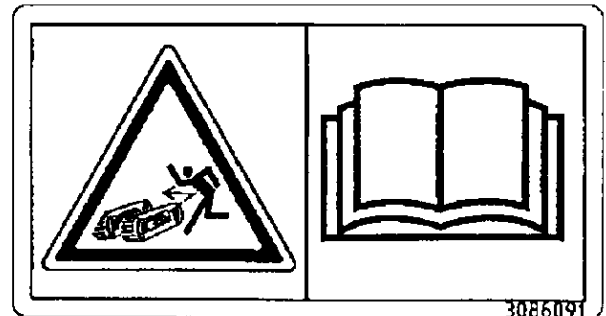
Sign indicates a hazard of being hit by the working device of the machine.  
Keep away from machine during operation.



SS3089581

**10.**

Sign indicates a hazard of a flying plug from track adjuster that could cause injury.  
Read manual before adjusting track for safe and proper handling.

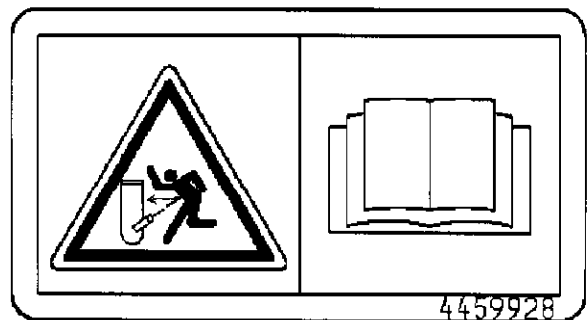


SS3086091

**11.**

Sign indicates a burn hazard from compressed air and spurting hot oil if the oil inlet is uncapped during or right after operation.  
Read manual for safe and proper handling.

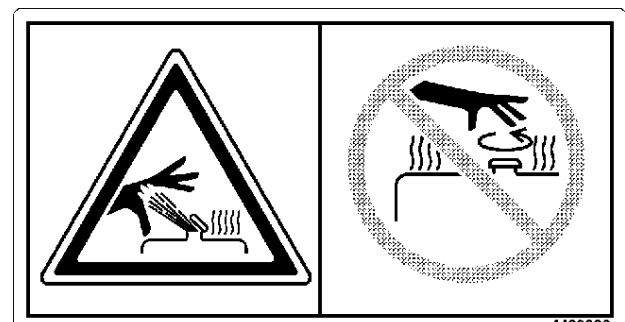
A



SS4459928

Sign indicates a burn hazard from spurting hot water or oil if radiator or hydraulic oil tank is uncapped while hot.  
Allow radiator or hydraulic oil tank to cool before removing cap.

B



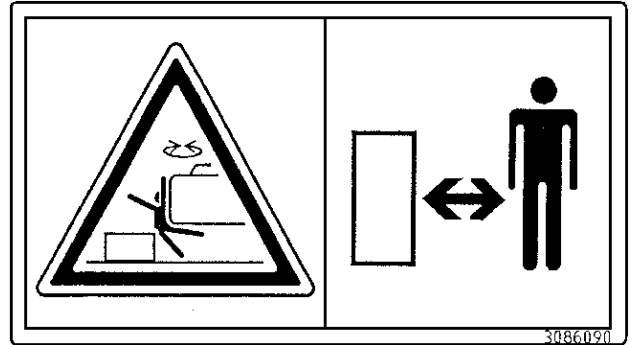
SS4420336

## SAFETY SIGNS/Asia/Middle and Near East Model Only

12.

Sign indicates a crush hazard by rotation of upper structure of the machine.

Keep away from swinging area of machine.



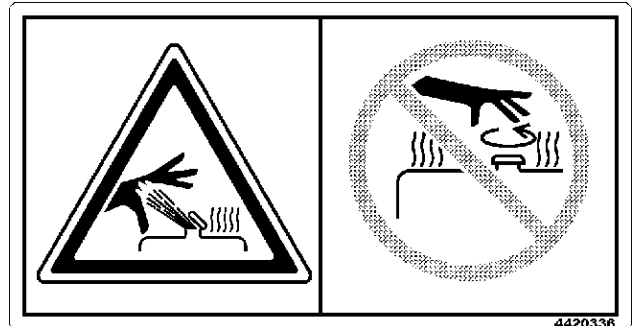
3086.090

SS-1614

13.

Sign indicates a burn hazard from spurting hot water or oil if radiator or hydraulic oil tank is uncapped while hot.

Allow radiator or hydraulic oil tank to cool before removing cap.



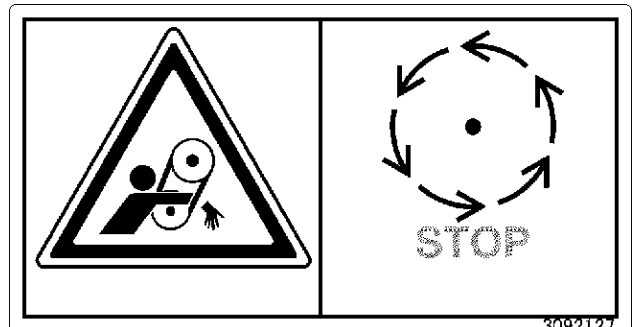
4420336

SS4420336

14.

Sign indicates a hazard of rotating parts, such as belt.

Turn off before inspection and maintenance.



3092127

SS3092127

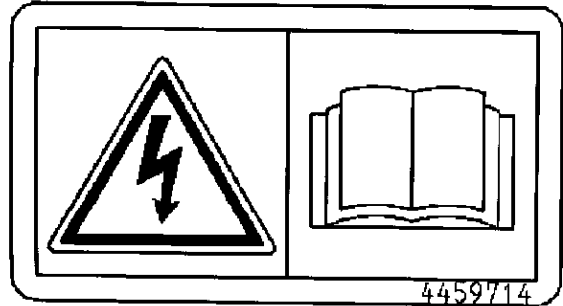


## SAFETY SIGNS/Asia/Middle and Near East Model Only

**15.**

Sign indicates an electrical hazard from handling the cable.  
Read manual for safe and proper handling.

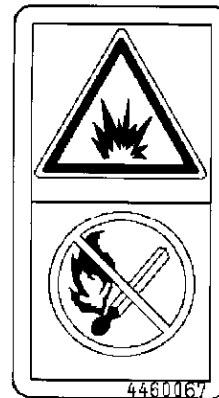
A



SS4459714

Sign indicates an explosion hazard.  
Keep fire and open flames away from this area.

B



SS4460067

Skin contact with electrolyte will cause burns. Splashed electrolyte into eyes will cause blindness. Take care not to touch electrolyte.

C



SS4460056

**16.**

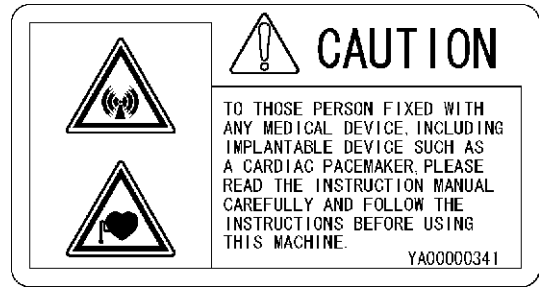


SS4467093

## SAFETY SIGNS/Asia/Middle and Near East Model Only

---

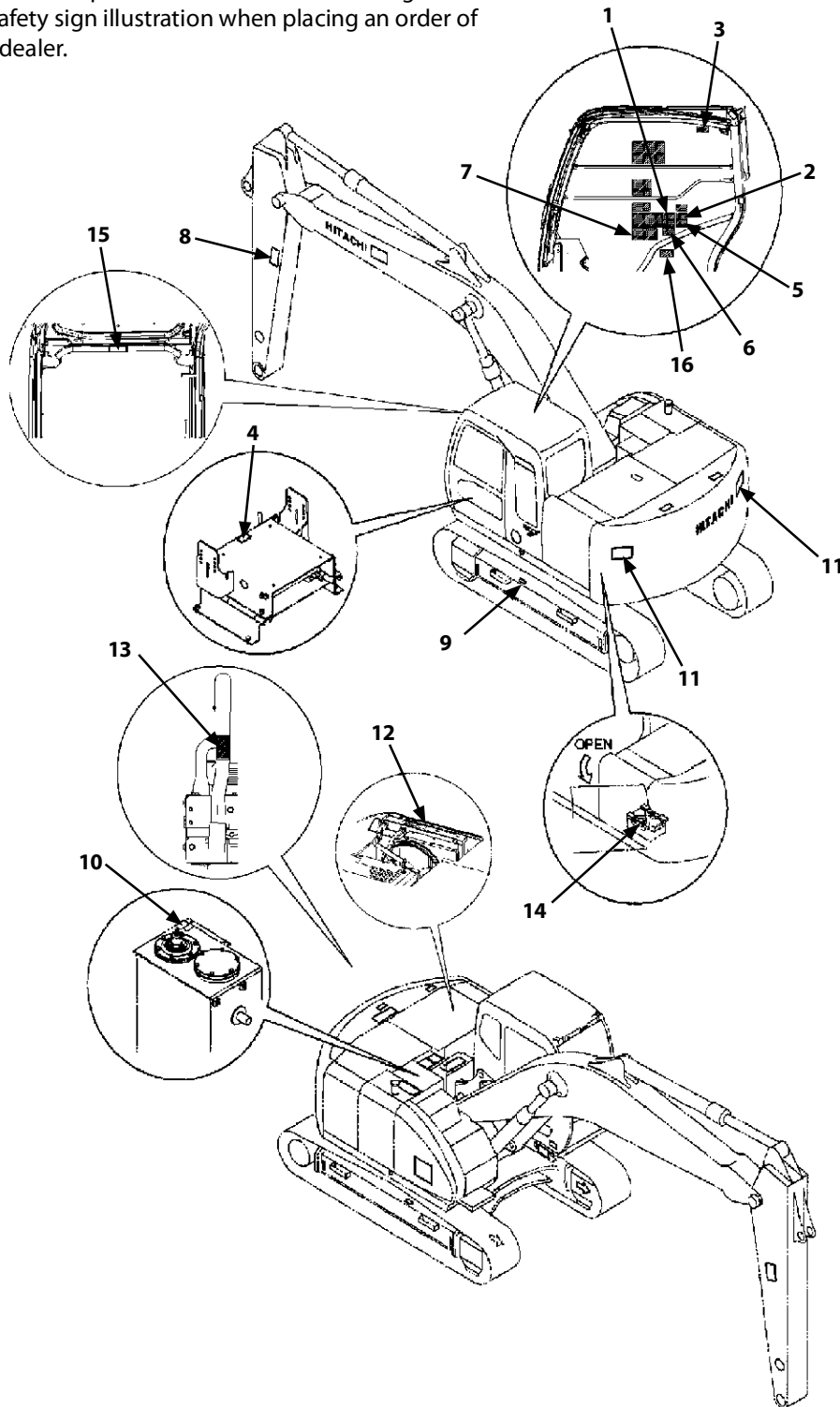
17.



SSYA0000341

## SAFETY SIGNS/Oceania Model Only

All safety signs and their locations affixed on the machine are illustrated in this group. Make sure of the contents described in the safety signs through reading actual ones affixed on the machine to ensure safe machine operation. Always keep the safety signs clean. In case a safety sign is broken or lost, immediately, obtain a new replacement and affix it again in position on the machine. Use the part No. indicated under the right corner of each safety sign illustration when placing an order of it to the Hitachi dealer.

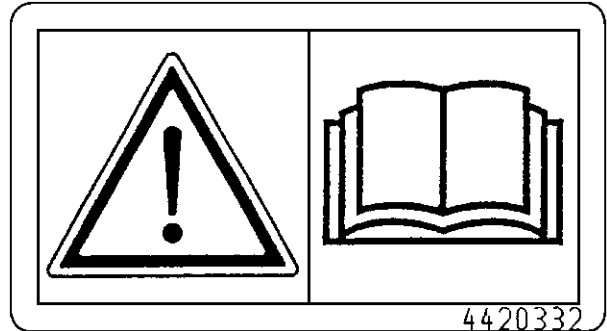


## SAFETY SIGNS/Oceania Model Only

1.

### WARNING!

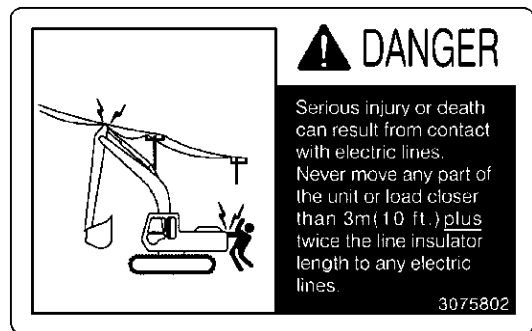
Prior to operation, maintenance, disassembling, and transportation of the machine, be sure to read and understand the Operator's Manual.



SS-1616

2.

Sign indicates an electrocution hazard if machine is brought too near electric power lines.  
Keep a safe distance from electric power lines.



SS-862

3.

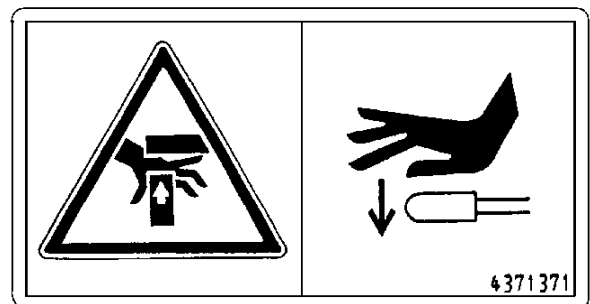
Sign indicates a hazard from falling window.  
After raising window, be sure to lock it in place with lock pins.



SS-863

4.

When moving the seat height/tilt lever downward, press the lever grip with a palm from the top side. Do not grasp the lever grip to operate the lever, possibly resulting in pinch of your fingers into the seat stand.

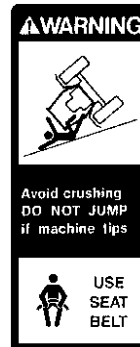


SS-955

## SAFETY SIGNS/Oceania Model Only

5.

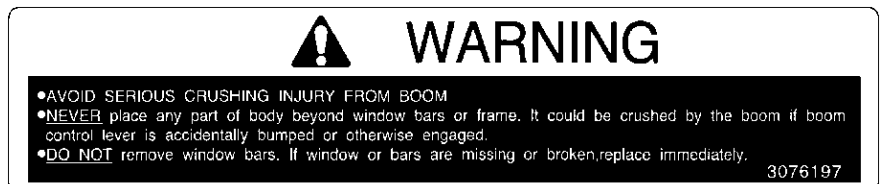
If the machine should overturn, the operator may become injured and/or throw from the cab and/or crushed by the overturning machine.



SS3088058

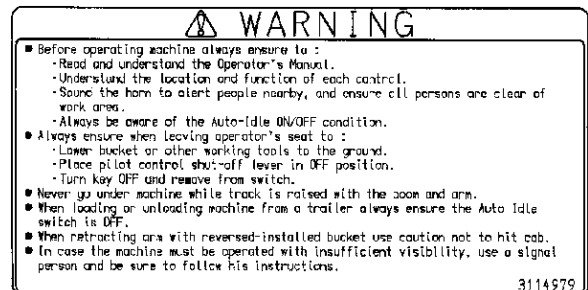
6.

Do not extend your hands or head from the window. Your hands or head may come in contact with the boom.



SS-859

7.

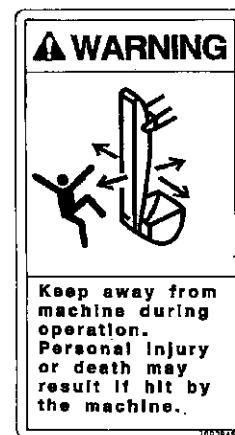


SS3114979

8.

Sign indicates a hazard of being hit by the working device of the machine.

Keep away from machine during operation.



SS3092845

## SAFETY SIGNS/Oceania Model Only

9.

Sign indicates a hazard of a flying plug from track adjuster that could cause injury.  
Read manual before adjusting track for safe and proper handling.

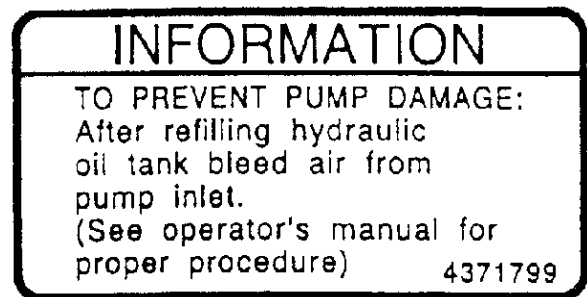


SS-408

10.

Sign indicates a burn hazard from compressed air and spurt-ing hot oil if the oil inlet is uncapped during or right after operation.  
Read manual for safe and proper handling.

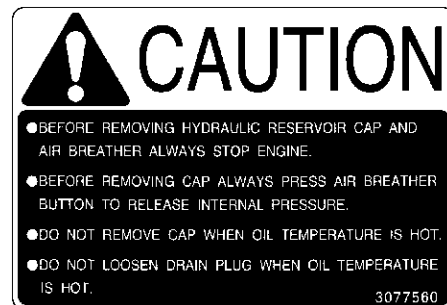
A



SS4371799

Sign indicates a burn hazard from spurting hot water or oil if radiator or hydraulic oil tank is uncapped while hot.  
Allow radiator or hydraulic oil tank to cool before removing cap.

B



SS-864

## SAFETY SIGNS/Oceania Model Only

11.

Sign indicates a crush hazard by rotation of upper structure of the machine.

Keep away from swinging area of machine.

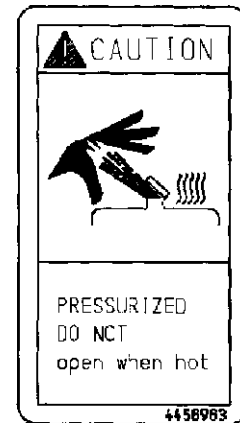


SS-024

12.

Sign indicates a burn hazard from spurting hot water or oil if radiator or hydraulic oil tank is uncapped while hot.

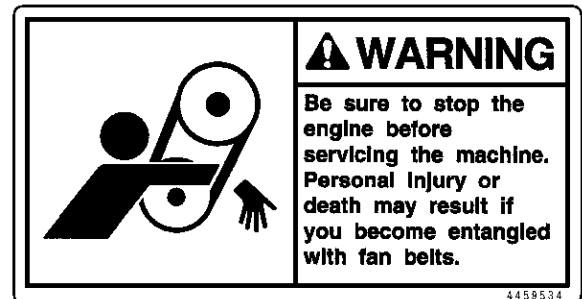
Allow radiator or hydraulic oil tank to cool before removing cap.



SS4456963

13.

Sign indicates a hazard of rotating parts, such as belt. Turn off before inspection and maintenance.

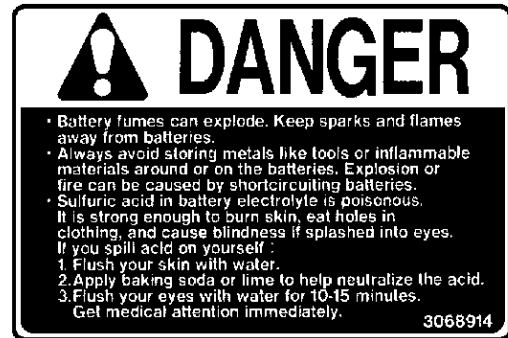


SS4459534

## SAFETY SIGNS/Oceania Model Only

14.

Sign indicates an explosion hazard.  
Keep fire and open flames away from this area.  
Skin contact with electrolyte will cause burns. Splashed electrolyte into eyes will cause blindness. Take care not to touch electrolyte.



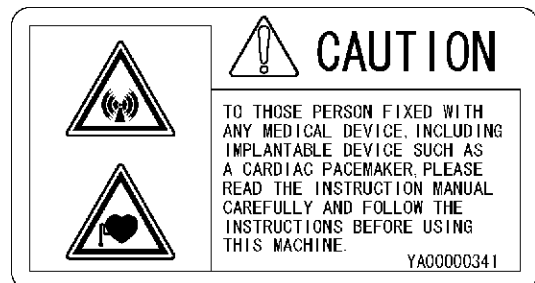
SS-411

15.



SS4467093

16.



SSYA0000341



**SAFETY SIGNS/Oceania Model Only**

---

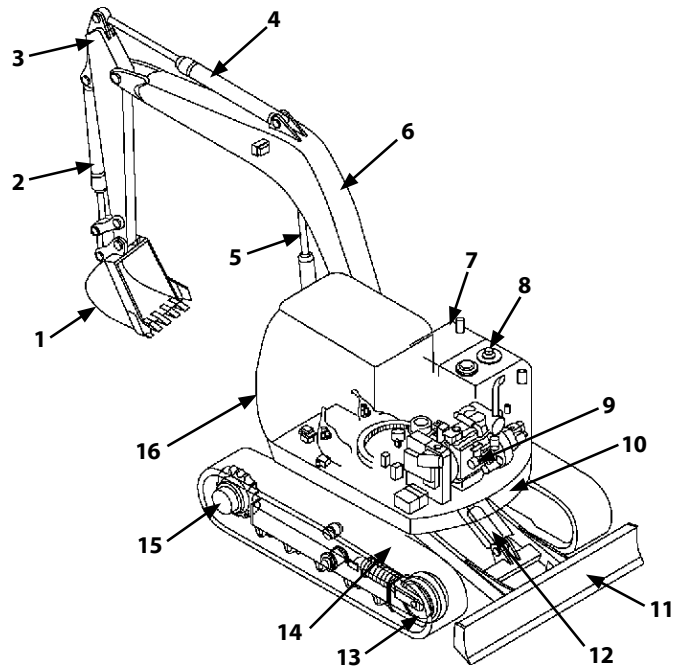
**MEMO**

A series of horizontal dotted lines for writing a memo.

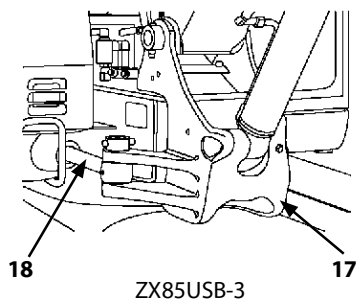
## COMPONENTS NAME

### COMPONENTS NAME

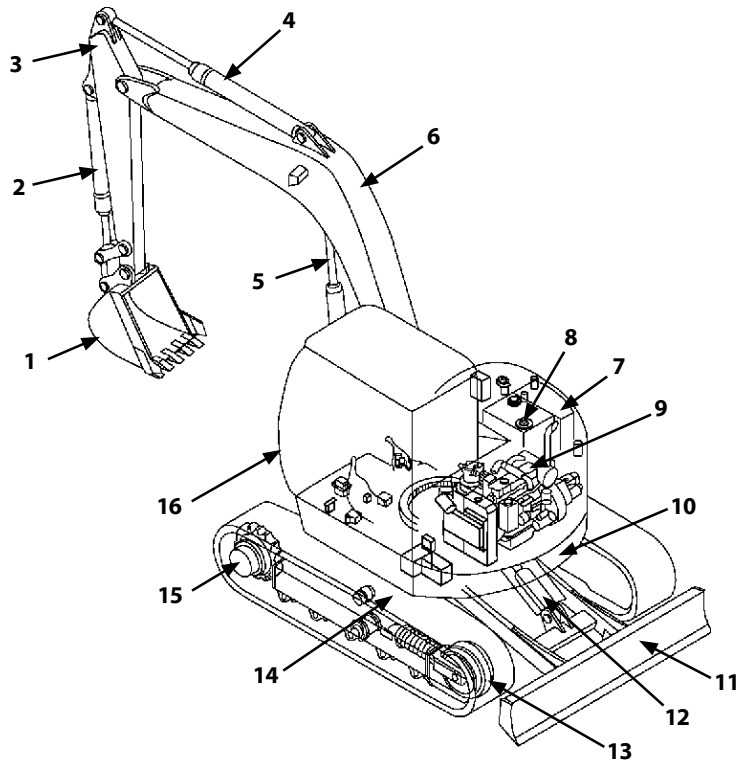
- 1- Bucket
- 2- Bucket Cylinder
- 3- Arm
- 4- Arm Cylinder
- 5- Boom Cylinder
- 6- Boom
- 7- Fuel Tank
- 8- Hydraulic Oil Tank
- 9- Engine
- 10- Counterweight
- 11- Blade
- 12- Blade Cylinder
- 13- Front Idler
- 14- Track
- 15- Travel Device
- 16- Cab
- 17- Boom Swing Post
- 18- Boom Swing Cylinder



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, ZX80LCK-3      M1P1-07-045



ZX85USB-3



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3      M1P1-07-049

## GETTING ON/OFF THE MACHINE

### GETTING ON/OFF THE MACHINE

Foot holds (1) and handrails (2) are provided in and around the machine.

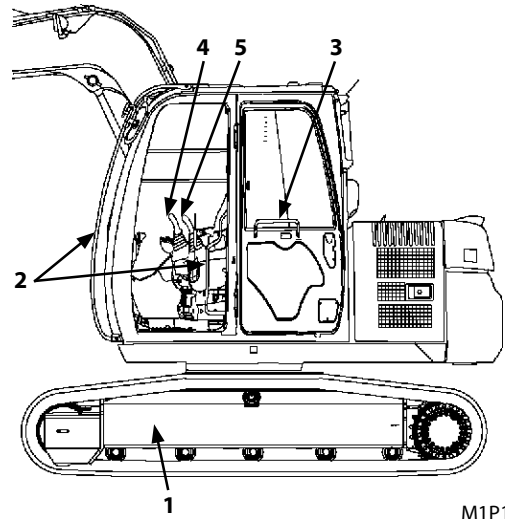
These are used to get on and off the cab safely as well as to do inspection and maintenance of the machine safely.

Never jump on or off the machine as it is very dangerous.

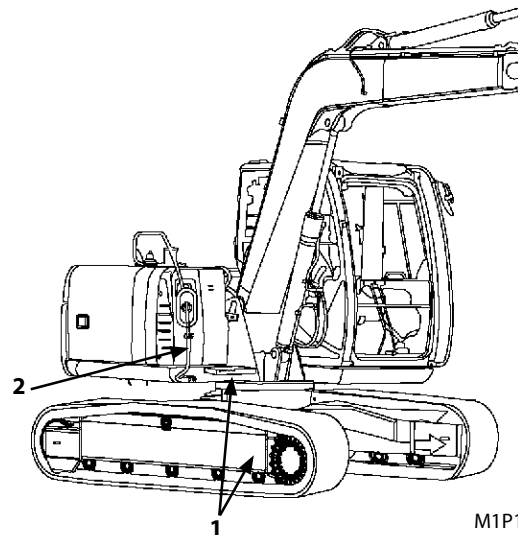


#### WARNING:

- **Never attach a wire on the foot holds (1) to lift the cab or main body or while transporting the machine on a truck or trailer as it is dangerous.**
- **The door handle (3) is not a handrail. Do not hold the door handle (3) as a handrail when getting on and off the machine.**
- **Do not hold the control levers (4), steering wheel or forward/reverse lever when getting on and off the machine.**



M1P1-01-063



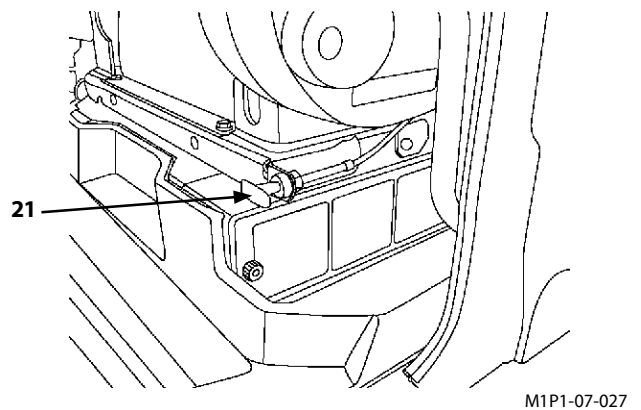
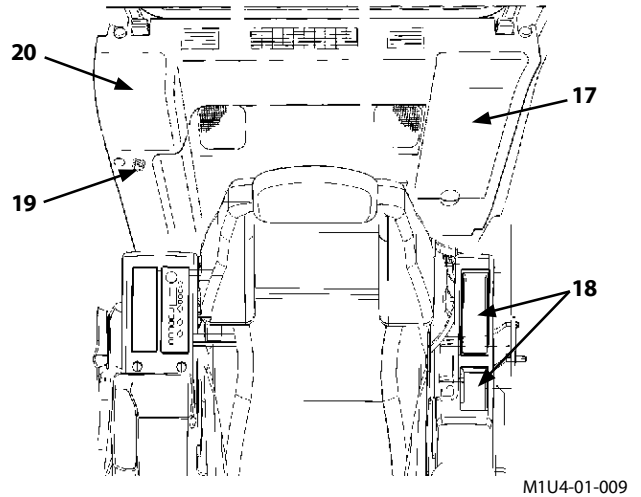
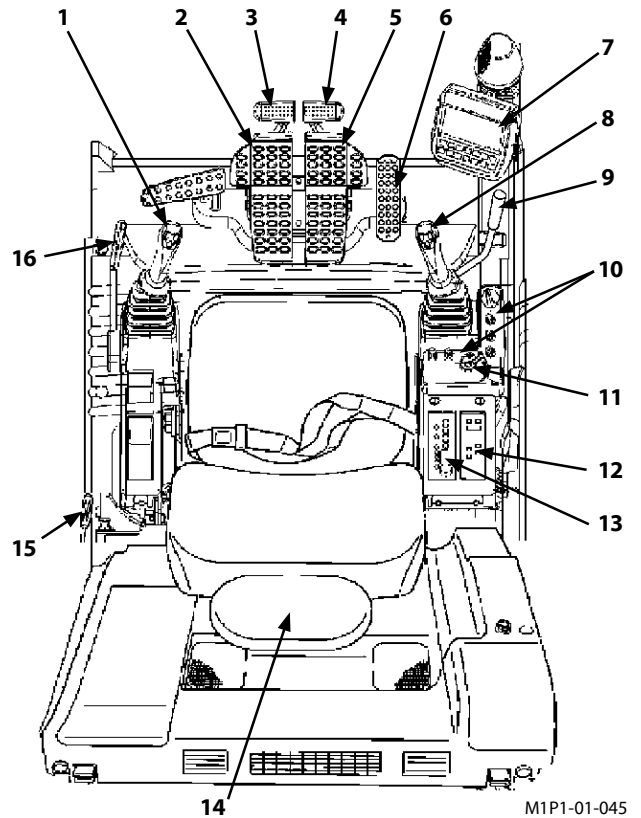
M1P1-01-064

# OPERATOR'S STATION

## CAB FEATURES

### ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

- 1- Left Control Lever/Horn Switch  
(On Top of Lever)
- 2- Left Travel Pedal
- 3- Left Travel Lever
- 4- Right Travel Lever
- 5- Right Travel Pedal
- 6- Attachment Pedal (Optional)
- 7- Multi Function Monitor Panel
- 8- Right Control Lever
- 9- Blade Lever
- 10- Switch Panel
- 11- Key Switch
- 12- Air Conditioner Panel
- 13- Radio
- 14- Operator's Seat
- 15- Cab Door Release Lever
- 16- Pilot Control Shut-Off Lever
- 17- Fuse Box
- 18- Switch Panel
- 19- Cigar Lighter
- 20- Hot & Cool Box
- 21- Engine Stop knob

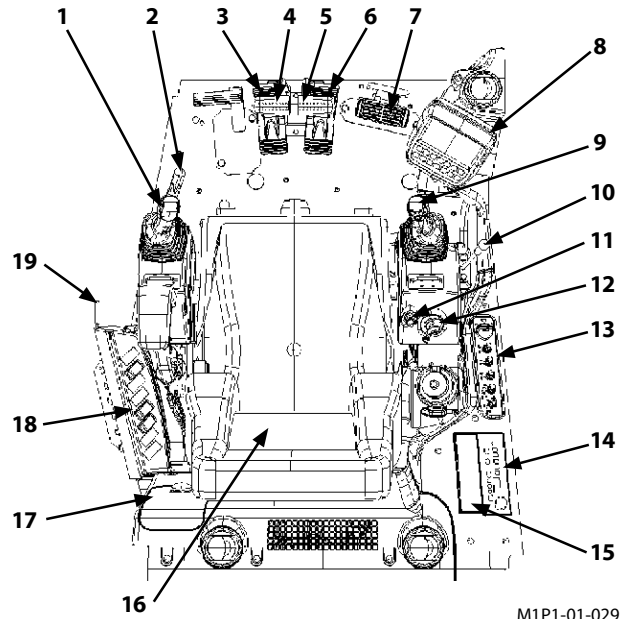


# OPERATOR'S STATION

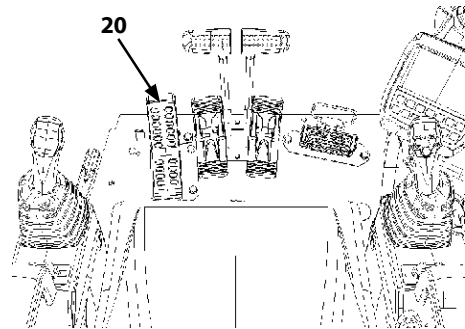
## CAB FEATURES

### ZX85USB-3

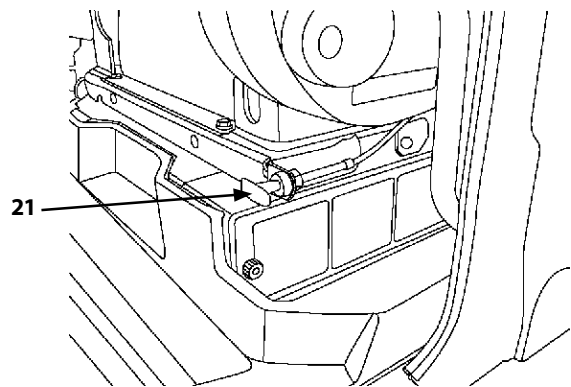
- 1- Left Control Lever
- 2- Pilot Control Shut-Off Lever
- 3- Left Travel Pedal
- 4- Left Travel Lever
- 5- Right Travel Lever
- 6- Right Travel Pedal
- 7- Boom Swing Pedal
- 8- Multi Function Monitor Panel
- 9- Right Control Lever/Horn Switch (On Top of Lever)
- 10- Blade Lever
- 11- Cigar Lighter
- 12- Key Switch
- 13- Switch Panel
- 14- Radio
- 15- Air Conditioner Panel
- 16- Operator's Seat
- 17- Fuse Box
- 18- Switch Panel
- 19- Cab Door Release Lever
- 20- Attachment Pedal (Optional)
- 21- Engine Stop knob



M1P1-01-029



M1P1-01-042



M1P1-07-027

# OPERATOR'S STATION

---

## MULTIFUNCTION MONITOR

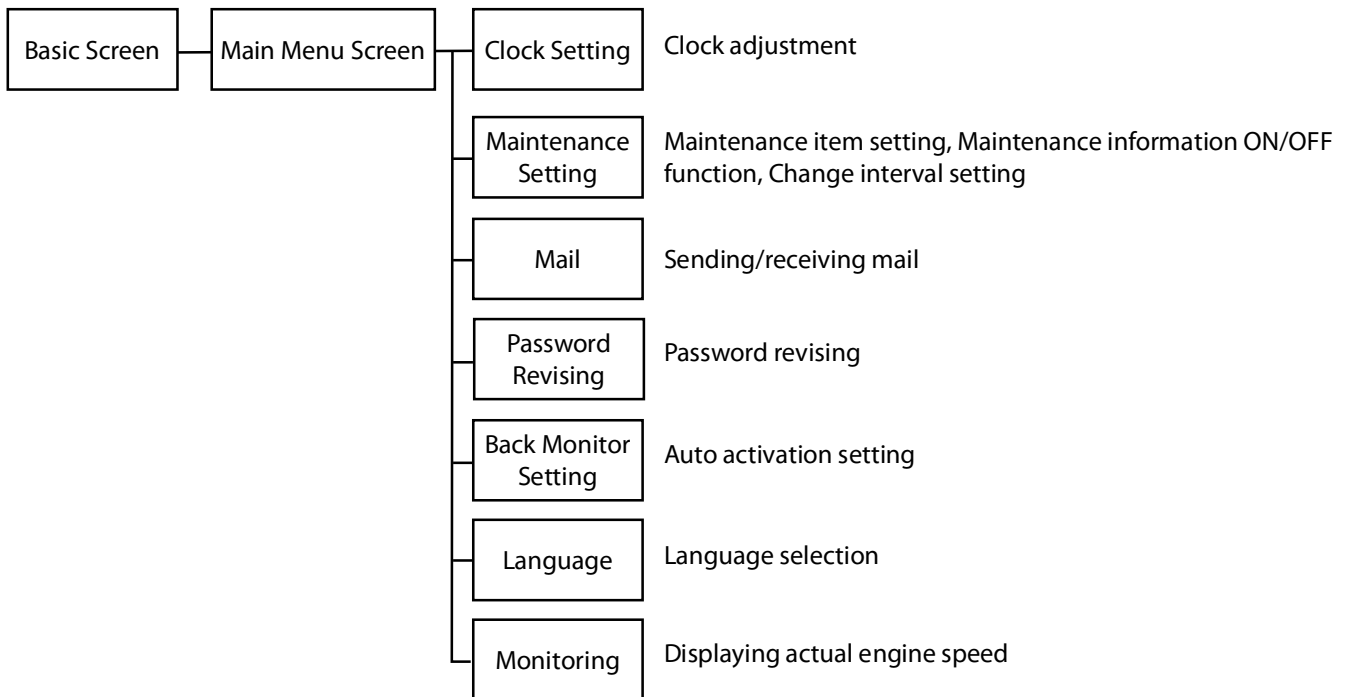
### Function

The multifunction monitor on this machine functions as follows:

1. Displaying various kinds of meters and indicators
2. Operating TEN- key lock function
3. Setting the back monitor
4. Control of maintenance data

### Screen

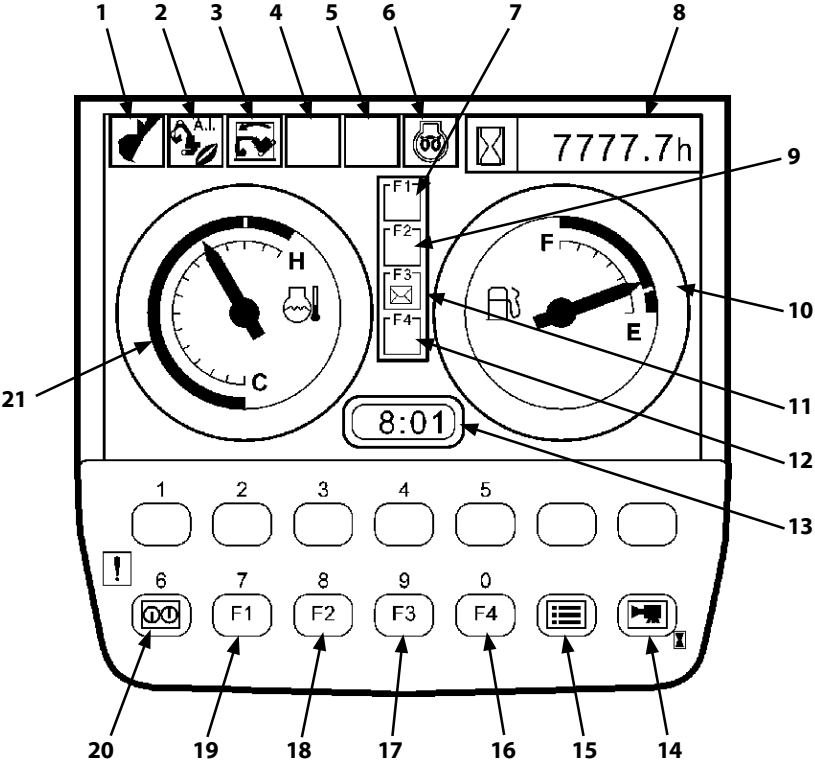
The monitor screen is organized as shown below. The main menu screen consists of 7 kinds of individual function screen.



# OPERATOR'S STATION

## BASIC SCREEN

- 1- Work mode indicator
- 2- Auto-idle indicator
- 3- Overload alarm indicator (Optional)
- 4- Auxiliary
- 5- Auxiliary
- 6- Preheat indicator
- 7- Auxiliary
- 8- Hour meter
- 9- Auxiliary
- 10- Fuel gauge
- 11- Mail indicator (Optional)
- 12- Auxiliary
- 13- Clock
- 14- Back monitor screen selector (Optional)
- 15- Menu key
- 16- Auxiliary selector
- 17- Mail selector (Optional)
- 18- Auxiliary selector
- 19- Auxiliary selector
- 20- Return to basic screen key
- 21- Coolant temperature gauge



T1P7-05-02-001

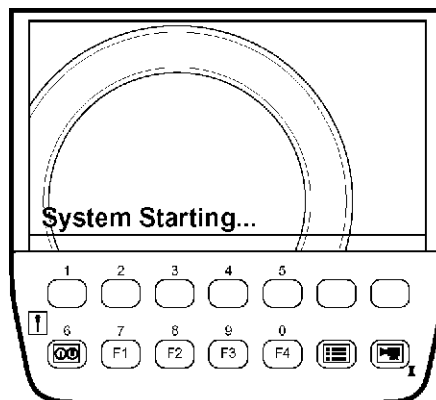
# OPERATOR'S STATION

## MONITOR OPERATION

### Displaying Basic Screen

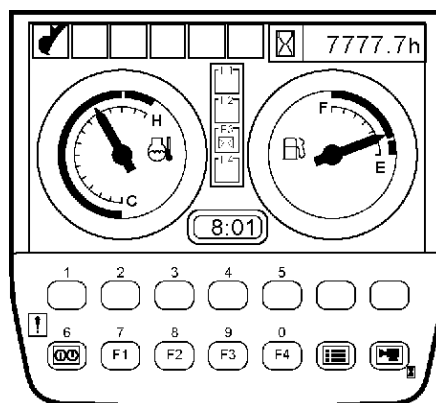
**IMPORTANT:** Start the engine after displaying the basic screen.

When the key switch is turned ON, the starting screen is displayed for about two seconds and the basic screen is displayed in series.



Key Switch ON (Starting screen)

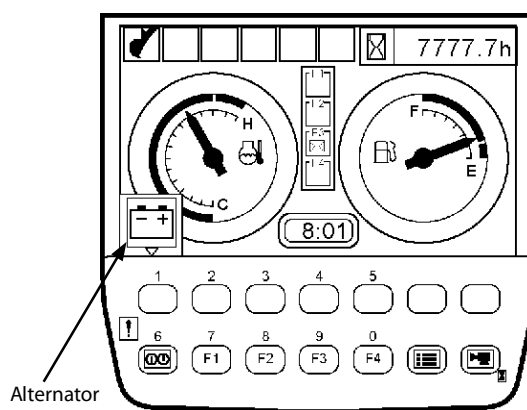
T1P1-05-01-115



Basic Screen

T1P1-05-02-009

**IMPORTANT:** After the engine starts, the alternator indicator is displayed on the basic screen until the alternator starts generating power.



T1P1-05-02-005

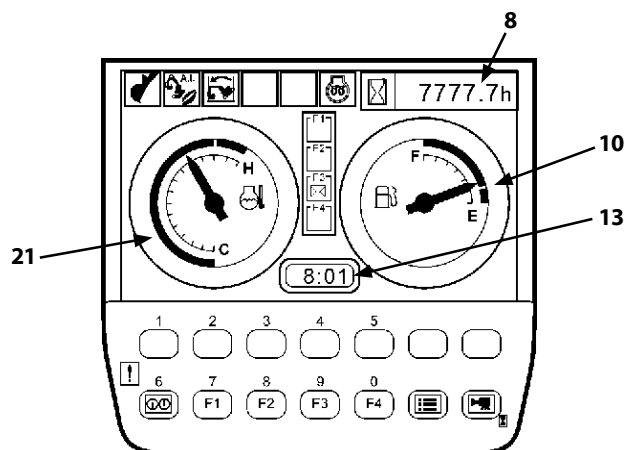


## OPERATOR'S STATION

- Displaying meters

Items to be displayed

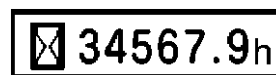
- 8- Hour meter
- 10- Fuel gauge
- 13- Clock
- 21- Coolant temperature gauge



M1P1-01-026

### Hour meter (8)

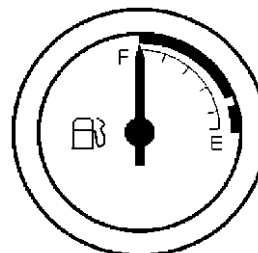
Total (accumulated) machine operation hours counted since the machine started working, are displayed in the unit of "Hour." One digit after the decimal point indicates the tenth of an hour (6 minutes).



M81U-01-058

### Fuel gauge (10)

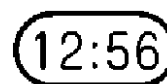
The fuel amount in the fuel tank is indicated. Refuel before the needle reaches "E."



M1U1-01-039

### Clock (13)

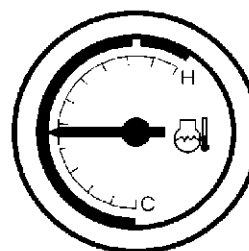
Indicates the present time.



M1U1-01-040

### Coolant temperature gauge (21)

Indicates the engine coolant temperature. Normally the needle displays around center during operation.



M1U1-01-047

## OPERATOR'S STATION

- Indicators

Items to be displayed

- 1- Work mode
- 2- Auto-idle
- 3- Overload alarm
- 6- Preheat

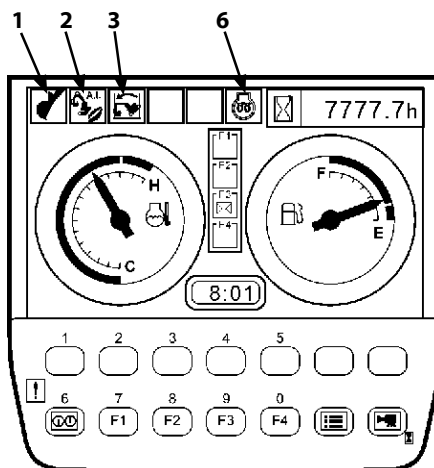
- Work mode indicator (1)

Digging mode is displayed.

Digging mode



T1V1-05-01-108



M1P1-01-026

- Auto-idle indicator (2)

Is displayed when the auto-idle switch on the switch panel is turned ON. In addition, this indicator (2) flashes for 10 seconds after the key switch is turned ON.

- Overload alarm indicator (3)



T1V1-05-02-002

Displays the alarm when the boom cylinder bottom pressure sensor detects overloading.

- Preheat indicator (6)

While the current is being supplied to the glow plug, indicator (6) is displayed.

## OPERATOR'S STATION

- Key function

Items to be displayed

14- Back monitor screen selector

15- Menu key

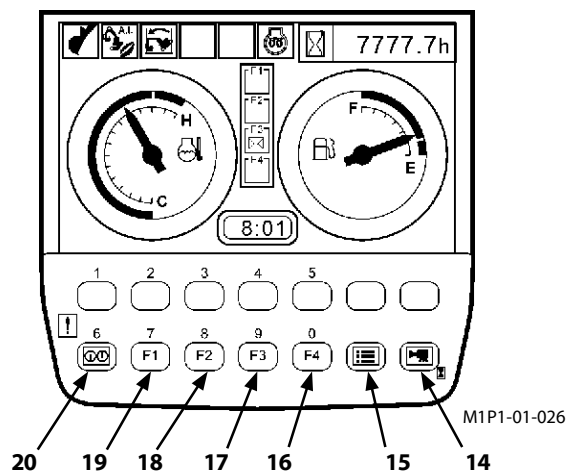
16- Optional function

17- Optional function

18- Optional function

19- Optional function

20- Return to basic screen key



### Back monitor screen selector (14) (Optional)

Shifts the monitor screen to the back monitor screen and vice versa.



M1U1-01-041

### Menu key (15)

Shift the basic screen to the menu screen.



M1U1-01-042

### Optional function keys (16, 17, 18 and 19)

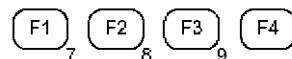
Without operating the menu selector, the pre-set function is selected.

F1: Auxiliary selection

F2: Auxiliary selection

F3: Mail (optional) selection

F4: Auxiliary selection



M1U1-01-043

### Return to basic screen key (20)

Allows any screen to return to the basic screen.



M1U1-01-044

## OPERATOR'S STATION

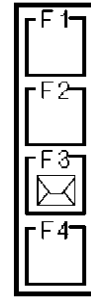
- Others

Optional function display  
Fuel sensor error display  
Coolant sensor error display  
Selection keys  
TEN-keys  
Alarm light

- Optional function display

Displays the optional function that was preset with the optional function keys.

F1: Auxiliary  
F2: Auxiliary  
F3: Mail (Optional)  
F4: Auxiliary



M1P1-01-046

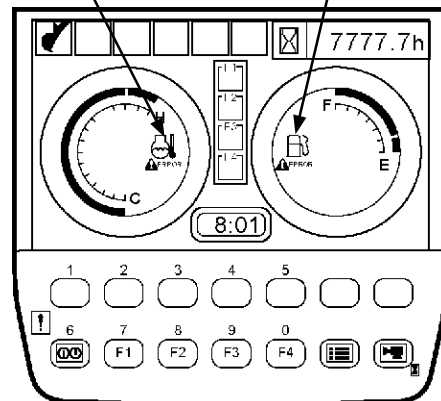
- Fuel sensor error display

Is displayed in the fuel gauge screen when the fuel sensor fails or harness between the fuel sensor and the monitor unit is broken.

- Coolant sensor error display

Is displayed in the coolant temperature gauge screen when the coolant temperature sensor fails or harness between the coolant sensor and monitor unit is broken.

Coolant Sensor Error Display      Fuel Sensor Error Display

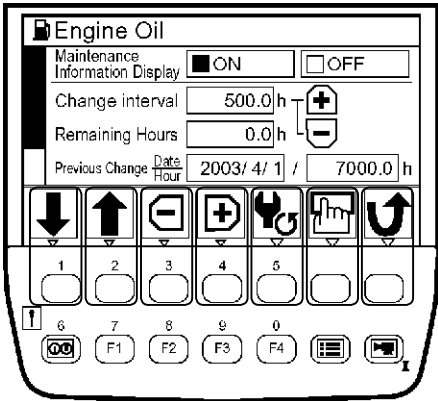


M1P1-01-010

# OPERATOR'S STATION

- Selection keys

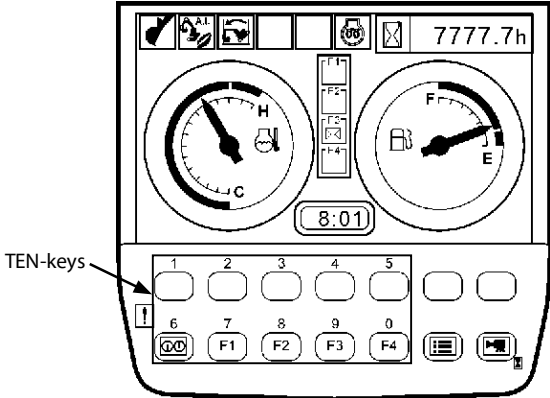
Push the key located under the attachment icon to be selected.



T1V5-05-01-052

- TEN-keys

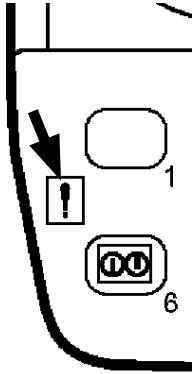
Use to enter numerals (0 to 9) such as the password.



M1P1-01-026

- Alarm light

Comes ON when any abnormality arises.

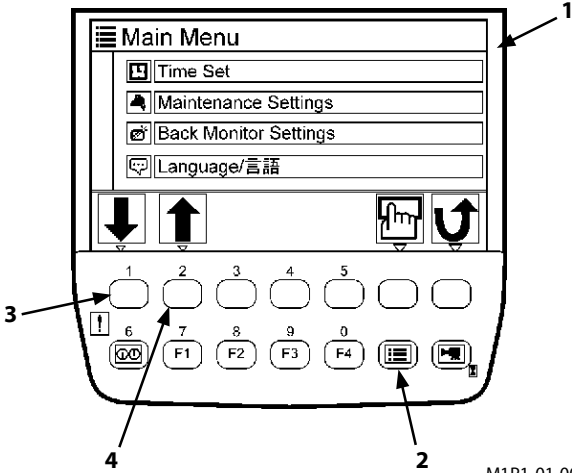


M1U1-01-045

# OPERATOR'S STATION

## MENU SCREEN

Press menu key (2) when the basic screen is displayed to move to main menu screen (1). Select the desired menu by operating key either (3) or (4).



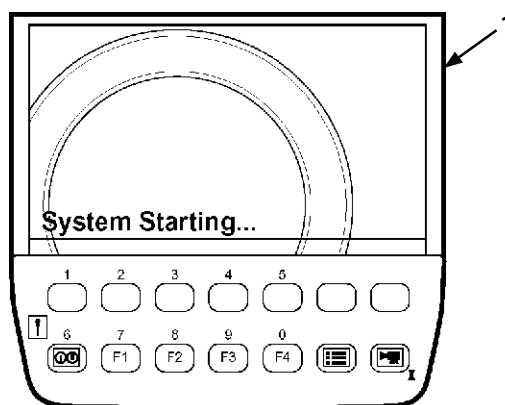
M1P1-01-006E

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### Displaying Basic Screen by Inputting Password (Optional)

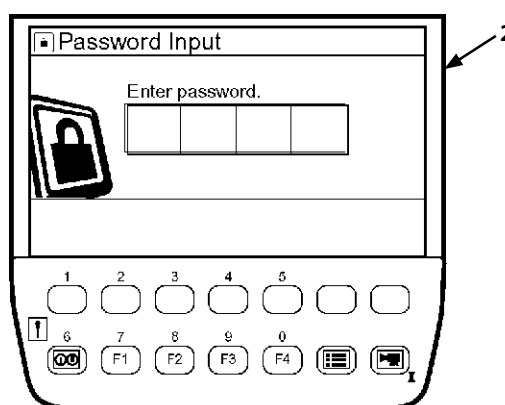
**IMPORTANT:** When required to activate the TEN-key function, consult your nearest Hitachi dealer. If the password ever escapes the customer's memory, the machine must be modified. Be extra careful not to forget the password.

1. Turn the key switch ON. After the starting screen is displayed, password input screen (2) will be displayed.



Starting Screen


T1V1-05-01-115

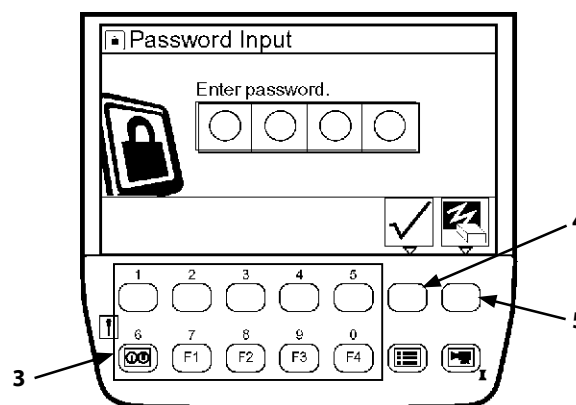


Password Input Screen

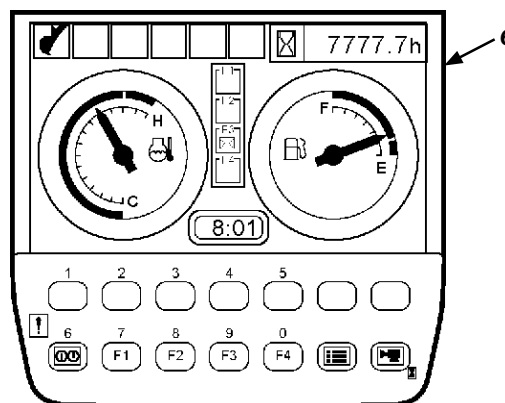
T1V5-05-01-093

2. Using TEN keys (3) located underside of the screen, input the password. Press determination key (4). The monitor unit verifies the input password and the registered one. When they match, basic screen is (6) displayed.

 **NOTE:** When required to correct the password, press key (5) to erase the entered characters.



T1V5-05-01-002



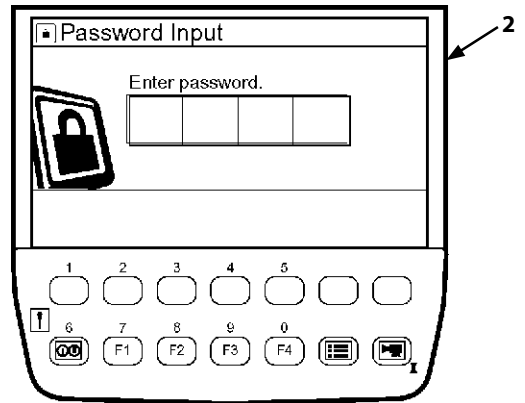
Basic Screen

T1P1-05-02-009

## OPERATOR'S STATION


### In Case of Inputting an Inputting Password

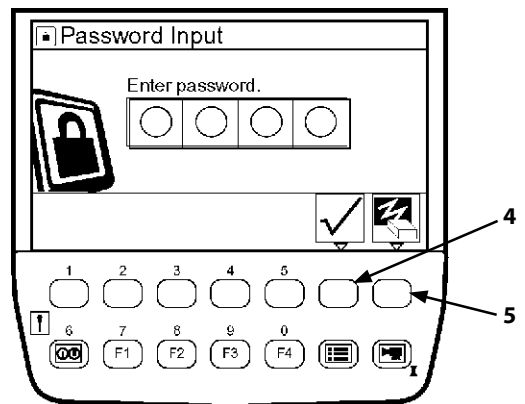
1. If a wrong password is input, the message "Password is incorrect" is displayed by pressing determination key (4).



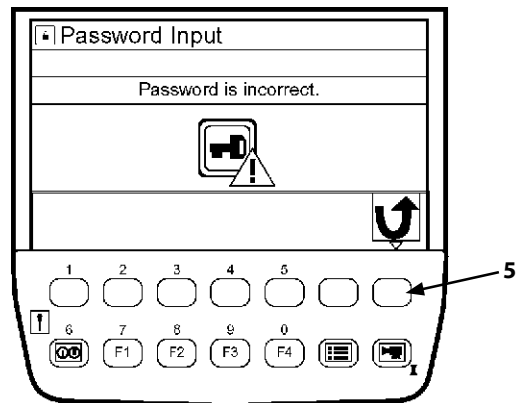
Password Input Screen T1V5-05-01-093

2. Press key (5) to return to password input screen (2).

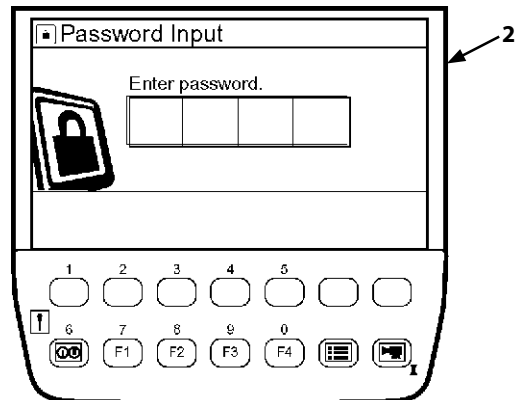
 **NOTE:** When performing password input operation again, press key (5) to erase the entered password.



T1V5-05-01-002



T1V5-05-01-004

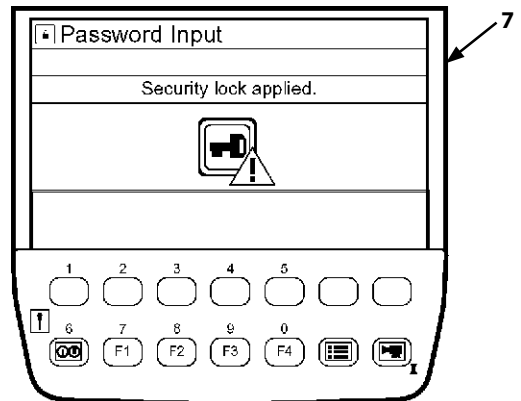


T1V5-05-01-093



## OPERATOR'S STATION

3. If wrong password is input three times, security lock screen (7) appears and the buzzer sounds. As long as the key switch is ON, security lock screen (7) is displayed and the buzzer continues to sound. When the key switch is turned OFF, security lock screen (7) disappears but the buzzer continues to sound for more 30 seconds and stops afterward.

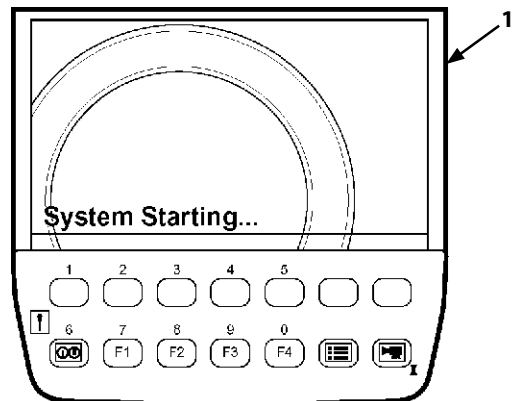


Security Lock Screen

T1V5-05-01-005

4. After the buzzer stops sounding, turn the key switch ON. After starting screen (1) is displayed, password input screen (2) is displayed again. Password input screen (2) appears again so that password input operation can be performed.

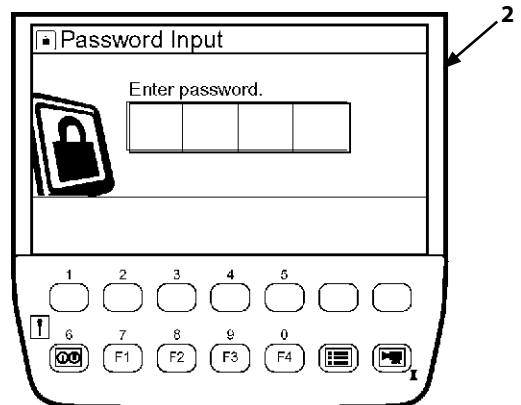
However, if incorrect password is input once more, security lock screen (7) appears again and the buzzer sounds. The buzzer continues to sound as long as the key switch is kept ON. The buzzer sounds for more 30 seconds after the key switch is turned OFF.



Starting Screen

T1V5-05-01-115

5. After the buzzer stops sounding, the password can be input. Turn the key switch ON. After displaying password input screen (2), input the correct password.
6. If an incorrect password is input again, security lock screen (7) is displayed once over and the buzzer sounds. The buzzer continues to sound as long as the key switch is ON. The buzzer sounds for more 30 seconds after the key switch is turned OFF.



Password Input Screen

T1V5-05-01-093

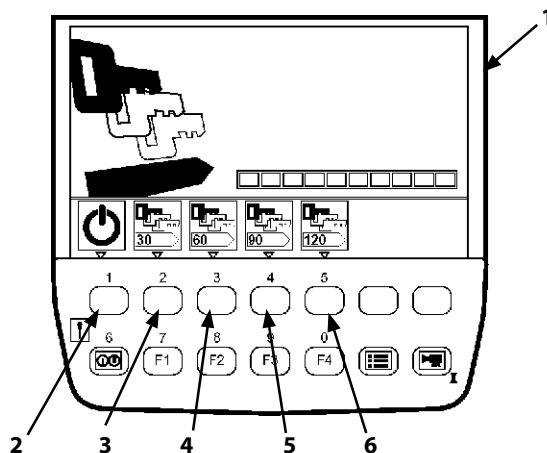
## OPERATOR'S STATION

### Extending password validity time

**IMPORTANT:** This operation is applicable only to those machines that display the basic screen based on password input.

The password validity time that was input when starting the engine on extension screen (1), is extended. Accordingly, the monitor can be operated without inputting the password when the engine is restarted in the extended validity time.

1. Turn the key switch OFF. The monitor unit displays extension screen (1) for 10 seconds.



Extension Screen (Key Switch OFF)

T1V1-05-01-012

2. Press a time extension key before extension screen (1) disappears to assign the password validity extension time as follows:

Key (2): 0 minute

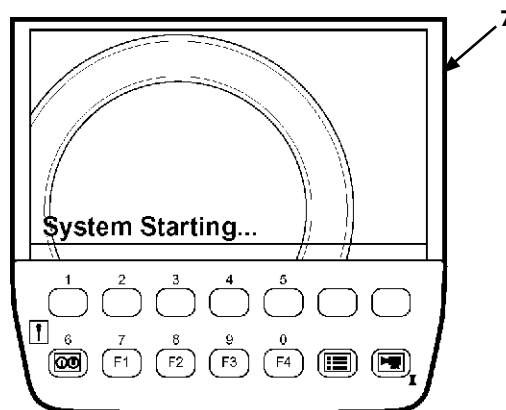
Key (3): 30 minutes

Key (4): 60 minutes

Key (5): 90 minutes

Key (6): 120 minutes

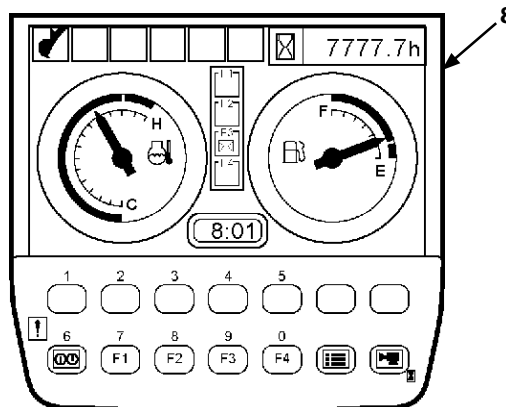
**NOTE:** In case time extension operation is not done, 0-minute extension time is set.



Key Switch ON

T1V1-05-01-115

3. When the key switch is turned ON before the password validity time expires, the monitor unit displays starting screen (7) and basic screen (8) in series.



Basic Screen

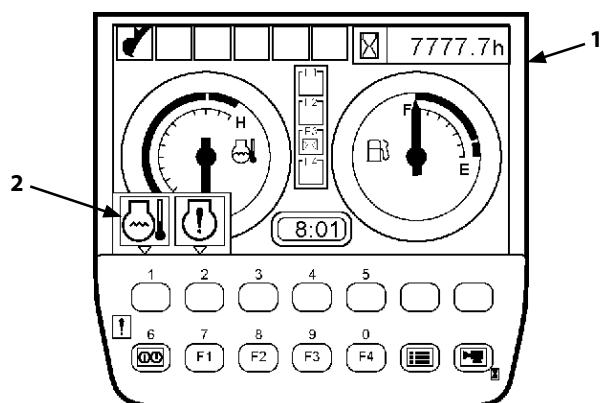
T1P1-05-02-009

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### ALARM OCCURRENCE SCREEN

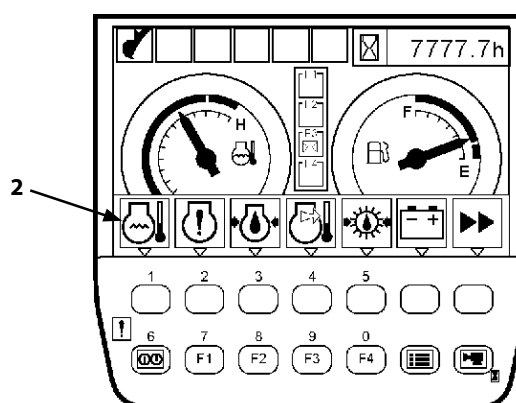
In case any abnormality occurs, alarm marks (2) are displayed on basic screen (1).

- When the number of alarms is two or less:



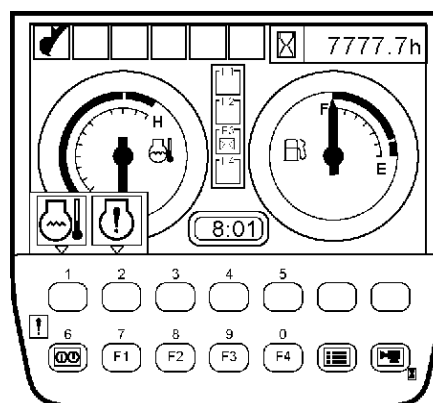
T1P1-05-02-006

- When the number of alarms is three or more:

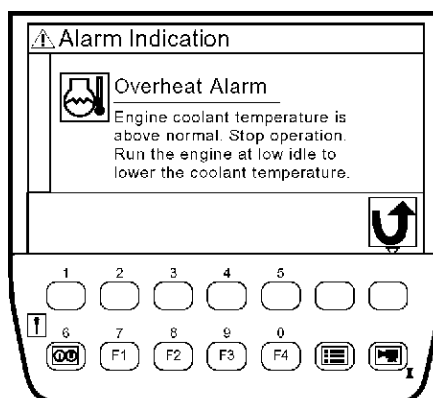


T1P1-05-02-004

When any alarm marks are displayed, press the key located under alarm marks (2) concerned to display the corrective measure to be applied to the corresponding abnormality.







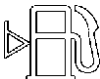





T1P1-05-02-006



T1V5-05-01-013

## OPERATOR'S STATION

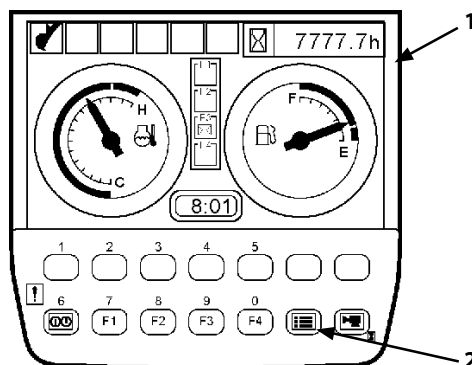
### Alarm List

Icon	Contents of Alarms	Cause and Solution
 M178-01-036	Overheat	Abnormally increased engine coolant temperature. Stop operation. Run the engine at slow idle to cool the coolant.
 M183-01-080	Engine warning	Abnormal engine and/or engine related parts. Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.
 M178-01-037	Engine oil pressure	Reduced engine oil pressure. Immediately stop the engine. Check the engine oil pressure system and engine oil level.
 M183-01-071	Alternator	Abnormal electrical system. Check the alternator and battery systems.
 M178-01-034	Remaining fuel	Reduced fuel remaining in the fuel tank. Refill fuel as soon as possible.
 M1CC-01-039	Hydraulic oil filter	Clogged hydraulic oil filter. Clean or replace.
 M183-01-067	Air filter restriction	Restricted air filter. Clean or replace.
 M1U1-01-116	Fuel filter restriction	Fuel filter is clogged. Clean or replace.
 T1V1-05-01-102	Work mode	Abnormal network system. Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.
 T1V1-05-01-103	Pilot control shut-off lever	Abnormal pilot control shut-off lever system. Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

# OPERATOR'S STATION

## CLOCK SETTING

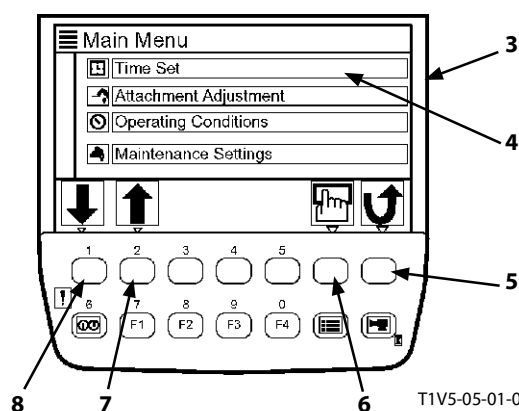
1. After displaying basic screen (1), press menu key (2) to display main menu (3).



Basic Screen


T1P1-05-02-009


2. Select clock set menu (4) on main menu (3) by operating key (7 or 8). Press determination key (6) to display clock setting screen (9).

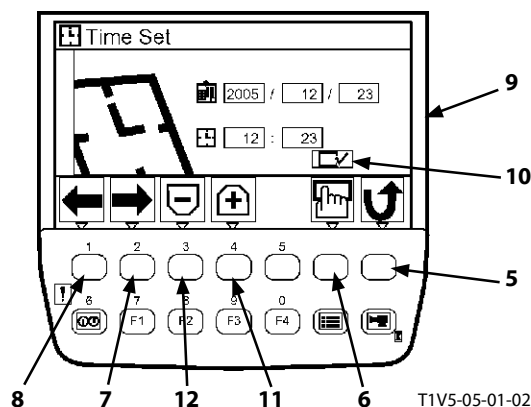


T1V5-05-01-019

3. Select items of Year, Month, Day and/or Time to be set by operating key (7 or 8) on clock setting screen (9). Reduce or increase the displayed figure as needed by operating key (11 or 12).

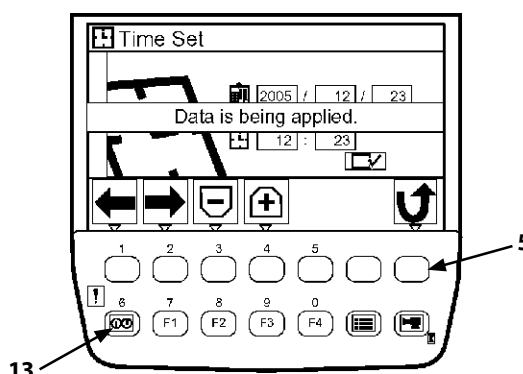
4. After the setting is complete, select icon  (10) and press determination key (6) to finalize the setting.

 **NOTE:** When required to return the previous screen, press key (5).



T1V5-05-01-021

5. Press key (13) to return to basic screen (1).



T1V5-05-01-022

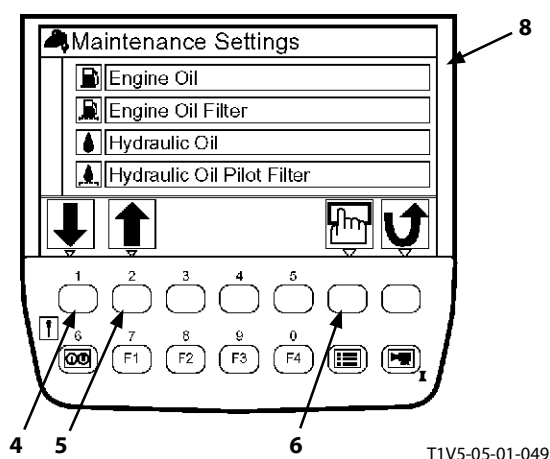
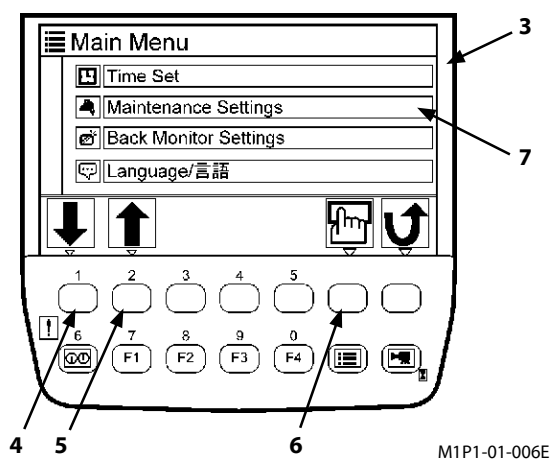
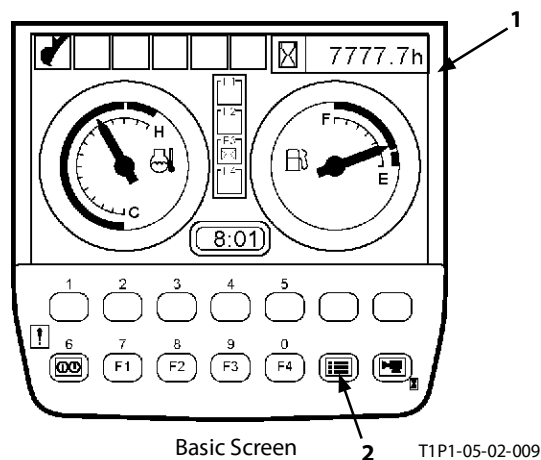
# OPERATOR'S STATION

## MAINTENANCE SETTING

1. After displaying basic screen (1), press menu key (2) to display main menu screen (3).
2. Select maintenance set menu (7) on main menu screen (3) by operating keys (4 and 5). Press determination key (6) to display maintenance set screen (8).
3. Select a menu desired to set on maintenance set screen (8) by operating keys (4 and 5). Press determination key (6) to display interval ON/OFF set screen (9). (As an example, selecting the menu for Engine oil is explained in this section.)

Maintenance menu items to be set in the monitor

- Engine oil
- Engine oil filter
- Hydraulic oil
- Hydraulic oil pilot filter
- Hydraulic oil filter
- Travel reduction gear oil
- Swing drain filter
- Swing bearing grease
- Air filter
- Fuel filter
- Air conditioner filter



## OPERATOR'S STATION

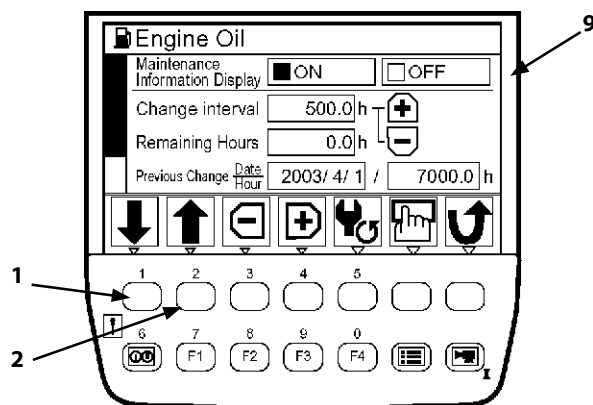
### Maintenance Information ON/OFF Setting

When required to display "maintenance information" on the monitor, set ON/OFF function.

ON setting: When maintenance time arrives, the monitor displays the corresponding maintenance required items.

OFF setting: No maintenance information is displayed.

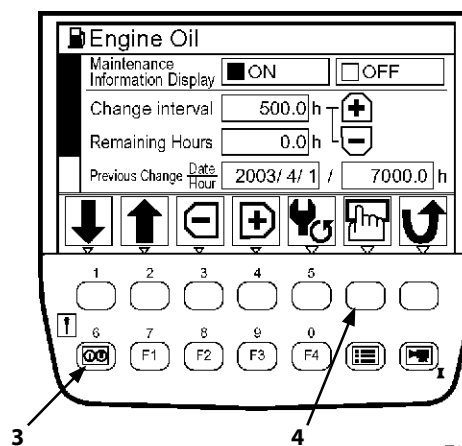
1. Select an item desired to be informed with keys (1 and 2).  
The item displayed in yellow is set ON.



Interval ON/OFF Set Screen

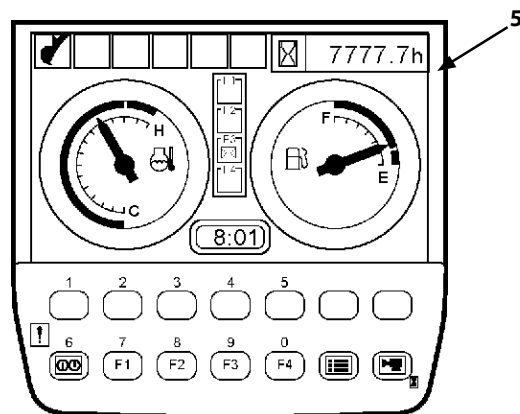
T1V5-05-01-052

2. Press key (4) to execute ON setting.



T1V5-05-01-052

3. When completing set-operation, press key (3). The screen is returned to basic screen (5).



Basic Screen

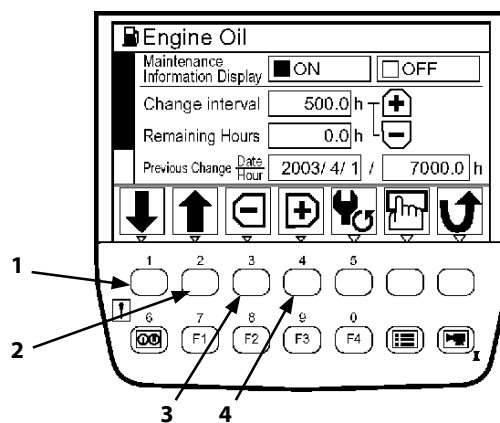
T1P1-05-02-009

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### Change (Replacement) Interval Setting

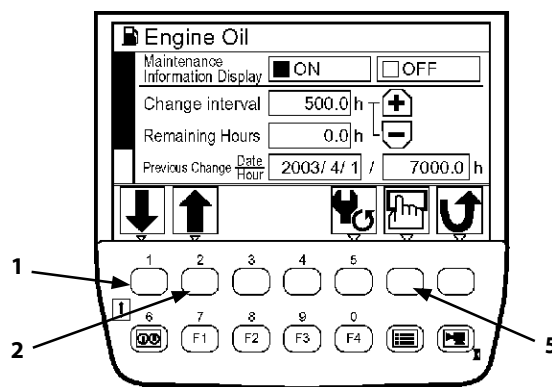
**IMPORTANT: Change (replacement) interval setting can only be achieved when maintenance information function is set ON.**

1. Select "Change Interval" by operating keys (1 and 2).
2. Set the change interval hours by operating keys (3 and 4).
3. Select "Remaining Hours" by operating keys (1 and 2). Press determination key (5).

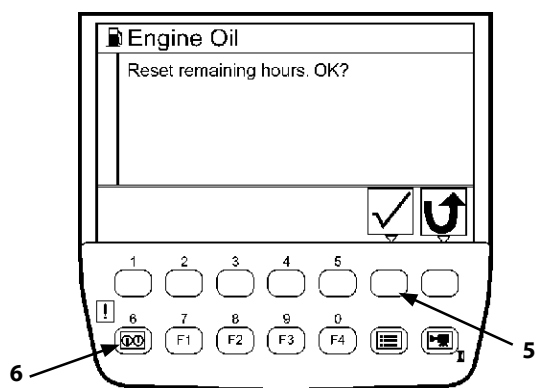


Interval ON/OFF Set Screen T1V5-05-01-052

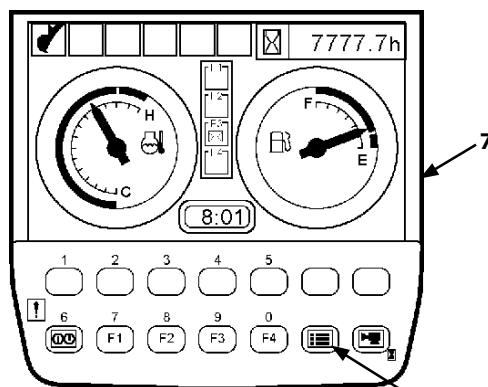
4. As the monitor displays the message "Remaining hour is reset. OK?", press determination key (5).
5. Press key (6) to return to basic screen (7).



T1V5-05-01-138



TCHB-05-02-010



Basic Screen Menu Key

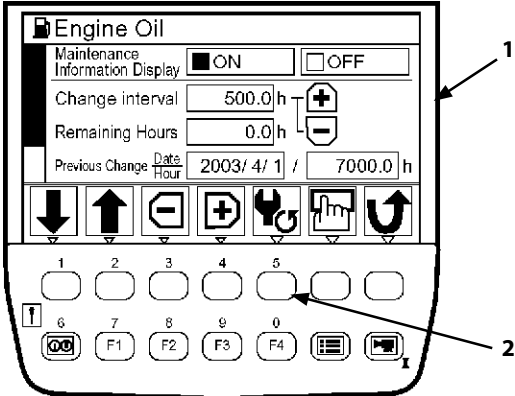
T1P1-05-02-009



# OPERATOR'S STATION

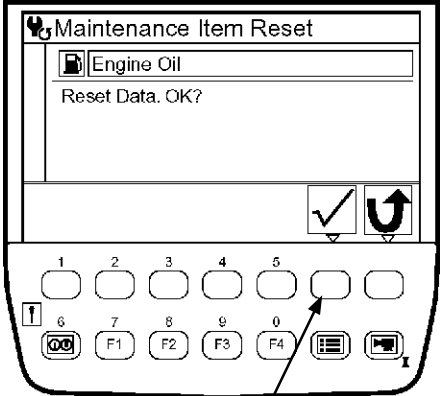
## Data Resetting

When required to reset data, press key (2) on the interval ON/OFF set screen. The monitor displays the message "Data is reset. OK?" Then, press determination key (3). The remaining hour display becomes equal to the change interval hours. The previous change date and hour are updated to the present date and hour.



Interval ON/OFF Set Screen

T1V5-05-01-052




3

T1V5-05-01-140


## OPERATOR'S STATION


### Screen Display when ON-set Maintenance Information is Present

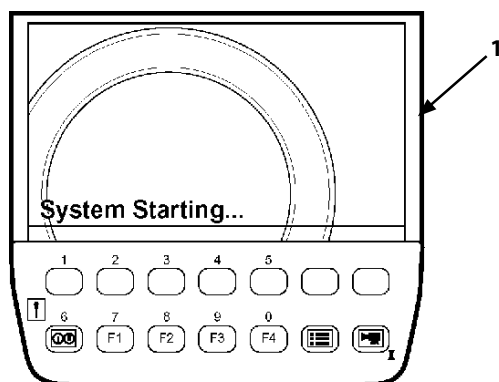
- When single ON-set information is present:
  1. When the key switch is turned ON, the starting screen (1) displays. Then, the maintenance information screen is displayed for three to ten seconds. Finally basic screen (6) is displayed. (Hydraulic oil maintenance information is shown as an example in this section.)

 **NOTE:** In case a machine is set to display the basic screen only after the password is entered, input the password first. Then, press the determination key to display the maintenance information screen for three to ten seconds. Finally the basic screen is displayed.

2. When data resetting is required, press key (4) on maintenance information screen (2) before maintenance information screen (2) disappears. The message "Data is reset. OK?" and reset screen (5) are displayed. Press key (4). The remaining hour display becomes equal to the change interval hours. The previous change date and hour are updated to the present date and hour.

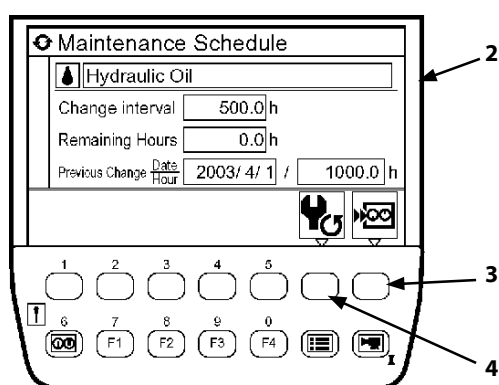
 **NOTE:** When key (3) is pressed on maintenance information screen (2), basic screen (6) is displayed.

 **NOTE:** When key (3) is pressed on reset screen (5), maintenance information screen (2) is displayed.



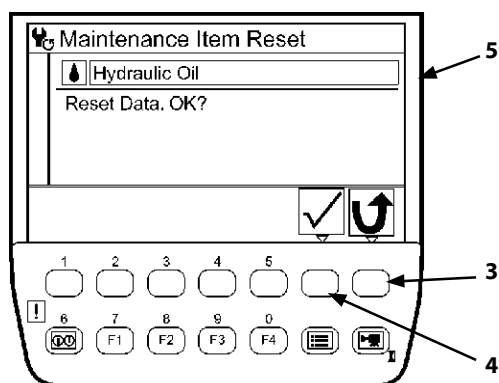
Basic Screen

T1V1-05-01-115



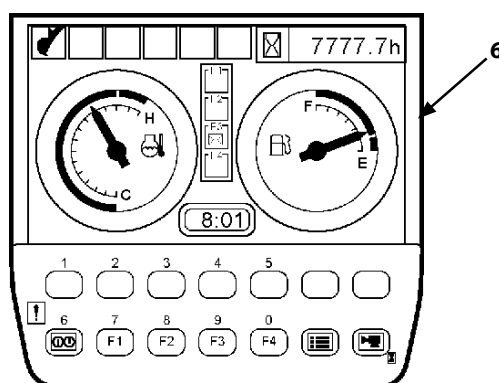
Maintenance Information Screen

T1V5-05-01-170



Reset Screen

T1V5-05-01-171



Basic Screen

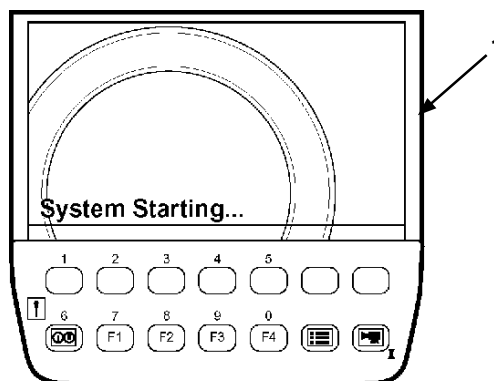
T1P1-05-02-009

## OPERATOR'S STATION

- When two or more ON-set information are present:

1. When the key switch is turned ON, starting screen (1) displays. Then, the maintenance information screen is displayed for three to ten seconds. Finally the basic screen is displayed.

**NOTE:** In case a machine is set to display the basic screen only after the password is entered, input the password first. Then, press the determination key to display the maintenance information screen for three to ten seconds. Finally the basic screen is displayed.

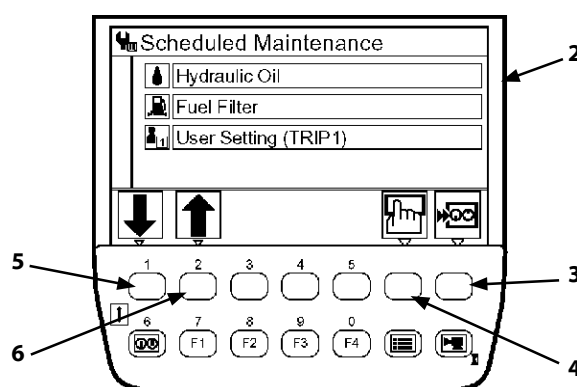


Starting Screen

T1V1-05-01-115

2. When data resetting is required, select the maintenance item by operating keys (5 and 6) on maintenance required item screen (2) before maintenance required item screen (2) disappears. Press key (4) to display maintenance information screen (7) for the selected maintenance item. (Hydraulic oil is selected as an example in this section.)

**NOTE:** When key (3) is pressed on maintenance required item screen (2), basic screen (1) is displayed.



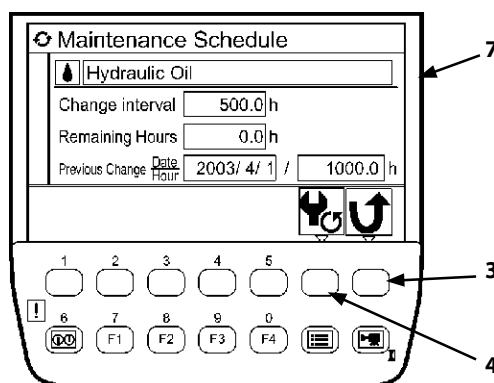
Maintenance Required Item Screen

T1V5-05-01-169

3. After displaying maintenance information screen (7), press key (4). The message "Reset Data. OK?" and reset screen (8) are displayed. Press key (4). The remaining hour display becomes equal to the change interval hours. The previous change date and hour are updated to the present date and hour.

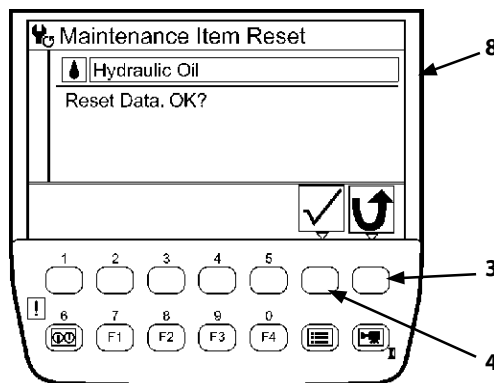
**NOTE:** When key (3) is pressed on maintenance information screen (7), maintenance required item screen (2) is displayed.

**NOTE:** When key (3) is pressed on reset screen (8), maintenance information screen (7) is displayed.



Maintenance Information Screen

TCHB-05-02-011



Reset Screen

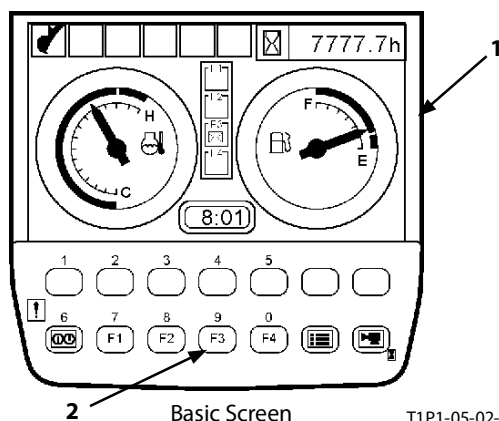
T1V5-05-01-171

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### MAIL (OPTIONAL)

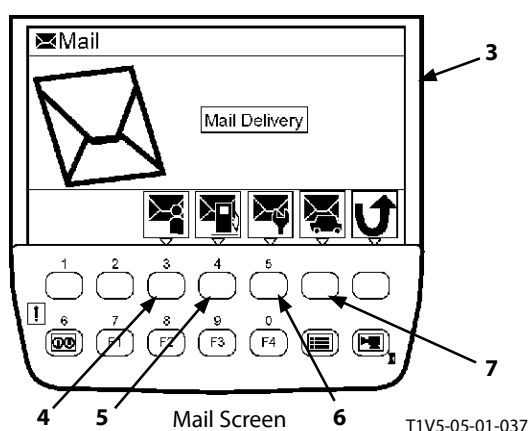
**IMPORTANT: This function is available only to machines equipped with a communication terminal. When using the mail function, consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.**

1. After displaying basic screen (1), press mail selection key F3 (2) to display mail screen (3).

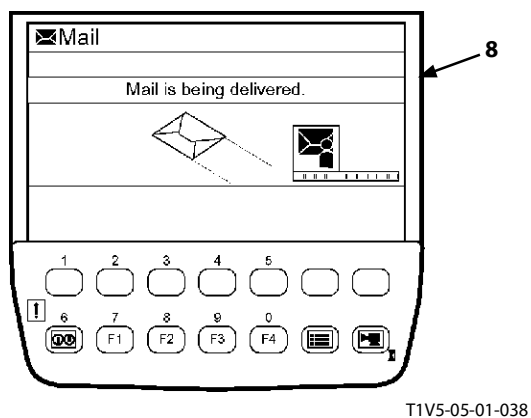


2. Press a corresponding request key as shown below to send mail information to the satellite communication terminal.

- 4- General request
- 5- Fuel replenishment request
- 6- Service maintenance request
- 7- Forwarding request



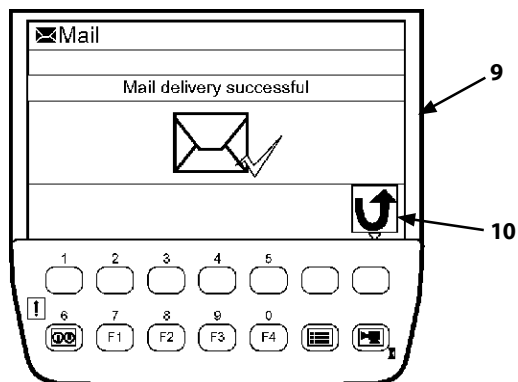
3. When sending mail information to the communication terminal, the message "Mail is being delivered" is displayed on screen (8).



4. When communication terminal receives mail information, the message "Mail delivery successful" is displayed on screen (9). Press key (10) to return to mail screen (3).

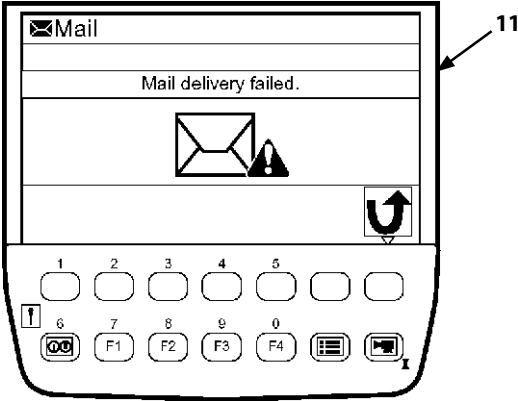
5. Then, the mail is sent to the central server from the communication terminal.

**NOTE:** Depending on machine's operating environment, the mail may not be sent.



# OPERATOR'S STATION

**NOTE:** If the satellite communication terminal fails to delivered a mail, the message "Mail delivery failed" is displayed on screen (11).

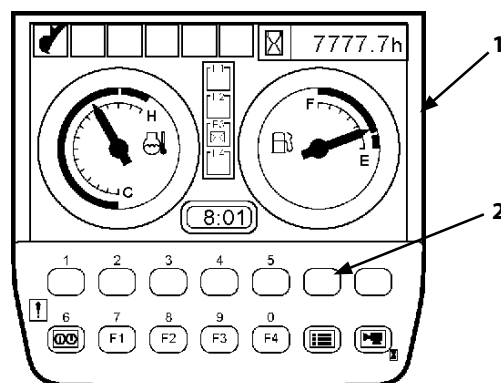


T1V5-05-01-040

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### PASSWORD REVISING (OPTIONAL)

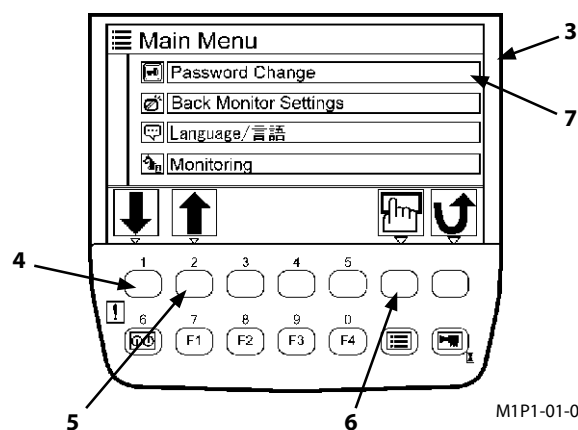
1. After displaying basic screen (1), press menu key (2) to display main menu screen (3).



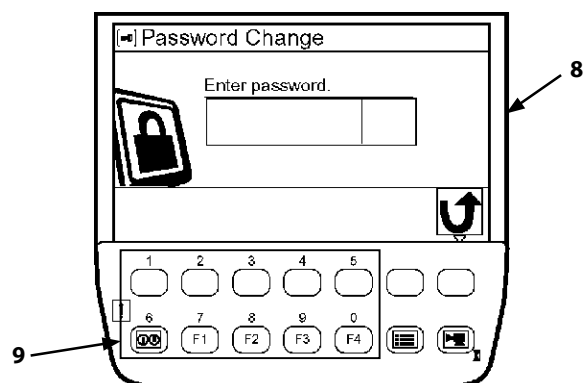
Basic Screen

T1P1-05-02-009

2. Select password change menu (7) on main menu screen (3) by operating keys (4 and 5). Press key (6) to display password revision screen (8).



M1P1-01-013E

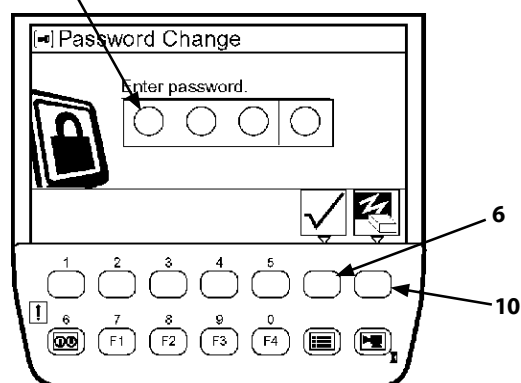


Password Revision Screen

T1V5-05-01-041


3. Enter the registered password with TEN-keys (9). Press key (6) to confirm.
4. When retrying password input operation, press key (10) to erase the previously input password.

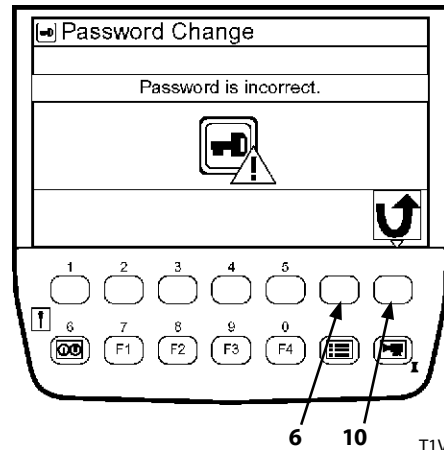
Registered Password



T1V5-05-01-042

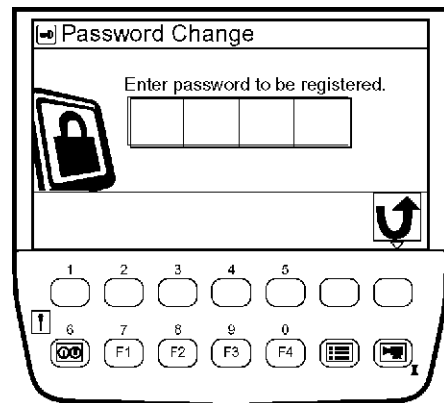
## OPERATOR'S STATION

 **NOTE:** After pressing key (6), if the entered password is incorrect, the message "Password is incorrect" is displayed. Press key (10) to return to the previous screen. Enter the password again.



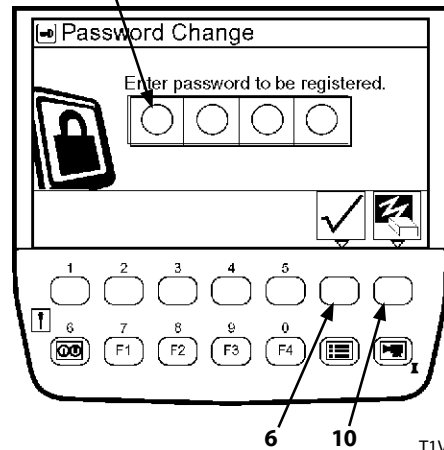
T1V5-05-01-044

5. When the message "Enter password to be registered" is displayed, enter a new password in three or four digits. Press key (6).
6. When retrying password input operation, press key (10).



T1V5-05-01-130

New Password

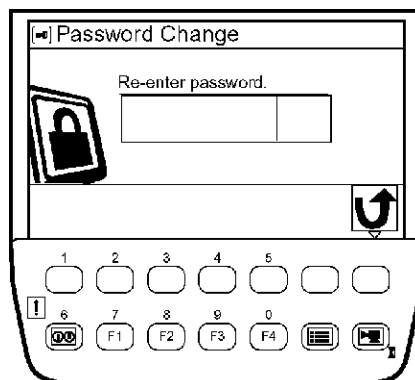


T1V5-05-01-131

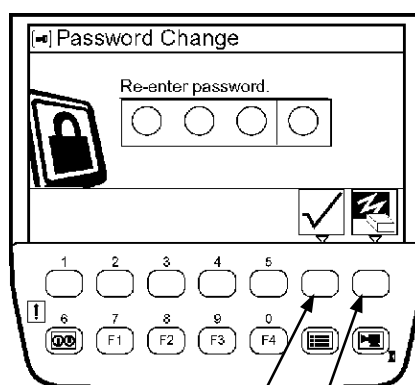
## OPERATOR'S STATION

7. The message “Re-enter password” is displayed. After entering a new password, press key (6).

8. When retrying password input operation, press key (10).

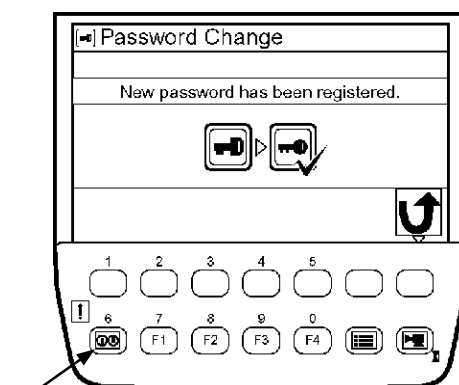


T1V5-05-01-132



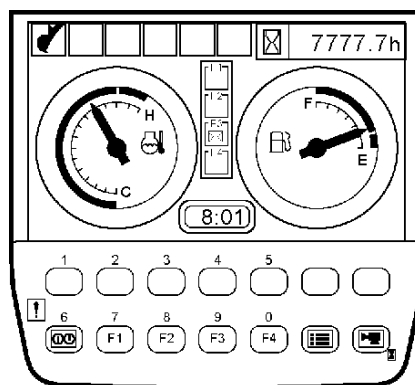
6 10 T1V5-05-01-133

9. When the message “New password has been registered” is displayed, password revising operation is complete.



11 T1V5-05-01-043

10. Press key (11) to return to basic screen (1).



Basic Screen

T1P1-05-02-009



# OPERATOR'S STATION


## BACK MONITOR SETTING (OPTIONAL)

**IMPORTANT:** The image displayed on the back monitor is to be used as an assist view. Operate the machine while paying thorough attention to the surroundings.

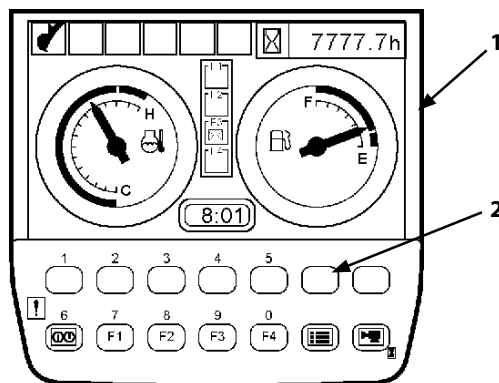
### Auto activation: ON

When the travel lever (Pedal) is shifted to the forward or reverse position, the image on the monitor unit is automatically shifted to the back monitor image.

1. After displaying basic screen (1), press menu key (2) to display main menu screen (3).
2. Select back monitor setting (8) menu on main menu screen (3) by operating keys (4 and 5). Press key (6) to display back monitor set screen (9).
3. In case the auto activation is set OFF (10), the "ON" column is displayed in yellow. Press key (6) to set the auto activation ON.

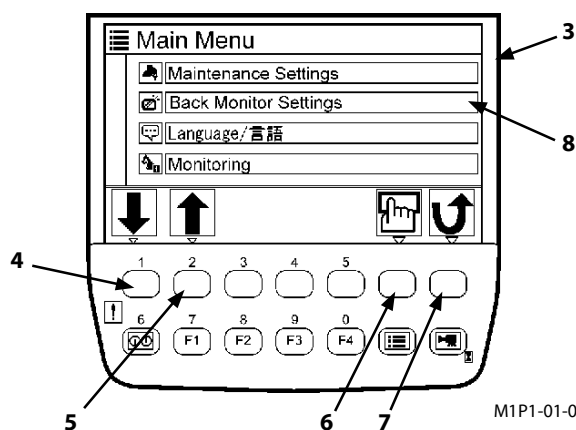
 **NOTE:** Press key (7) to return to the previous screen.

4. Press key (11) to return to basic screen (1).

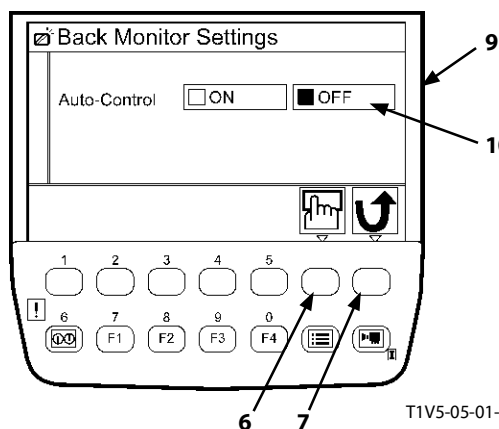


Basic Screen

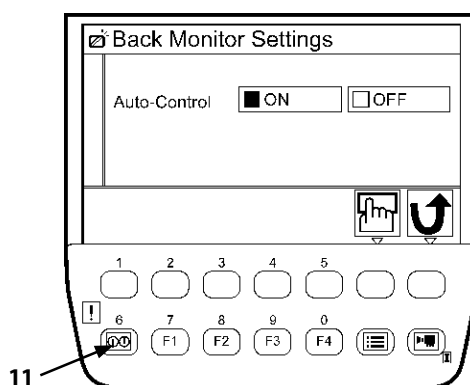
T1P1-05-02-009



M1P1-01-016E



T1V5-05-01-173



T1V5-05-01-174

## OPERATOR'S STATION

---

5. When the travel lever (Pedal) is shifted to the forward or reverse position, the monitor unit screen shows the image viewed through the back monitor.

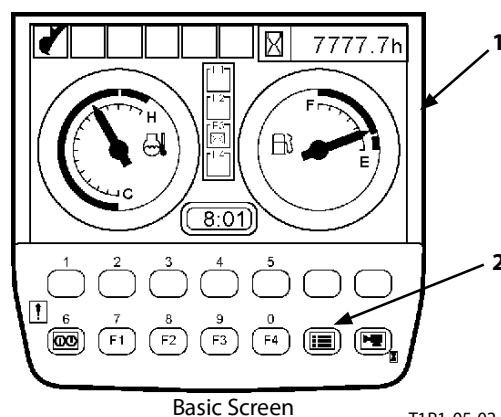
**IMPORTANT:** Once the rear view image is displayed on the monitor screen, the rear view image is kept displayed for three seconds. If the travel lever (Pedal) is shifted to the forward or reverse position within three seconds after the displayed rear view image screen is shifted to the basic screen, the rear view image will not be displayed on the monitor. Wait for more than three seconds until the rear view image is displayed again.

## OPERATOR'S STATION

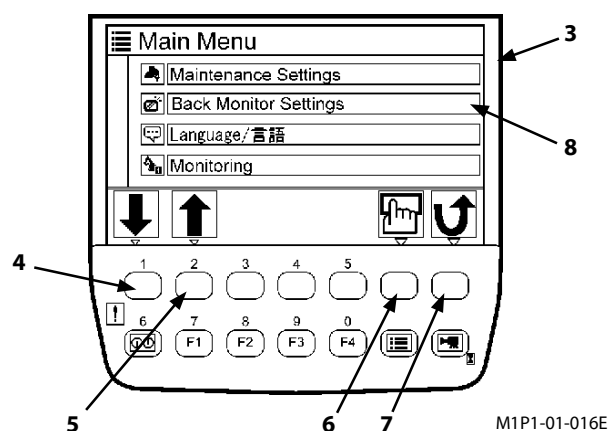
### Auto activation: OFF

Even though the travel lever (Pedal) is shifted to the forward or reverse position, the monitor unit image is not automatically shifted to the back monitor image.

1. After displaying basic screen (1), press menu key (2) to display main menu screen (3).



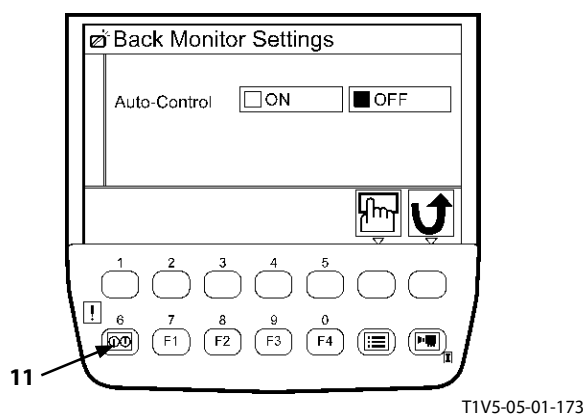
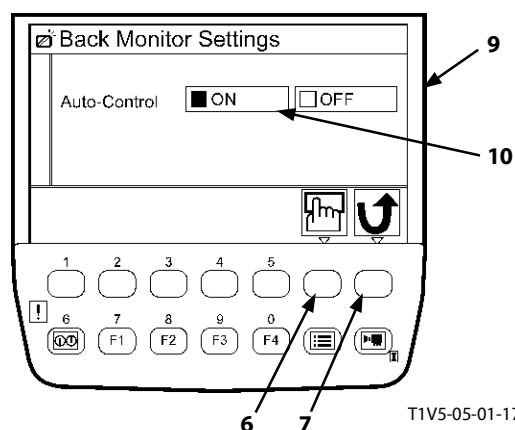
2. Select back monitor setting (8) menu on main menu screen (3) by operating keys (4 and 5). Press key (6) to display back monitor set screen (9).



3. In case the auto activation is set ON (10), the "OFF" column is displayed in yellow. Press key (6) to set the auto activation OFF.

**NOTE:** Press key (7) to return to the previous screen.

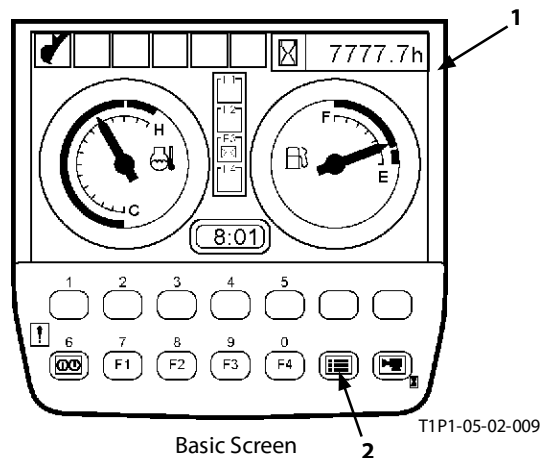
4. Press key (11) to return to basic screen (1).



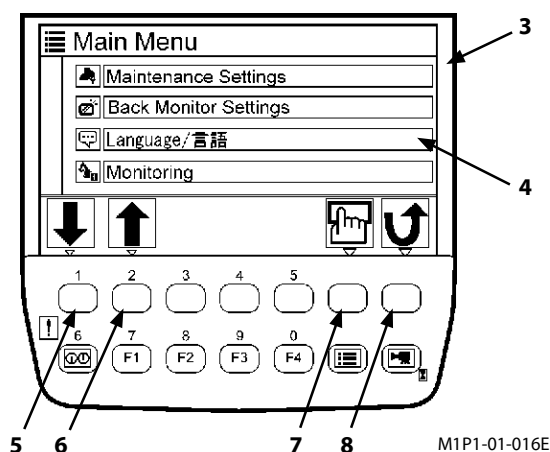
# OPERATOR'S STATION

## LANGUAGE SETTING

1. After displaying basic screen (1), press menu key (2) to display main menu screen (3).



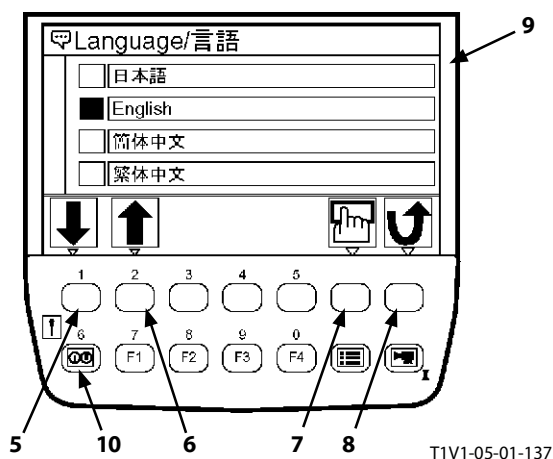
2. Select language menu (4) on main menu screen (3) by operating keys (5 and 6). Press key (7) to display language set screen (9).



3. Select the language to be set by operating keys (5 and 6).

**NOTE:** Initially set language to be displayed on the monitor unit is selected from twelve languages listed in display-language table 1 or 2. (Refer to the next page.)

4. Press key (10) to display basic screen (1).



## OPERATOR'S STATION

### Lists of Display Language

#### Display Languages 1

Language	Screen Display	
Japanese	日本語	T1V1-05-01-141
English	English	T1V1-05-01-142
Chinese (Simplified)	简体中文	T1V1-05-01-143
Chinese (Traditional)	繁體中文	T1V1-05-01-144
Korean	한국어	T1V1-05-01-145
Indonesian	Bahasa Indonesia	T1V1-05-01-146
Thai	ภาษาไทย	T1V1-05-01-147
Vietnamese	Tiếng Việt	T1V1-05-01-148
Myanmarese	မြန်မာစာစကား	T1V1-05-01-149
Arabic	اللغة العربية	T1V1-05-01-150
Persian	اللغة الفارسية	T1V1-05-01-151
Turkish	Türkçe	T1V1-05-01-152

#### Display Languages 2

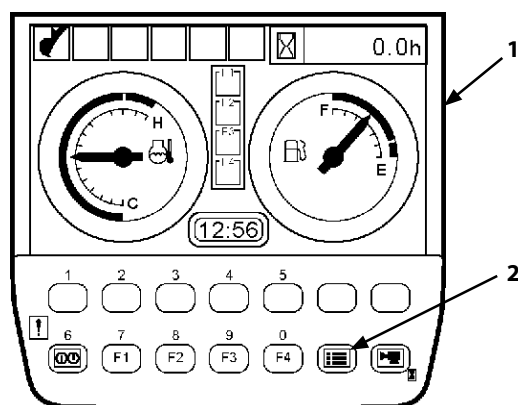
Language	Screen Display	
English	English	T1V1-05-01-142
Spanish	Español	T1V1-05-01-153
Italian	Italiano	T1V1-05-01-154
French	Français	T1V1-05-01-155
German	Deutsch	T1V1-05-01-156
Dutch	Nederlands	T1V1-05-01-157
Russian	Русский	T1V1-05-01-158
Portuguese	Português	T1V1-05-01-159
Finnish	Suomi	T1V1-05-01-160
Swedish	Svensk	T1V1-05-01-161
Norwegian	Norsk	T1V1-05-01-162
Danish	Dansk	T1V1-05-01-163

# OPERATOR'S STATION

## MONITORING

### Actual Engine Speed is Displayed


1. After displaying basic screen (1), press menu key (2) to display main menu screen (3).



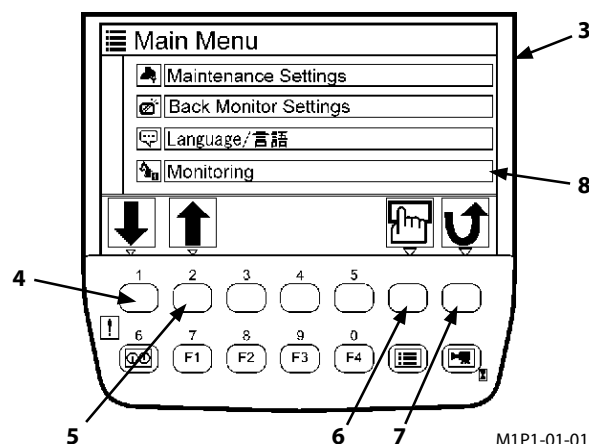
Basic Screen

M1P1-01-015

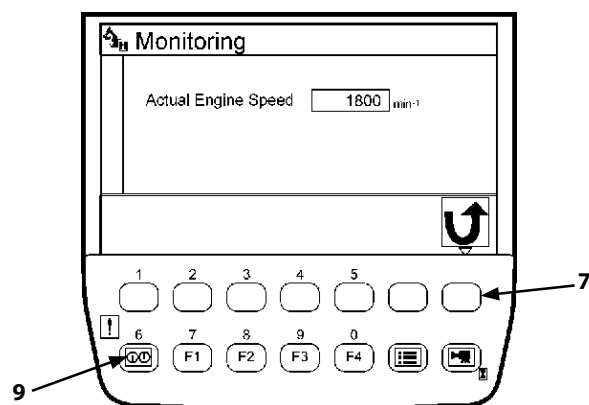
2. Select monitoring menu (8) by operating keys (4 and 5) on main menu screen (3). Press key (6) to display monitoring screen.

 **NOTE:** Press key (7) to return to the previous screen.

3. Press key (9) to display basic screen (1).



M1P1-01-016E



Meter Combination Set Screen

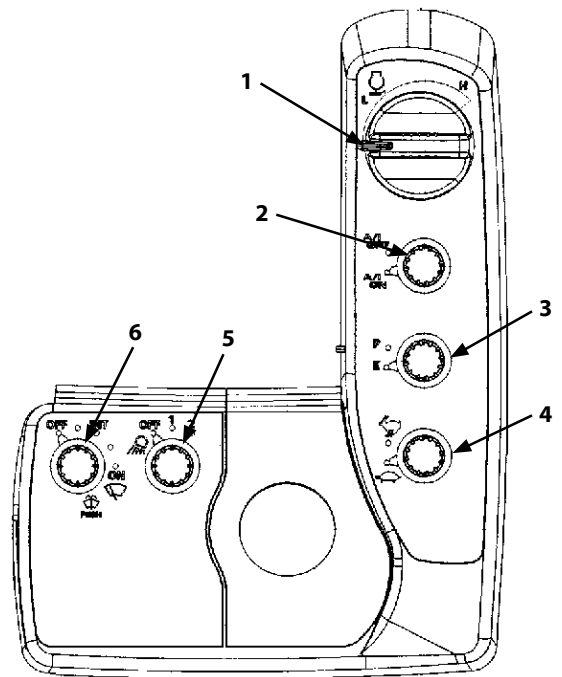
M1P1-01-017E

# OPERATOR'S STATION

## SWITCH PANEL

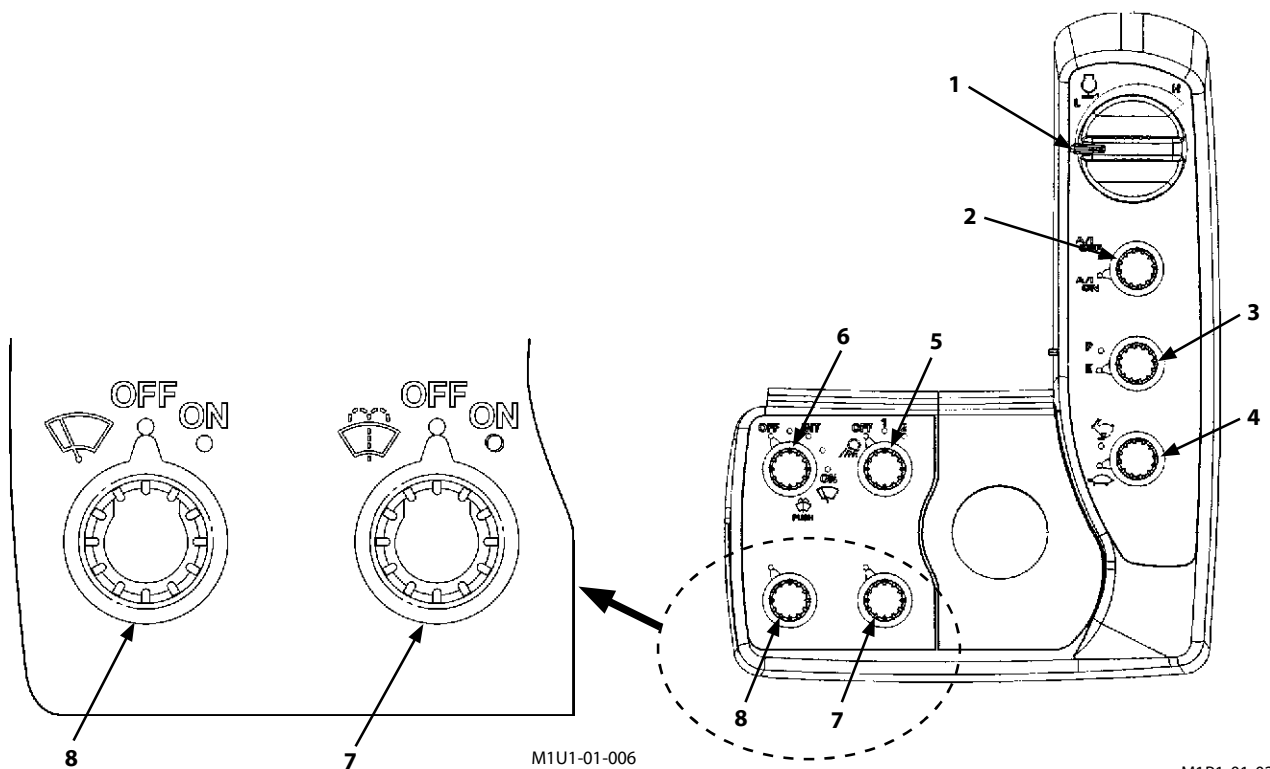
### ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

- 1-Engine Control Dial
- 2-Auto-Idle Switch
- 3-Power Mode Switch
- 4-Travel Mode Switch
- 5-Work Light Switch
- 6-Wiper/Washer Switch
- 7-Overhead Window Washer Switch (ZX80LCK-3)
- 8-Overhead Window Wiper Switch (ZX80LCK-3)



Std. Model

M1P1-01-020



M1U1-01-006

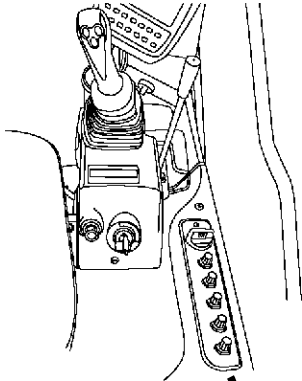
M1P1-01-021

# OPERATOR'S STATION

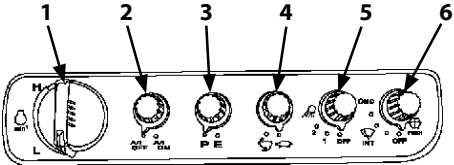
## SWITCH PANEL

### ZX85USB-3

- 1-Engine Control Dial
- 2-Auto-Idle Switch
- 3-Power Mode Switch
- 4-Travel Mode Switch
- 5-Work Light Switch
- 6-Wiper/Washer Switch



M1P1-07-019



M1P1-07-020

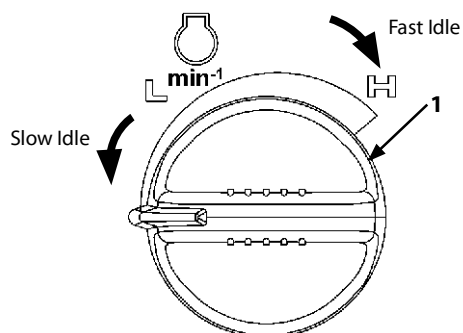


## OPERATOR'S STATION

### ENGINE CONTROL DIAL

Use engine control dial (1) to adjust engine speed.  
Turn it clockwise to increase engine speed or counterclockwise to decrease engine speed.

- The fully clockwise position : Fast idle
- The fully counterclockwise position : Slow idle



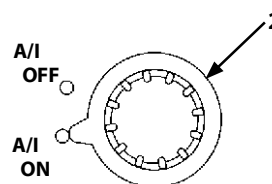
M1U1-01-033

### AUTO-IDLE SWITCH

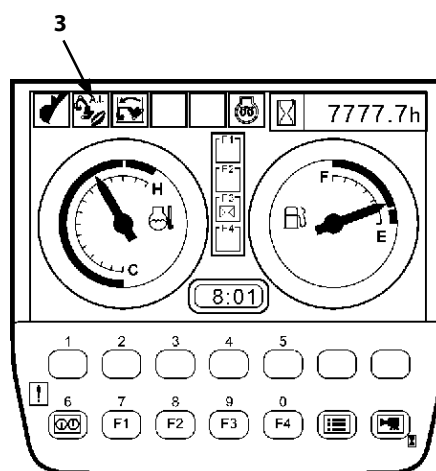
Auto-idle switch (2) sets the engine speed control mode to either Auto-Idle ON or OFF.

- Auto-Idle Mode

When auto-idle switch (2) is turned to the A/I ON position, the engine speed is reduced to slow idle speed 4 seconds after releasing all control levers (neutral), reducing the fuel consumption. When the auto-idle mode is selected, auto-idle indicator (3) on the monitor panel lights.



M1U1-01-017



M1P1-01-026

## OPERATOR'S STATION

---

### POWER MODE SWITCH

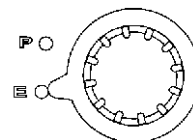
Two engine speed modes, E and P modes, are selected by operating the power mode switch to either position.

- E (Economy) Mode

Although production is slightly reduced more than in the P mode, the fuel consumption and noise levels are reduced, allowing the machine to operate efficiently.

- P (Power) Mode

Use the P mode when general digging work is needed.



M1CC-01-103

### TRAVEL MODE SWITCH

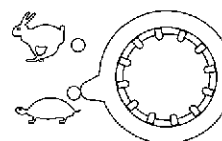
Two travel modes, FAST and SLOW, are selected by turning the travel mode switch to either position.



Mark (Fast Speed Mode)



Mark (Slow Speed Mode)



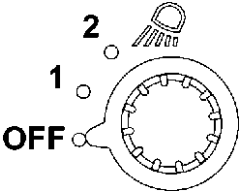
M178-01-096

# OPERATOR'S STATION

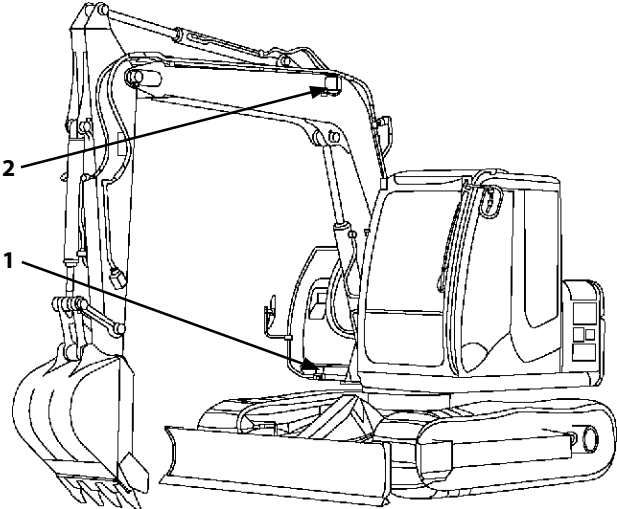
## WORK LIGHT SWITCH

Work light switch has the following positions:

- 1 Position  
Work light (1) on the base machine will light. Also, the instrument panel illumination will light.
- 2 Position  
Work light (2) will light in addition.
- OFF Position  
Work lights (1) and (2) and the instrument panel illumination will turn off.



M178-01-015



M1P1-01-023

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### WIPER/WASHER SWITCH

The wiper and the window washer are operated using the wiper/washer switch.

- Wiper

Turn the wiper/washer switch to the specified position to operate the wiper.

OFF Position: The wiper stops and is retracted.

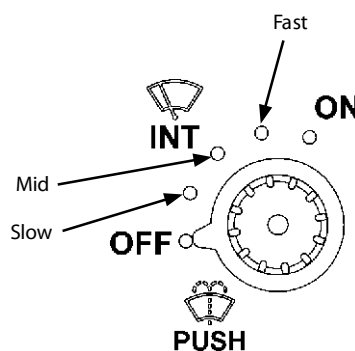
INT Position: The wiper operates intermittently at the interval selected by the switch position as described below.

INT (Slow): The wiper operates at 8-second interval.

INT (Mid): The wiper operates at 6-second interval.

INT (Fast): The wiper operates at 3-second interval.

ON Position: The wiper operates continuously.

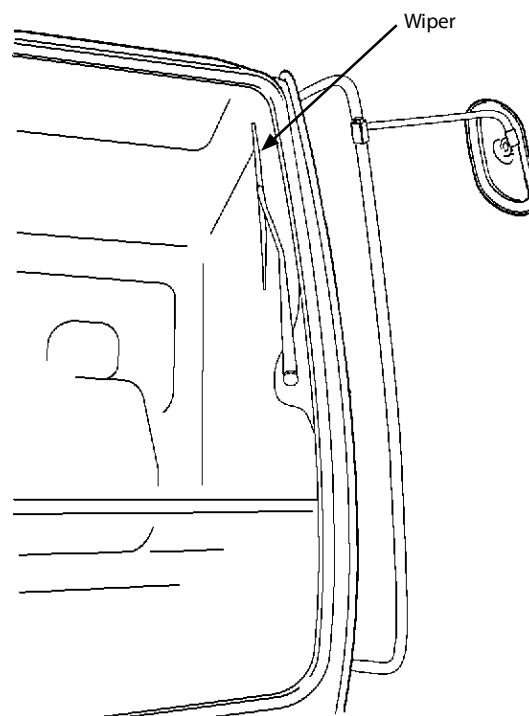


M178-01-016

- NOTE:**
- When the front window (upper) is opened, the wiper and washer will not operate. Even if the front window (upper) is closed, the wiper and washer will not operate until the lock pin on the right side is placed in the lock position. If the front window is opened while during operating the wiper, the wiper will be retracted and the washer function is deactivated.
  - In case either the wiper or washer is operated with the front window (upper) opened, or if front window (upper) is opened while operating either the wiper or washer, the front window opening alarm buzzer will sound intermittently at one-second intervals. Close the front window (upper).

- Washer (Std. Model)

Press and hold the wiper/washer switch to squirt washer fluid onto the front window. When the wiper/washer switch is pressed for more than 2 seconds, the wiper operates until the switch is released. When the wiper/washer switch is released, the wiper automatically retracts. While operating the wiper in the INT mode, when the wiper/washer switch is pressed, the wiper operation mode is changed to the continuous operation mode.



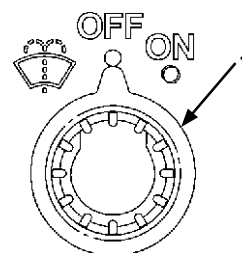
M1U1-01-018

**IMPORTANT:** Washer motor may be damaged if wiper/washer switch is held for more than 20 seconds, or continually operated with no fluid in the washer tank.

## OPERATOR'S STATION

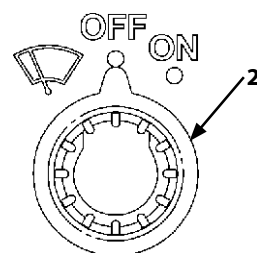
- Washer (Overhead Window: Optional)

As long as wiper washer switch (1) is held down, washer fluid will be squirted from the nozzles on the front window and overhead window. Continue holding wiper washer switch (1) for more than 2 seconds to automatically operate the front window wiper. Release wiper washer switch (1) to stop fluid from being squirted from the nozzles and to automatically stop and retract the wipers. While the wiper is operating in the INT position, when wiper washer switch (1) is pushed, the wiper will change to operate continuously.



M1U1-01-007

**IMPORTANT: The washer motor in the washer fluid tank may be damaged if washer fluid is kept squirted for more than 20 seconds or the motor is continuously operated with the washer fluid tank empty. Monitor the washer fluid squirting time and the fluid level in the washer reservoir.**



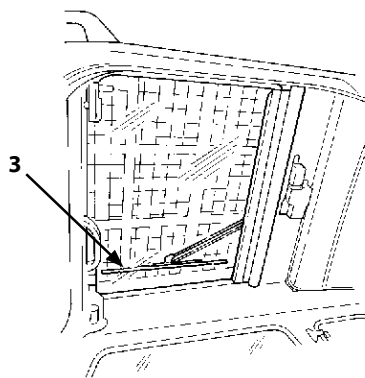
M1U1-01-008

### Wiper Switch (2) (Overhead Window: ZX80LCK-3)

Wiper switch (2) has two positions as follows:

ON Position .....Overhead window wiper (3) operates.

OFF Position.....Overhead window wiper (3) stops.



M157-01-081

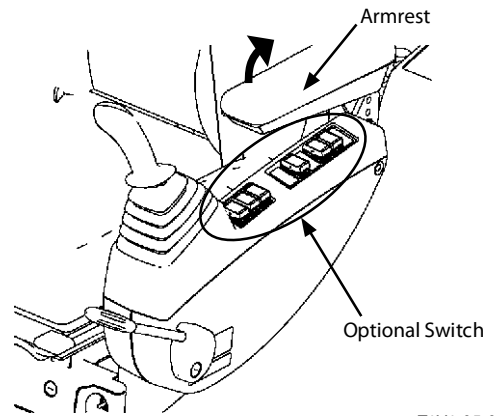
# OPERATOR'S STATION

## SWITCH PANEL (Optional)

**NOTE:** • The optional switch locations differ depending on the kinds of optional devices are equipped. Before using the switches on the switch panel, make sure what kind of optional devices are equipped. All available optional devices are shown below.

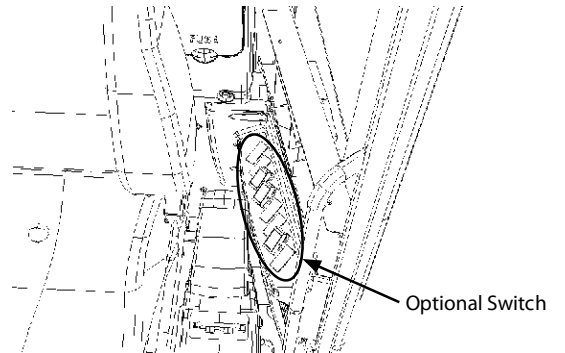
- Raise the armrest when operating the optional switch.

- Travel Alarm Deactivation
- Swing Alarm
- Rear Light
- Electric Type Control Lever



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

T1V1-05-02-004

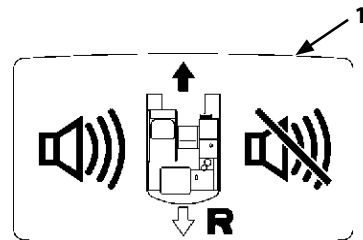


ZX85USB-3

M1P1-01-031

### Travel Alarm Deactivation Switch (Optional)

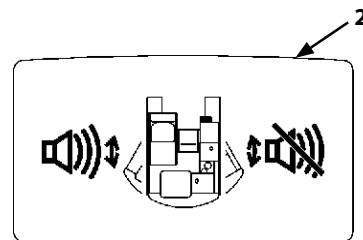
The travel alarm buzzer sounds during travel operation. When push travel alarm deactivation switch (1) to the off position (🔇), the travel alarm buzzer function is deactivated.



M1U1-01-035

### Swing Alarm Switch (Optional)

The swing alarm system sounds the buzzer and turns the beacon light ON during swing operation. When push swing alarm switch (2) to the off position (🔇), the swing alarm buzzer function is deactivated.



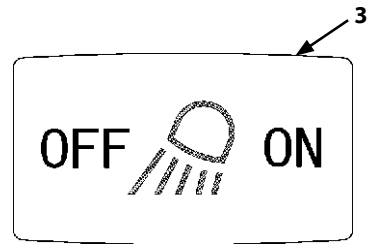
M1U1-01-036

## OPERATOR'S STATION

---

### Rear Light Switch (Optional)

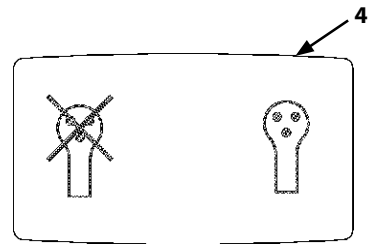
When rear light switch (3) is turned ON. The rear light at the rear of the cab roof comes ON.



M1U1-01-009

### Electrical Control Main Switch (Optional)

When the (ⓘ) mark side of electrical control main switch (4) is pressed, the electrical control (grip switch) system becomes operable. When there is no need to use the electrical control (grip switch) system, press the (⊗) mark side of main switch (4) to avoid misoperation.

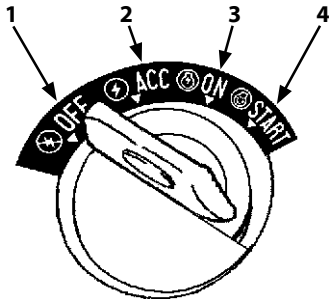


M1U1-01-013

# OPERATOR'S STATION

## KEY SWITCH

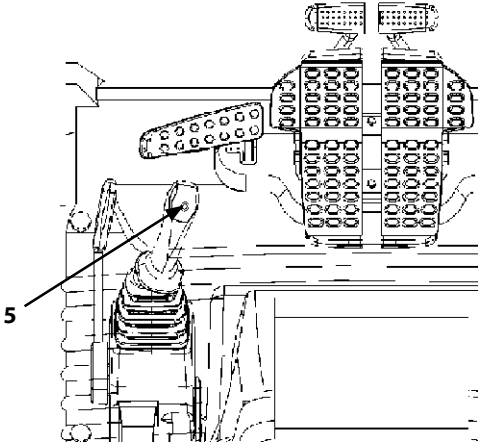
- 1- OFF (Engine Off)
- 2- ACC (Horn, Radio etc.)
- 3- ON (Engine On)
- 4- START (Engine Start)



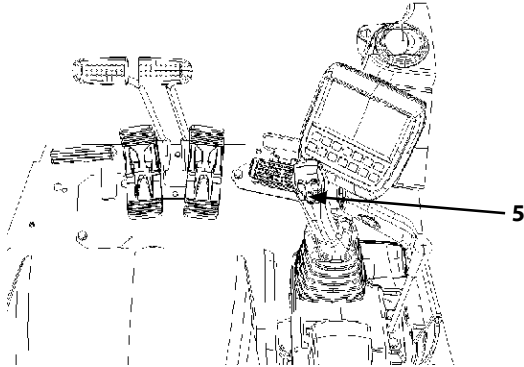
M178-01-049

## HORN SWITCH

Horn switch (5) is provided on the top of the left control lever. The horn continuously sounds as long as switch (5) is pressed.



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3 M1J1-01-025



ZX85USB-3 M1P1-01-032



## OPERATOR'S STATION

### CIGAR LIGHTER

#### Operation

**IMPORTANT:** In case cigar lighter (2) does not pop out automatically 30 seconds after pushing cigar lighter (2) in, pull out cigar lighter (2) manually. Then, consult the your nearest Hitachi dealer.

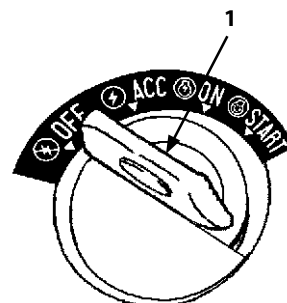
1. Turn key switch (1) to the ACC or ON position.
2. Press and release cigar lighter (2) knob.
3. Cigar lighter (2) knob will return to the original position when cigar lighter (2) becomes usable. Pull cigar lighter (2) out to use.
4. After using cigar lighter (2), insert cigar lighter (2) into the panel until the knob is seated in the original position.

#### Using Cigar Lighter (2) Port as External Power Source

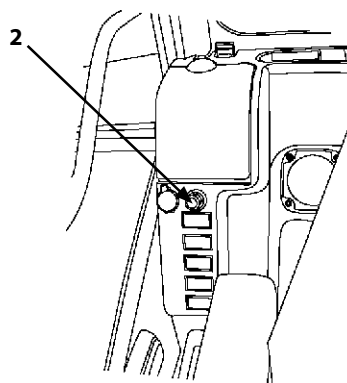
Use cigar lighter (2) port to supply power to lighting equipment for servicing the machine.

**IMPORTANT:** Only 24 V electric power is available from the cigar lighter port on this machine. Never connect accessories that use power other than 24 V. Damage to the batteries and accessories may result. Do not supply power to accessories for a long time without running the engine. Failure to do so may discharge the batteries.

1. Pull cigar lighter (2) knob out.
2. Correctly insert the accessory socket into cigar lighter (2) port.
3. Turn key switch (1) to the ACC or ON position. Power is supplied to the connected accessory.
4. After using the accessory, disconnect the accessory socket and insert cigar lighter (2) into the port.

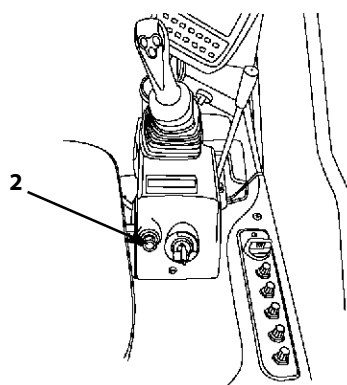


M178-01-049



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-057



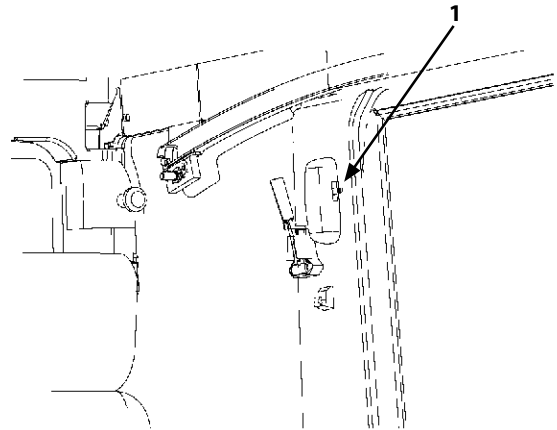
ZX85USB-3

M1P1-07-019

## OPERATOR'S STATION

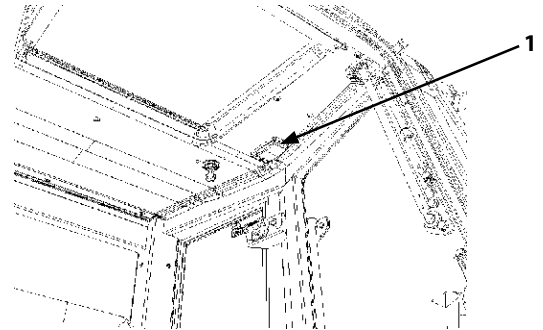
### CAB LIGHT

Turn the cab light ON or OFF by using switch (1).



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1U1-01-022

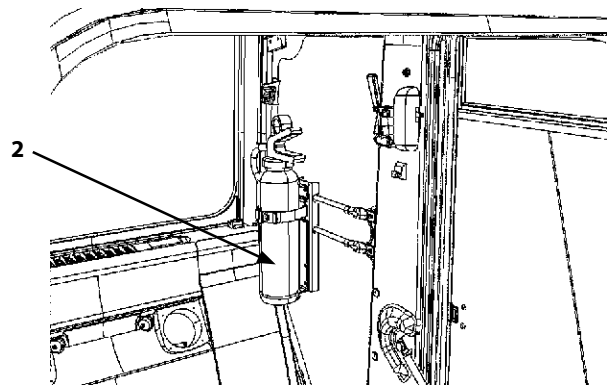


ZX85USB-3

M1P1-01-033

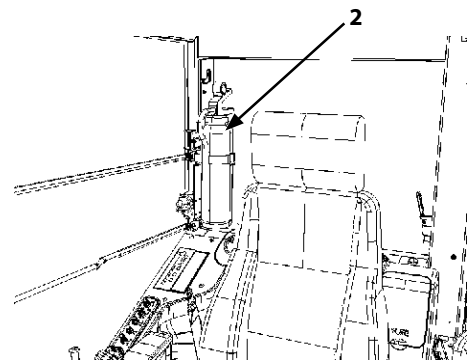
### INSTALLING FIRE EXTINGUISHER (Optional)

A fire extinguisher (2) can be installed at the left or right rear corner inside the cab. Consult your nearest HITACHI dealer to install a fire extinguisher (2).



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1U4-01-005



ZX85USB-3

M1P1-01-034

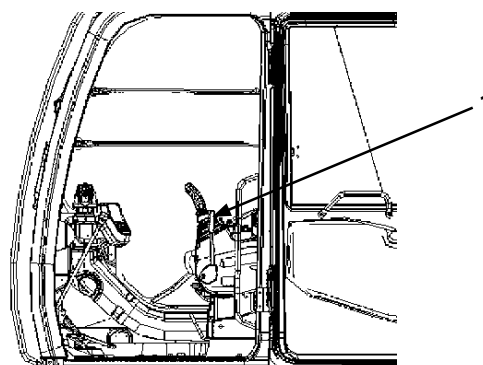
## OPERATOR'S STATION

### PILOT CONTROL SHUT-OFF LEVER

Pilot control shut-off lever (1) functions to prevent the machine from being mistakenly operated when the operator is getting on or off the machine.

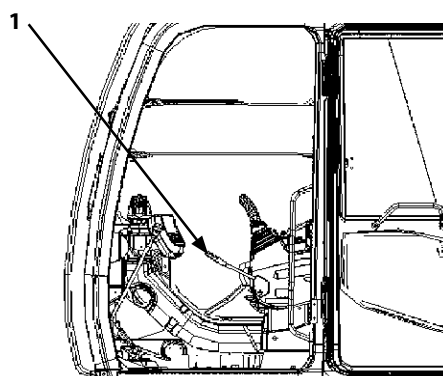
#### WARNING:

- Pilot control will not be shut-off unless pilot control shut-off lever (1) is completely pulled-up to the LOCK position.
- Before leaving operator's seat, always stop the engine and pull pilot control shut-off lever (1) up to the LOCK position.
- Also, pull pilot control shut-off lever (1) up to the LOCK position when transporting the machine or when the day's work is complete.
- Confirm that pilot control shut-off lever (1) is in the LOCK position before starting the engine.



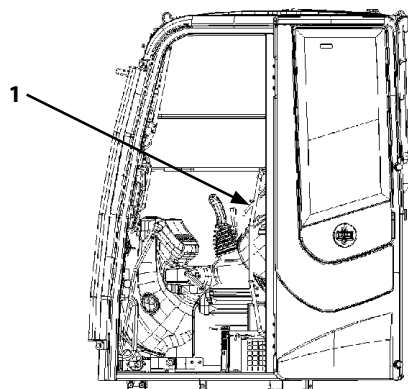
LOCK Position  
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1U1-01-025



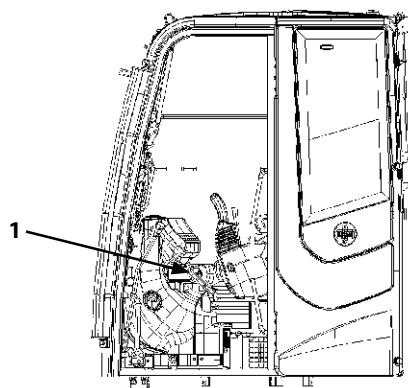
UNLOCK Position  
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1U1-01-024



LOCK Position  
ZX85USB-3

M1P1-01-035



UNLOCK Position  
ZX85USB-3


M1P1-01-036

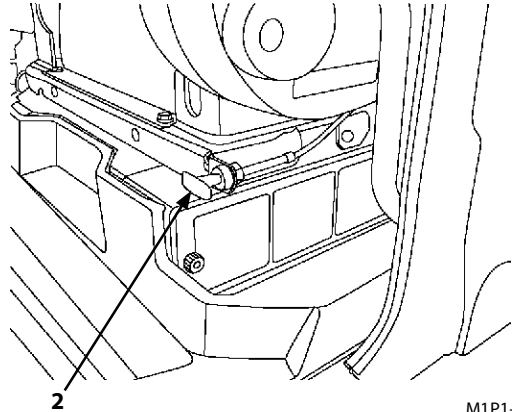
## OPERATOR'S STATION

---

### ENGINE STOP KNOB

In case the engine does not stop even if the key switch is turned OFF due to failure of the machine, pull engine stop knob (2) located at the front-left side of the seat stand to stop the engine.

 **NOTE:** *If knob (2) is pulled halfway, the engine may not start or may stall during operation. Be sure to push knob (2) to the fully retracted position before restarting the engine.*

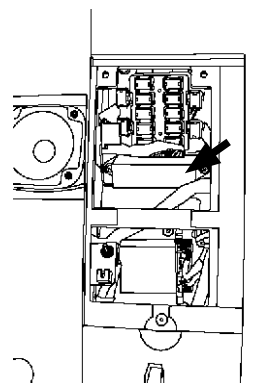


M1P1-07-027

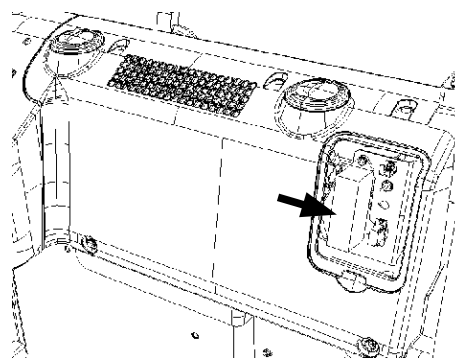
# OPERATOR'S STATION

## FUSE BOX

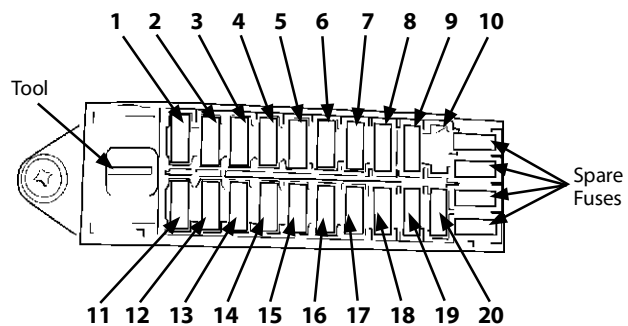
- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 10- CONTROLLER<br>5A    | 20- OPTION3 (BATT)<br>5A  |
| 9- BACKUP<br>10A        | 19- SW. BOX<br>5A         |
| 8- ECF<br>5A            | 18- POWER ON<br>5A        |
| 7- EC MOTOR<br>10A      | 17- AIRCON.<br>5A         |
| 6- OPTION2 (ALT)<br>10A | 16- GLOW EGR<br>5A        |
| 5- OPTION1 (ALT)<br>5A  | 15- AUX.<br>10A           |
| 4- SOLENOID<br>10A      | 14- FUEL PUMP<br>5A       |
| 3- HEATER<br>20A        | 13- LIGHTER<br>10A        |
| 2- WIPER<br>10A         | 12- ROOM LAMP/RADIO<br>5A |
| 1- LAMP<br>20A          | 11- HORN<br>10A           |



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3 M1P1-07-025



ZX85USB-3 M1P1-07-062



M1P1-07-061


# OPERATOR'S STATION

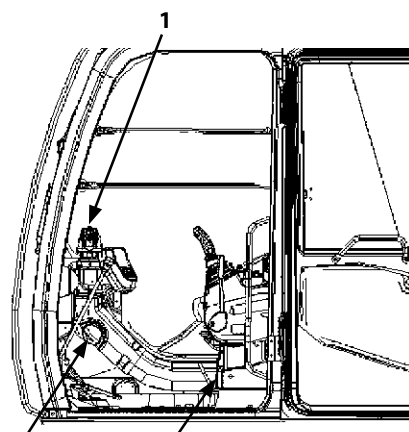
## AUTO AIR CONDITIONER

### Distinctive Feature

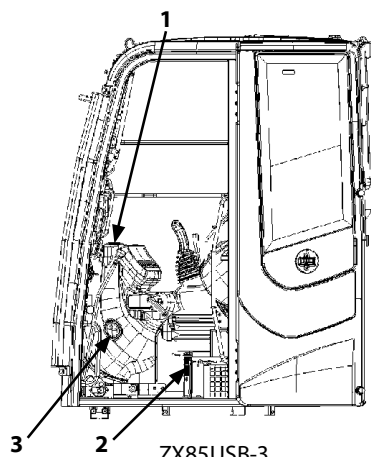
- Temperature Control:  
Automatically controls the cab temperature to maintain the temperature set by the temperature control switch regardless of outside air temperature and insolation.
- Max. Cooling and Heating:  
Maximum cooling or heating can be obtained by moving the temperature control switch to the full right or left respectively.
- Preheating:  
During preheating the cab in winter with the foot vent selected, the air volume is reduced to Low until the coolant temperature rises to prevent cool air from entering the cab.

- 1- Front Vent
- 2- Foot Vent
- 3- Defroster Vent
- 4- Rear Vent
- 5- Control Panel
- 6- Blower Switch
- 7- Liquid-Crystal Display (LCD)
- 8- Air Conditioner Switch
- 9- AUTO Switch
- 10- OFF Switch
- 11- Temperature Control Switch
- 12- Circulation Mode Switch
- 13- Fresh Air Mode Switch
- 14- Mode Switch

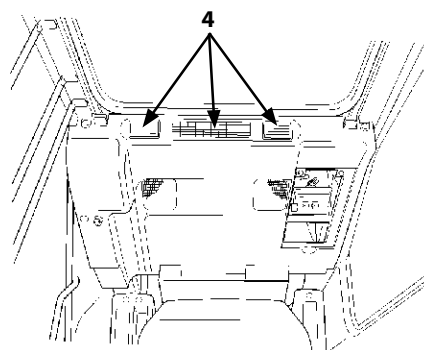
 **NOTE:** Except for foot vent (2), all vents are provided with louvers to adjust the air flow direction. In addition, the louvers on front vent (1) and defroster vent (3) can be completely opened and closed by hand.



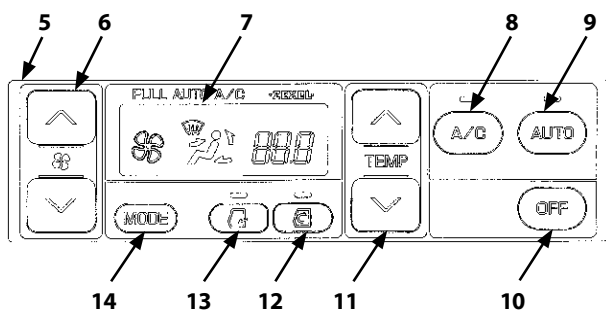
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3 M1U1-01-025



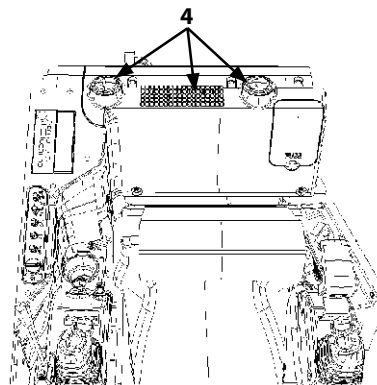
M1P1-01-035



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3 M1U4-01-002



M178-01-073







ZX85USB-3 M1P1-01-030

## OPERATOR'S STATION

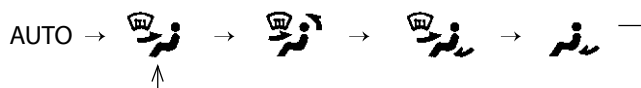
### Control Panel Designation and Function

- Mode Switch (14):

Selects the air vent. The selected air vent is indicated on LCD (7).


-  Air flows out of front vent and the defroster vents.
-  Air flow the front and rear vents and the defroster vents.
-  Air flows out of the front and foot vents and the defroster vents.
-  Air flows out of the foot vents.

Each time mode switch (14) is pressed, the vent location can be changed in four stages as illustrated below.




- When AUTO switch (9) is selected the AUTO, the air vent location is automatically selected.
- Temperature Control Switch (11):  
Sets temperature in the cab from 18.0 to 32.0 °C or 63 to 91 °F by 0.5 °C or 1 °F step. The set-temperature is displayed on LCD (7).

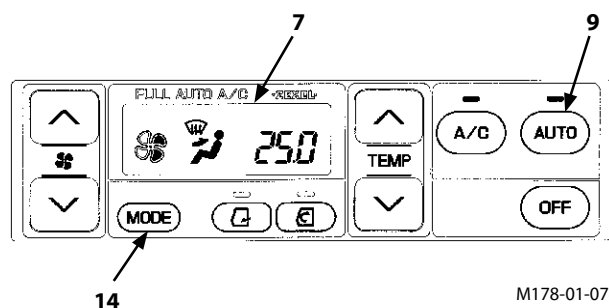
- FC (Full-Cool)

Push the  button after setting air temperature to 18 °C or 63 °F. Air flow temperature is set to the lowest and the "FC" symbol is displayed on LCD (7).

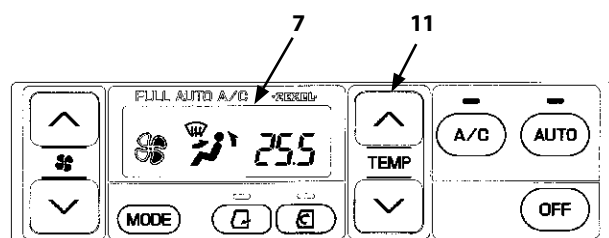
- FH (Full-Heat)


Push the  button after setting air temperature to 32 °C or 91 °F. Air flow temperature is set to the highest and the "FH" symbol is displayed on LCD (7).

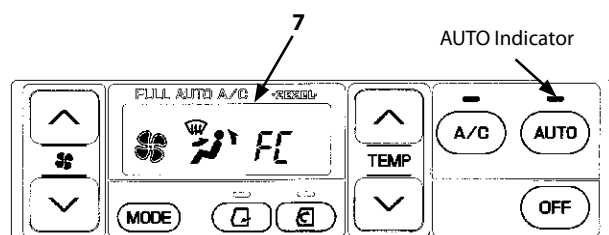
- When the AUTO indicator is ON, air temperature at the vents is automatically set together with the blower speed and vent locations.
- When the AUTO indicator is OFF, only air temperature at the vents is automatically set.
- When the "FC" symbol is displayed on LCD (7), air temperature at the vent, air vent (front and rear vents) locations, recirculation air suction port, and blower speed are maintained at the lowest cooling conditions. However, in case the circulation indicator is ON before the "FC" symbol is displayed, circulation operation is maintained.



Display when AUTO switch (9) is pressed:



Display when the  button is pressed after displaying 25.0 °C (77 °F).



Display when the LCD displays "FC" symbol.

## OPERATOR'S STATION





- When the "FH" symbol is displayed on LCD (7), air flow-in temperature at the vent, air vent (front and rear vents) locations, fresh air suction port, and blower speed are maintained at the highest heating conditions. However, in case the circulation indicator is ON before the "FH" symbol is displayed, circulation operation is maintained.

### Selecting Display Between Celsius And Fahrenheit

- While depressing both A/C (8) and mode (14) switches, turn the key switch "ON".
- LCD (7) will display "Sd" for approx. 5 seconds.
- After display "Sd" is deleted, all LED (7) will come ON.
- After all LED (7) come ON, repeat to press blower switch (6) four times.
- Sequentially, press A/C (8) and blower (6) switches at the same time.
- Then, the selection mode between celsius and fahrenheit starts.
  - Each time the fresh air mode switch (13) is pressed, the display is shifted between celsius and fahrenheit.
  - When celsius is displayed, LED (7) displays "C."
  - When fahrenheit is displayed, LED (7) displays "F"
  - Select either one to be preferred.
- After selection is complete, end by turning the key switch "OFF".

LED (7) will display in the selected mode when the machine is operated next time.


	Display on LCD
Celsius (°C)	18.0 to 32.0
Fahrenheit (°F)	63 to 91

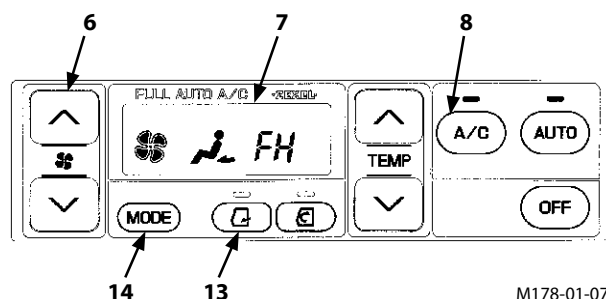
- Blower Switch (6)
  - When the AUTO indicator is ON, the blower speed is automatically controlled.
  - When the AUTO indicator is OFF, the blower speed is controlled in 4 steps. When the  button is pressed with the blower OFF, the blower starts running in the HI mode. Then, each time the  button is pressed, the blower speed is reduced by one step. LCD (7) indicates the blower fan speed. When the  button is pressed with the blower OFF, the blower starts running in the LO mode. Then, each time the  button is pressed, the blower speed is increased by one step. LCD (7) indicates the corresponding blower fan speed.

- Circulation Mode Switch (12):

- Fresh Air Mode Switch (13):

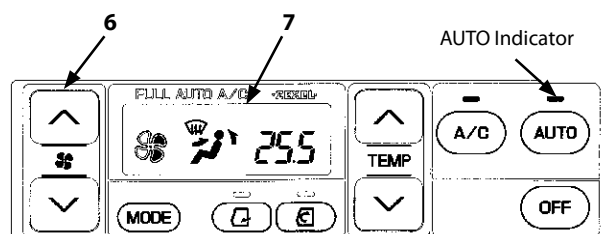
Changes the air circulation mode and automatically selects the air vent. When fresh air mode switch (13) is pressed, the indicator comes ON and the fresh air circulation mode is selected, allowing fresh air to flow in. When fresh air mode switch (13) is pressed again, the indicator goes OFF and the fresh air suction port is closed. When circulation mode switch (12) is pressed, the indicator comes ON and the circulation mode is selected. When circulation mode switch (12) is pressed again, the indicator goes OFF and the fresh air suction port is opened.

 **NOTE:** Operating the above switches controls the fresh air suction port manually or automatically. Therefore, even if AUTO switch (9) is turned ON, the fresh air suction port status will not be changed.

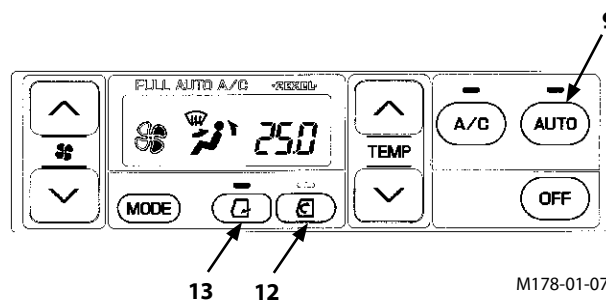


Display when the LCD displays "FH" symbol.

M178-01-077



M178-01-075



Display when fresh air vent switch (13) is pressed.

M178-01-078



## OPERATOR'S STATION

- Air Conditioner (A/C) Switch (8)

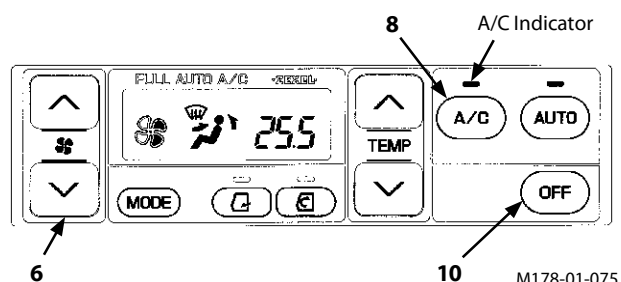
Press A/C switch (8) to turn the air conditioner and the A/C indicator ON. However, unless the blower is running (the fan display of blower switch (6) is lit), the air conditioner will not be turned ON.

- OFF Switch (10)

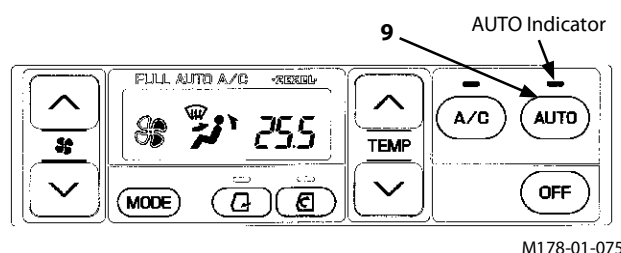
Press OFF switch (10) to turn the blower and the air conditioner OFF.

- AUTO Switch (9)

Press AUTO switch (9) to turn the AUTO and the A/C indicators ON so that the air flow-in temperature at the vent, blower speed, vent locations, and fresh air suction port are automatically controlled.



Display when Air Conditioner Switch (8) is pressed:



Display when AUTO Switch (9) is pressed:

## CAB HEATER OPERATION

1. Operate AUTO switch (9).

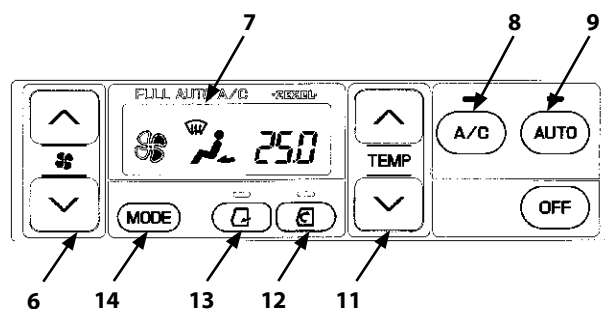
According to signals sent from various sensors, the air conditioner amplifier automatically selects the air flow-in vents, air suction ports, and air flow-in temperature at the vent, and controls the blower speed.

2. Operate Temperature Control Switch (11).

Set temperature control switch (11) so that "25.0" is indicated on LCD (7). Control air temperature inside cab using this switch as necessary.

3. As Necessary:

- Operate Mode switch (14) to manually select the air vent.
- Operate blower switch (6) to manually control the blower speed.
- Operate fresh air mode switch (13) to maintain the air vent in the fresh air circulation mode.
- Operate circulation mode switch (12) to maintain the air suction port in the circulation mode.



M178-01-079

When the A/C indicator is ON, the air conditioner functions dehumidifier. Press A/C switch (8) to turn OFF the dehumidifier function.

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### COOLING OPERATION

1. Press AUTO Switch (9)

The AUTO and the A/C indicators come ON. Then, the air temperature at the vent, blower speed, vent locations, and air suction ports are automatically controlled by the air conditioner amplifier according to signals sent from various sensors.

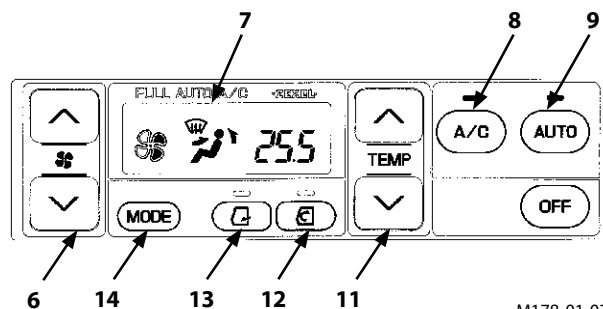
2. Operate Temperature Control Switch (11).

Set temperature control switch (11) so that "25.0" is indicated on LCD (7). Control air temperature inside the cab using this switch (11) as necessary.

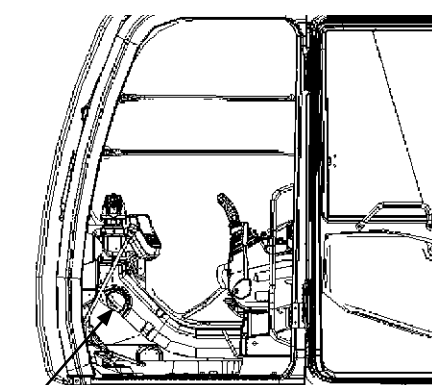
3. As Necessary:

- Operate Mode switch (14) to manually select the air vent.
- Operate blower switch (6) to manually control the blower speed.
- Operate fresh air mode switch (13) to maintain the air vent in the fresh air circulation mode.
- Operate circulation mode switch (12) to maintain the air suction port in the circulation mode.

In case the front window (lower) becomes clouded, manually close defroster vent (3).

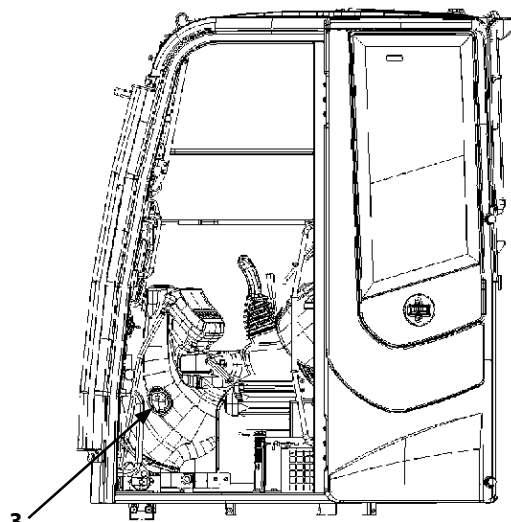


M178-01-075



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1U1-01-025





ZX85USB-3

M1P1-01-035

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### DEFROSTER OPERATION


1. Press AUTO Switch (9). Temperature-controlled air blows out. During cold weather season when starting the engine, the engine coolant temperature and air temperature in the cab are low. Then, cool air is restricted not to flow in the cab to the minimum (LO) by the Heater Start-Operation Control System.
2. Set temperature control switch (11) so that "25.0" is indicated on LCD (7). Set fresh air vent switch (13) in the fresh air circulation mode.
3. Select the front vents  or the front and rear vents  using MODE switch (14).

Control air flow direction by adjusting the louvers at front vent (1) and defroster vent (3).

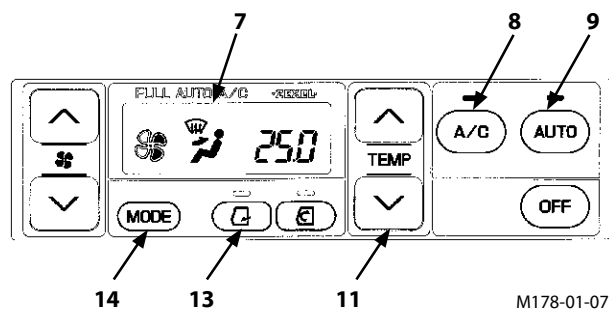
Control air temperature in the cab by operating temperature control switch (11). If the windowpanes become clouded in rainy season or when dehumidifying, turn the indicator of A/C switch (8) ON.

#### Cool Head / Warm Feet Operation

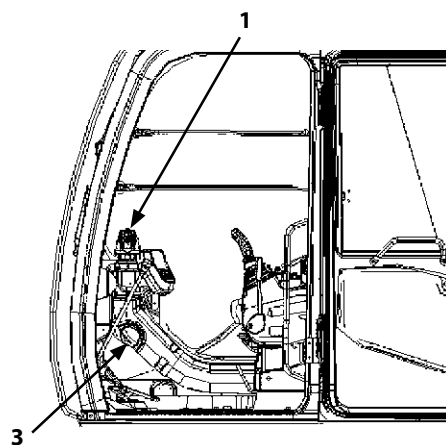
Cool and warm air is simultaneously supplied to the head vents and feet vents respectively.

1. Press blower switch (6) to adjust the blower speed.
2. Press MODE switch (14) to display the front and rear vent  mark on the liquid crystal panel. Then, turn A/C switch (8) ON (indicator lights).

Control air temperature inside the cab by operating temperature control switch (11).

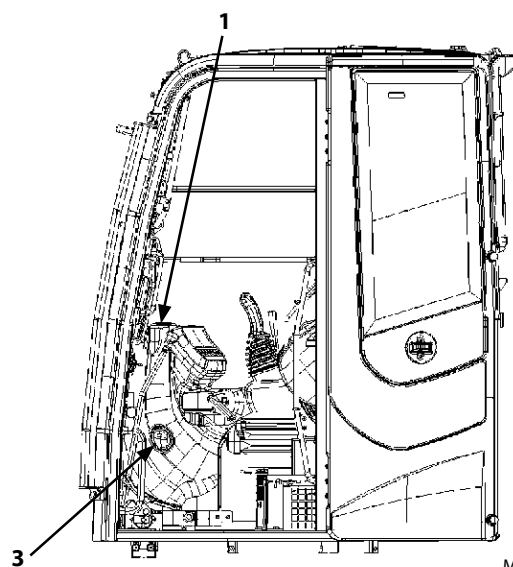


M178-01-074



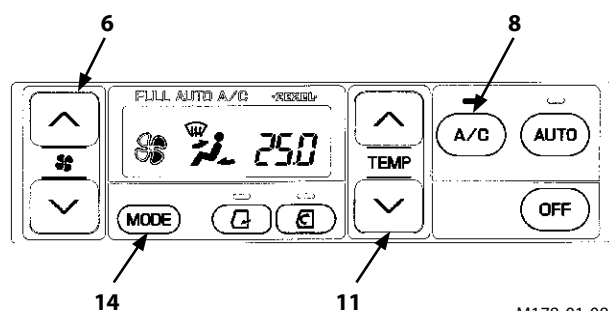
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1U1-01-025



ZX85USB-3

M1P1-01-035



M178-01-080

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### TIPS FOR OPTIMAL AIR CONDITIONER USAGE

#### For Rapid Cooling

Temperature in the cab may rise over 80 °C (176 °F) when the machine is exposed to sun light in the summer. In this case, ventilate air in the cab first by opening the windows for rapid cooling. After starting the engine, press AUTO switch (9). Set temperature to "18.0" on LCD (7) using temperature control switch (11). Turn circulation mode switch (12) ON.

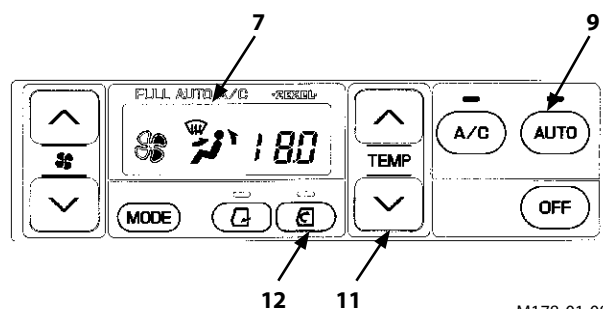
#### When Windows Become Clouded

If the insides of the windows become clouded during rainy weather or on humid days, operate the air conditioner to aid in keeping the windows clear. When the atmosphere is very damp, and if the air conditioner has run excessively, the outside of the windows may become clouded. If this happens, turn off the air conditioner to adjust the temperature in the cab.

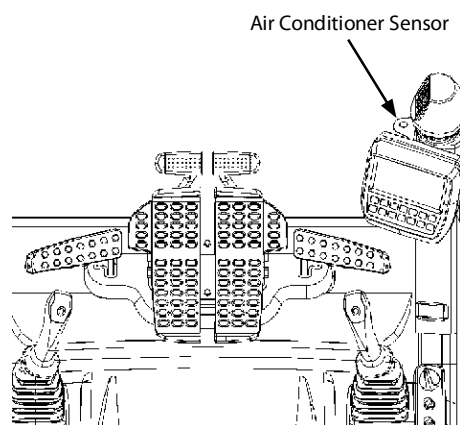
#### Off-Season Air Conditioner Maintenance

To protect each part of the compressor from a lack of lubricant, operate the air conditioner at least once a month for several minutes with the engine running at a slow speed during off-season. When the cab temperature is lower than 15 °C (59 °F), the air conditioner may not operate. If this happens, warm the cab using the heater first.

- IMPORTANT:**
- Do not suddenly increase the engine speed.
  - Refer to the item "Check Air Conditioner Filter" in the Maintenance Section for maintenance of the air conditioner filters.
  - Always clean the auto air conditioner sensor for effective air conditioner performance. Avoid placing any obstructions around the sensor.

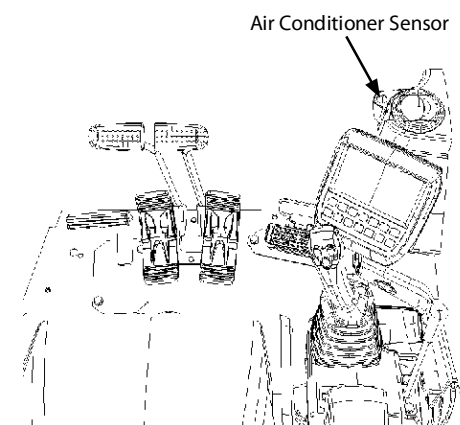


M178-01-081



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1J1-01-028



ZX85USB-3

M1P1-01-032

# OPERATOR'S STATION

## CAB HEATER (Optional)

### Part Name and Location




- 1- Front Vent
- 2- Foot Vent
- 3- Defroster Vent
- 4- Rear Vents
- 5- Control Panel
- 6- Mode Switch
- 7- Fresh Air Vent Switch
- 8- Temperature Control Switch
- 9- Blower Switch
- 10- OFF Switch

**NOTE:** Air flow direction can be changed by controlling the louvers at all air vents except for foot vent (2). The louvers at front (1) and defroster (3) vents can be manually opened or closed.

### Control Panel Designation and Function

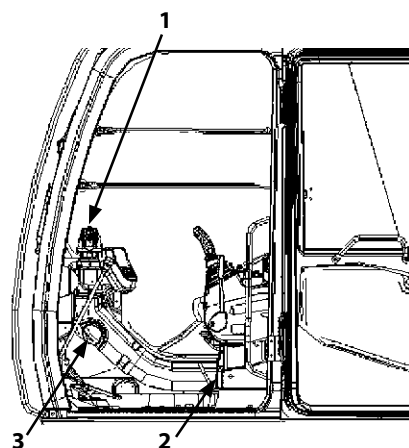
- Mode Switch (6):

Selects the air vent.

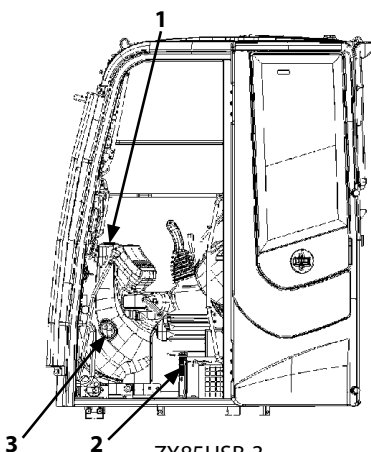
-  Air flows out of front vent (1) and defroster vent (3).
-  Air flows out of front (1), rear (4) vents and defroster vent (3).
-  Air flows out of foot vent (2).

### Temperature Control Switch (8)

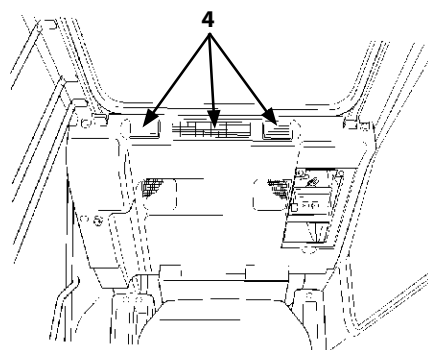
One of 8 indicators is lit. The air flow temperature at the vent is lower or higher as the indicator closer to the left or right end is lit respectively. Both warmed and cooled air flow out of the same air vent.



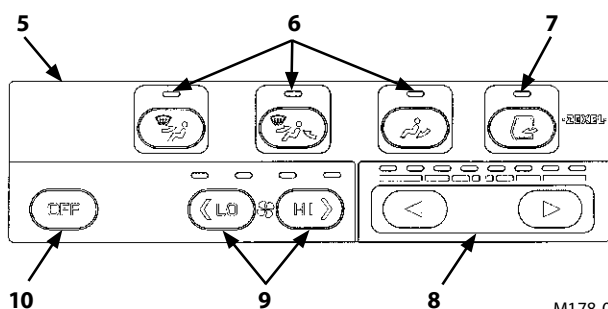
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3 M1U1-01-025



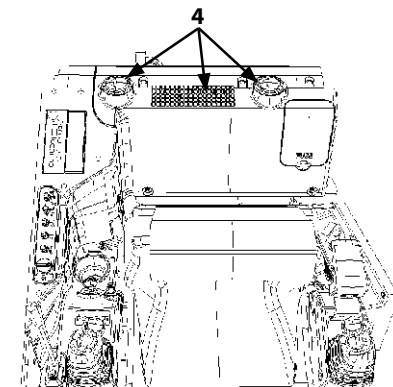
ZX85USB-3 M1P1-01-035



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3 M1U4-01-002



M178-01-072

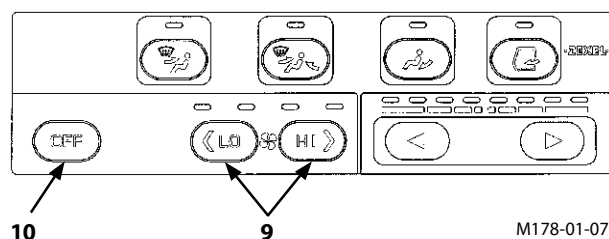


ZX85USB-3 M1P1-01-030

## OPERATOR'S STATION

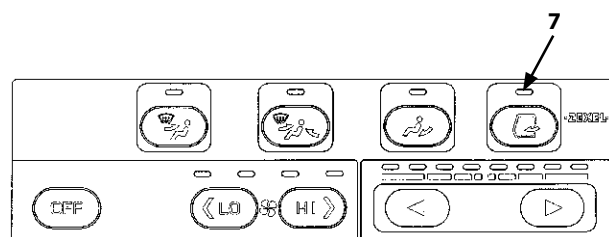
- Blower Switch (9)

The blower speed is controlled from Lo to Hi in 4 steps. When the **HI** button is pressed first, the blower starts running in the HI mode. Then, each time the **LO** button is pressed, the blower speed is reduced by one step. The blower speed indicator corresponding to the blower speed is lit. When the **LO** button is pressed first, the blower starts running in the LO mode. Then, each time the **HI** button is pressed, the blower speed is increased by one step. Press blower OFF switch (10) to stop the blower operation.



- Fresh Air Vent Switch (7):

Changes the air circulation mode. When fresh air vent switch (7) is pressed, the indicator comes ON and the fresh air circulation mode is selected, allowing fresh air to flow in. When fresh air vent switch (7) is pressed again, the indicator goes OFF and the circulation mode is selected.



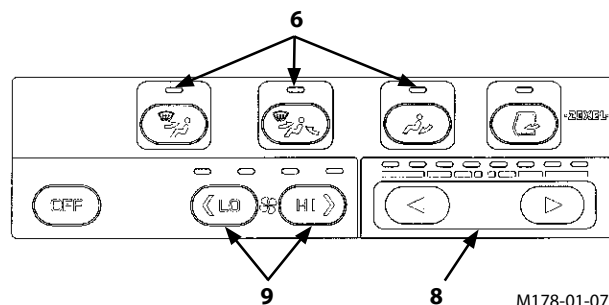
## OPERATOR'S STATION

### CAB HEATER OPERATION

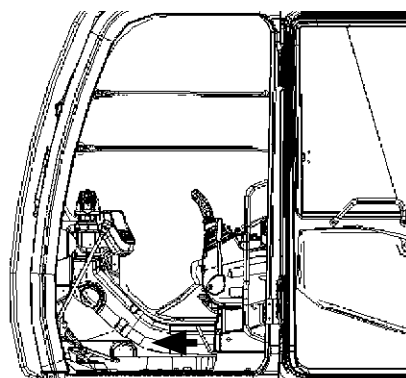
When any mode switches (6) are pressed (👤, 👤, 👤), warm air will flow out from the corresponding vent. However, the foot vent mode (👤) is commonly used for cab heating.

Press foot mode (👤) switch (6). Set temperature control switch (8) to the right end position.

Press blower switch (9) to blow warm air out of the foot vent. Adjust the air temperature in the cab by operating temperature control switch (8) and blower switch (9). When required to quickly increase air temperature in the cab, select the air recirculation mode. However, if air recirculation mode is used for a long time, the windowpanes will become clouded due to a difference in temperature between outside and inside the cab. Occasionally ventilate the cab. (When the fresh air circulation mode is selected, the windowpanes will be prevented from becoming clouded.)

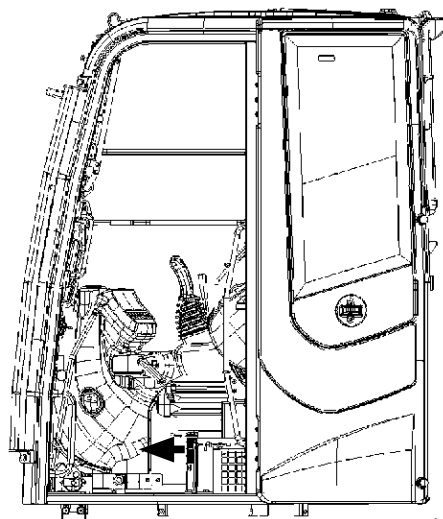


M178-01-072



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1U1-01-025





ZX85USB-3

M1P1-01-035

## OPERATOR'S STATION

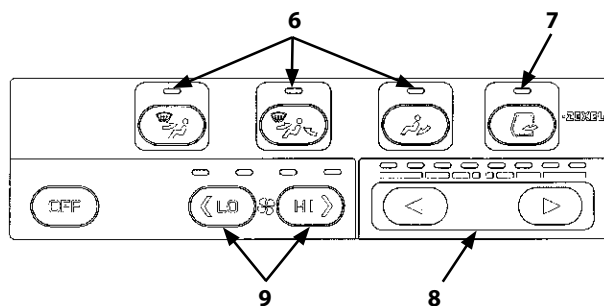
### DEFROSTER OPERATION

Press mode switch (6) (either the front  or front/rear vent mode  switch). Set temperature control switch (8) to the heat operation position. Press fresh air vent switch (7).

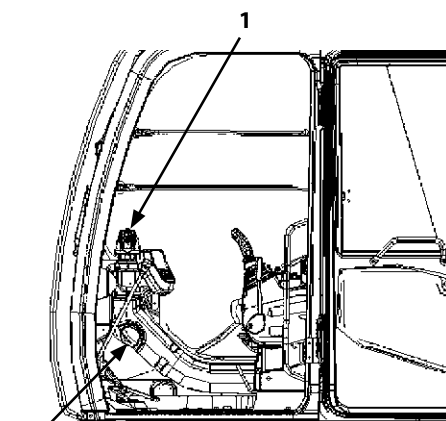
Press blower switch (9). Warm air will blow out from the front or front/ rear vents.

Adjust air flow direction from front vent (1) and defroster vent (3) by controlling the louver direction.

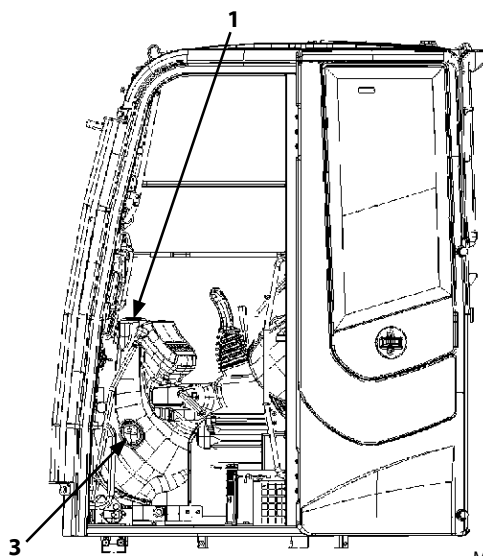
Use temperature control switch (8) and blower switch (9) to adjust air temperature in the cab.



M178-01-072



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3 M1U1-01-025



ZX85USB-3

M1P1-01-035

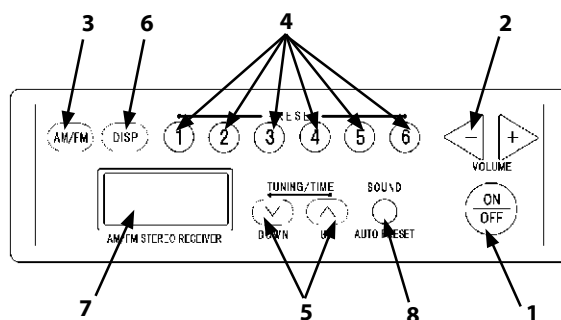


## OPERATOR'S STATION

### AM/FM RADIO OPERATION

#### Controls on the Radio


- 1- Power Switch
- 2- Volume Control Switch
- 3- AM/FM Switch
- 4- Station Presets
- 5- UP/DOWN Switch
- 6- Display Mode Change Switch
- 7- Digital Display
- 8- Tone Adjustment Switch





M1U1-01-119

#### Tuning Procedure

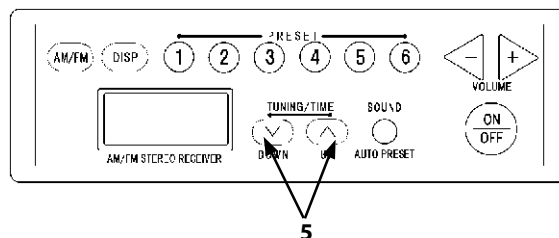
- Manual Tuning Procedure  
Repeatedly tap one of UP/DOWN switch (5) until the desired station is reached.  
Each time the tuning switch is pressed, the frequency changes at an interval.

Tap the tuning switch [UP] () to increase the frequency.

Tap the tuning switch [DOWN] () to decrease the frequency.

- Automatic Search Function  
Press and hold one UP/DOWN switch (5) for more than half a second, then release. The frequency display will move up to the next higher frequency station.  
To go up to the next higher frequency station, press and hold the tuning switch [UP] ().  
To go down to the next lower frequency station, press and hold the tuning switch [DOWN] ().

In order to deactivate the automatic search function while it is operating (while searching the next available frequency station), simply tap UP/DOWN switch (5) again.  
If the receiving radio waves are weak, i. e. such as when the machine is located between high rising buildings, etc., use the manual tuning procedure to select the desired station.

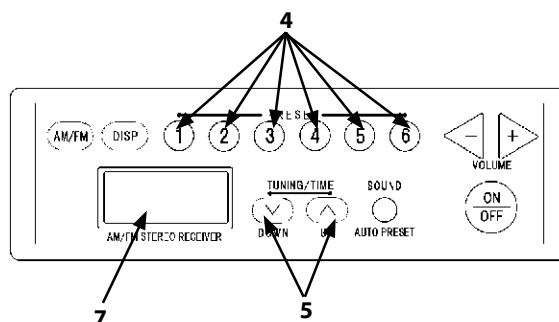


M1U1-01-119

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### Station Presetting Procedure

1. Select the desired station using UP/DOWN switch (5). (Refer to the "Tuning Procedure" section.)
2. Press and hold one station preset (4) for more than 1 second until an electronic tone is heard. Now, the selected station is preset for selected station preset (4). The frequency of the preset station will be indicated on digital display (7).



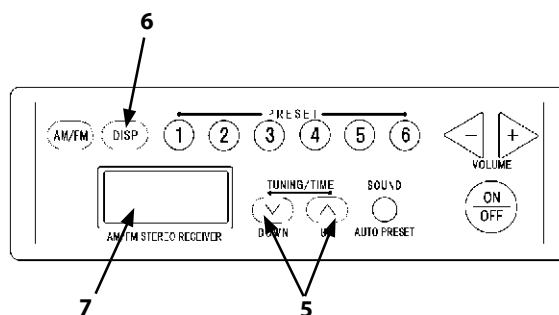
Once the presetting is complete for a station preset (4), the radio will be tuned to the preset station when station preset (4) is pressed (for less than 1 second).

M1U1-01-119

### Digital Clock Setting Procedure

**NOTE:** In order to set the clock, digital display (7) must be in the time display mode.

1. Press display mode button (6) to indicate the time display on digital display (7).
2. Press and hold display mode button (6) for longer than 1 second. The hour display will start flashing and the time set mode will be selected.
3. Press UP/DOWN switch (5) to set the clock. Each time UP/DOWN switch (5) is pressed, the time display will increase by one. If UP/DOWN switch (5) is pressed and held, the time display will change continuously.
- When the hour display is "12", if UP/DOWN switch (UP) (5) is pressed, the hour display will be reset to "1." The time is displayed in 12 hour standard. More press display mode button (6). The minute display will start flashing and time set mode will be selected. When the minute display is "59," if UP/DOWN switch (UP) (5) is pressed, the minute display will be reset to "00." However, the hour display remains unchanged in this case.
4. After the clock setting is complete, press display mode button (6) again to end the clock time setting procedure. Digital display (7) stops flashing and changes to stay ON.



M1U1-01-119

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### Sound Adjustment

When SOUND control switch (2) is pressed with the radio switch ON, It will be in the sound adjustment state.

Each time SOUND control switch (2) is pressed, the adjustment item can be changed as below.

BAL → TRE → BAS → BAL → TRE → BAS

When SOUND control switch (2) is pressed with the BAS state, the sound adjustment is deactivated.

- Sound Adjustment (Balance Control)

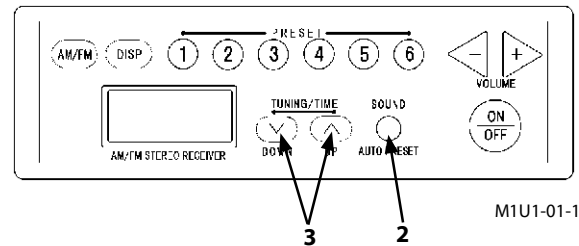
When UP button (3) is pressed with the BAL state, loudspeaker output is increased from R output by one step. When DOWN button (3) is pressed with the BAL state, loudspeaker output is decreased from L output by one step.

- Sound Adjustment (Treble Control)

When UP button (3) is pressed with the TRE state, treble level is increased by one step. When DOWN button (3) is pressed with the TRE state, treble level is decreased by one step.

- Sound Adjustment (Bass Control)

When UP button (3) is pressed with the Bas state, bass level is increased by one step. When DOWN button (3) is pressed with the Bas state, bass level is decreased by one step.



## OPERATOR'S STATION

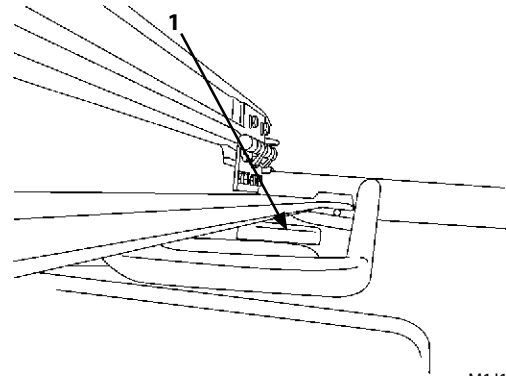
---

### CAB DOOR RELEASE LEVER



#### CAUTION:

- Open the cab door all the way until it securely locks in the latch on the side of the cab.
- Do not keep the cab window open when the machine is parked on a slope, or while the wind is blowing hard. The cab window may close accidentally, possibly resulting in personal injury.
- When opening or closing the cab window, take extra care not to catch fingers between the base machine and the cab window.



M1J1-07-051

To unlock the door from this position, push down on lever (1).

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### OPENING UPPER FRONT WINDOW

ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

**WARNING:** Open or close the upper-front cab window only after pulling up pilot control shut-off lever (1) to the LOCK position. Failure to do so may allow the machine to move unexpectedly if a control lever is touched with a part of the body by mistake, possibly resulting in personal injury or death.

1. Press lock release lever (2) at the upper center to release the upper front window lock.

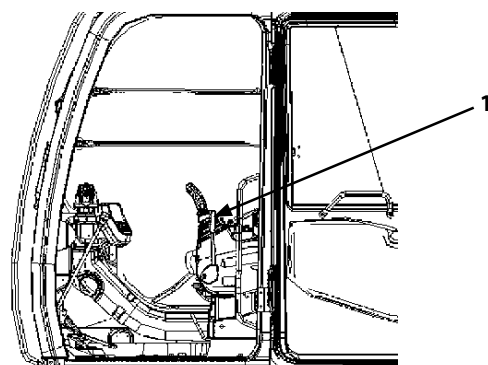
**NOTE:** Use caution when releasing the lock. The upper section of the upper front window will move approx. 10 cm inward.

2. Holding the upper and lower handles (one each) on the upper front window, pull the upper front window up and back until it securely catches into auto locks (4).

**CAUTION:** Always secure lock pin (3) in the lock position after the upper front window is opened.

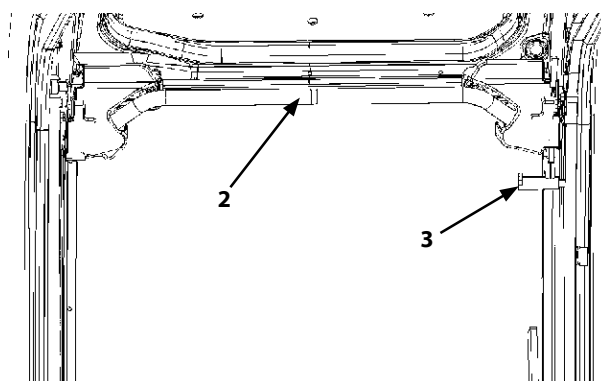
3. After confirming that the window securely catches into auto locks (4), slide lock pin (3) into the left bracket boss hole to lock the window in position.

**NOTE:** When the upper front window is opened, the wiper and washer are inoperable.

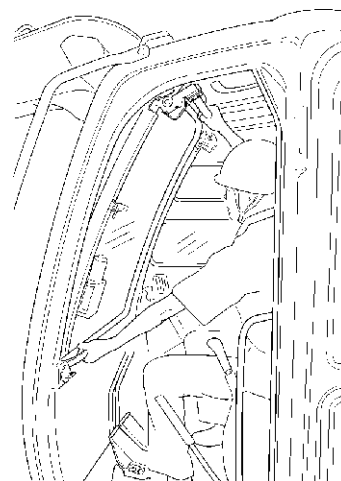


LOCK Position

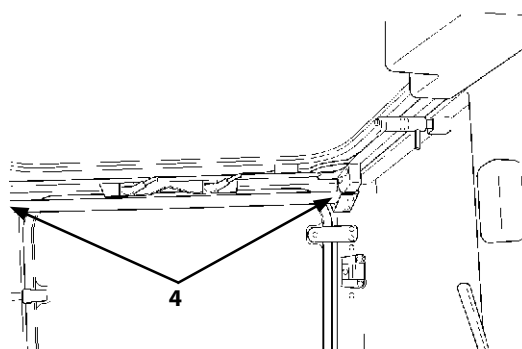
M1U1-01-025



M1U1-01-028



M1CC-01-020



M1CC-01-031

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### OPENING UPPER FRONT WINDOW

#### ZX85USB-3

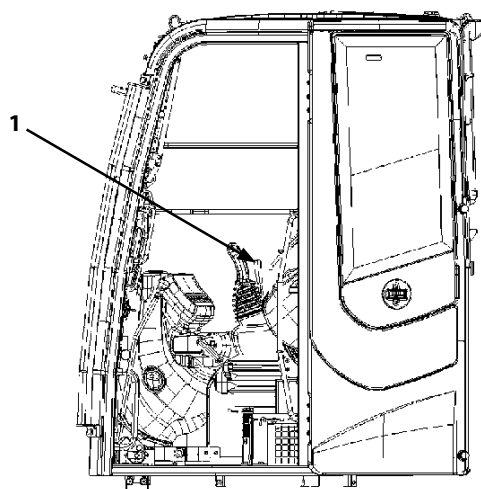
**WARNING:** Open or close the upper front window only after pulling up pilot control shut-off lever (1) to the LOCK position. Failure to do so may allow the machine to move unexpectedly if a control lever is touched with a part of the body by mistake, possibly resulting in personal injury or death.

**CAUTION:** Open or close the upper front window after lowering the seat height. If not so, you may hit your head against the upper front window when opening or closing it.

1. Press lock release levers (2) at the both right and left to release the upper front window lock.
2. Hold the right and left handles (3) on the upper front window and move the upper front window up and back until lock release levers (2) are locked again.
3. After confirming that lock release levers (2) are securely locked, and set lever (4) of the cab rear upper side under the front window.

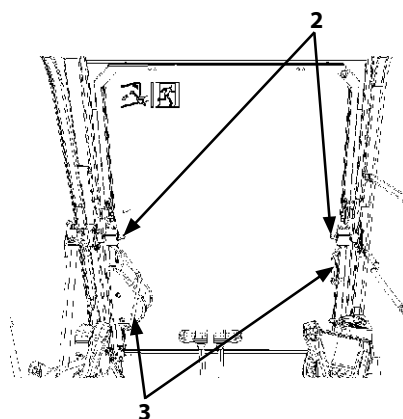
**NOTE:** When the upper front window is opened, the wiper is operable.

**CAUTION:** When opening the upper front window, slide and set lever (4) under the front window any-time.

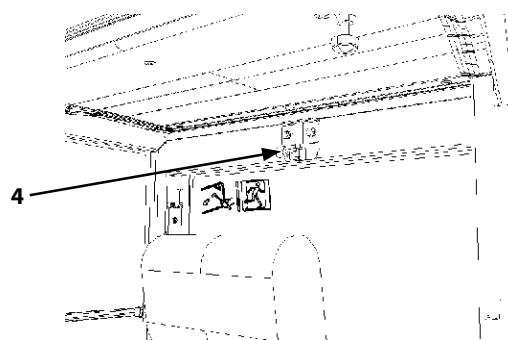


LOCK Position

M1P1-01-035

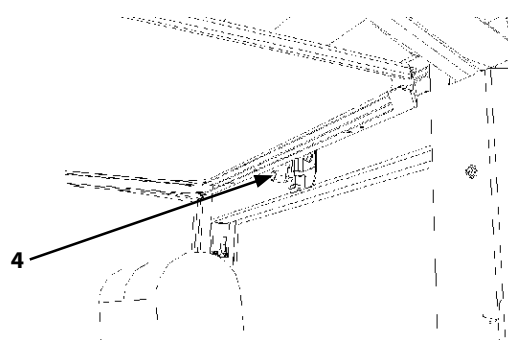


M1P1-01-037



UNLOCK Position

M1P1-01-039



LOCK Position

M1P1-01-038

## OPERATOR'S STATION

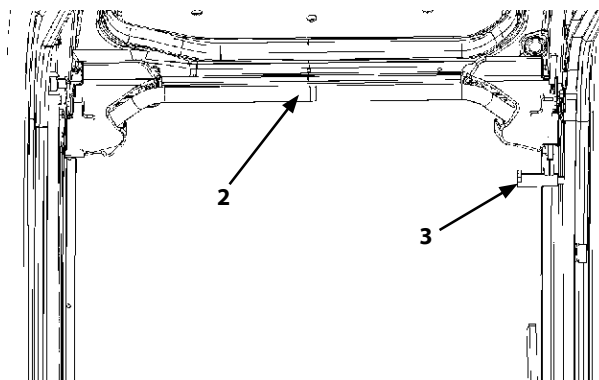
### CLOSING UPPER FRONT WINDOW

ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

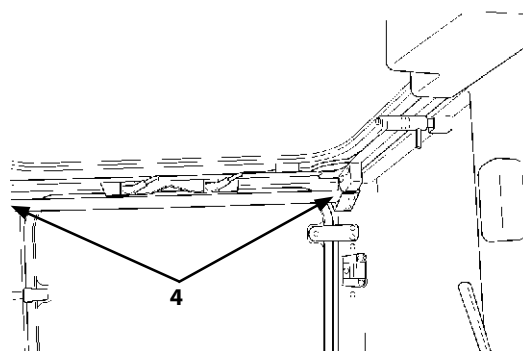
- CAUTION:** Avoid possible injury while closing window. Upper front window comes down very forcefully. Close window only when sitting in the operator's seat. Guide window down slowly.

1. Pull out lock pin (3) to unlock window.
2. Slightly move the window forward while pushing lock release lever (2) to release auto locks (4).
3. Pull window down slowly until it securely catches into auto locks (4).

**NOTE:** The wiper and washer would not operate until the upper front window is completely closed.



M1U1-01-028



M1CC-01-031

ZX85USB-3

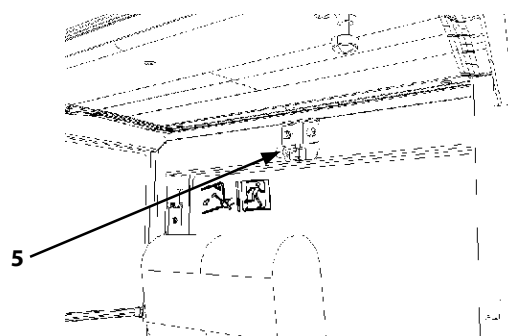
- CAUTION:** Avoid possible injury while closing window. Upper front window comes down very forcefully. Close window only when sitting in the operator's seat. Guide window down slowly.

- CAUTION:** Open or close the upper front window after lowering the seat height. If not so, you may hit your head against the upper front window when opening or closing it.

1. Set lever (5) in horizontal and return the upper front window to the original state.
2. Press lock release levers (6) downward and unlock the upper front window.

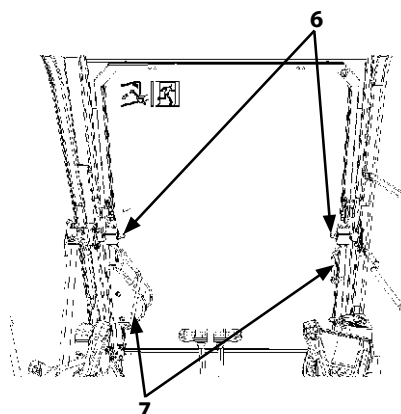
- CAUTION:** When closing the upper front window, move it downward slowly in order not to pinch hands.

3. Hold right and left handles (7) on the upper front window and move the upper front window downward until lock release levers (6) are securely locked.



UNLOCK Position

M1P1-01-039



M1P1-01-037

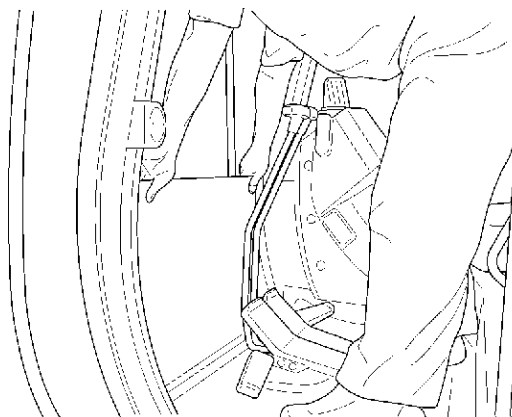
## OPERATOR'S STATION

### REMOVING AND STORING LOWER FRONT WINDOW

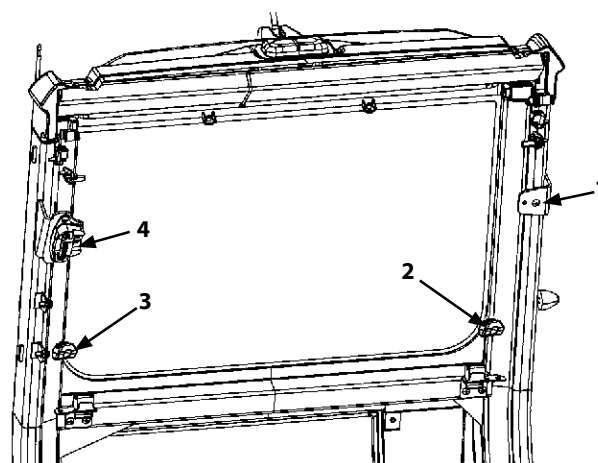
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

**CAUTION:** Take care not to pinch your fingers when handling the lower front window.

1. Open the upper front window beforehand when removing the lower front window.
2. While pulling the lower front window inward, raise it to remove.
3. Store the removed windowpane in the storing position. After inserting the windowpane into rubbers (2 and 3), slide it sideways securely into rubber (1). Then, push fastener (4) to lock.



M1CC-01-022



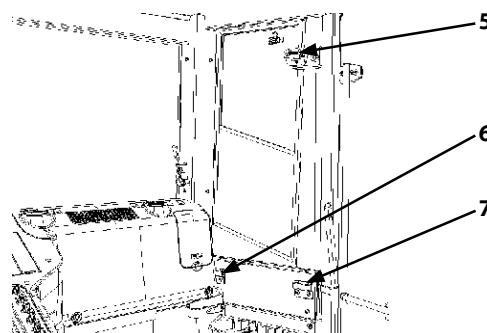
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3

M1U4-01-006

ZX85USB-3

**CAUTION:** Take care not to pinch your fingers when handling the lower front window.

1. Open the upper front window beforehand when removing the lower front window.
2. Move the lower front window upward and remove it.
3. Store the removed windowpane in the storing position at the rear. After inserting the windowpane into brackets (6 and 7), push it onto lock (5) and secure it.



ZX85USB-3

M1P1-01-040

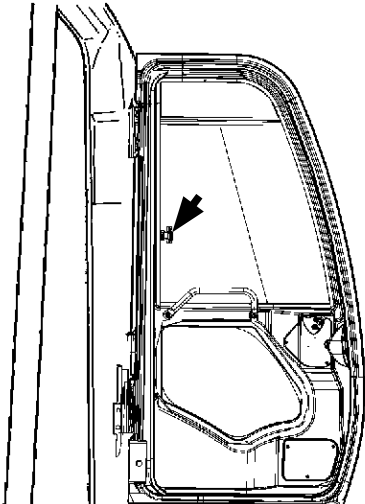


# OPERATOR'S STATION

## OPENING SIDE WINDOWS

### ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

Opening Cab Door Window  
Slide rear pane to the front.

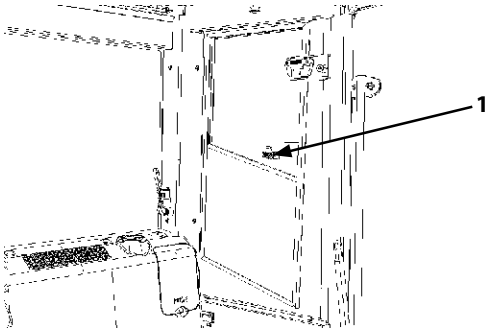


Cab Door Window  
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1U4-01-007

### ZX85USB-3

Open or close the rear left window by holding handle (1)  
and sliding the windowpane of the rear left window upward  
and downward.



ZX85USB-3

M1P1-01-041

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### OPENING/CLOSING OVERHEAD WINDOW

(Std. Model)

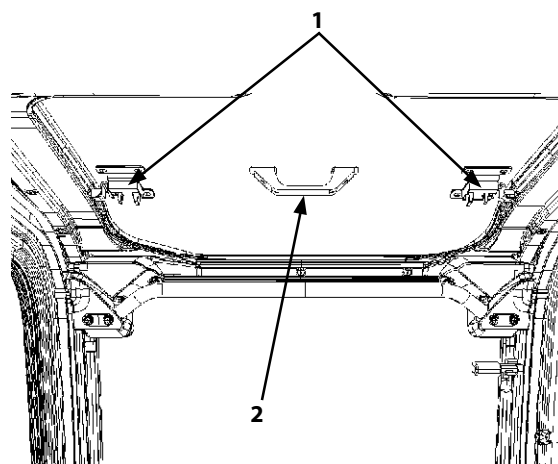
#### Opening

1. Move locks (1) toward center of window.
2. Hold handle (2) and lift window until it rises upright. With the window positioned upright, it will be secured in position by dampers (3).

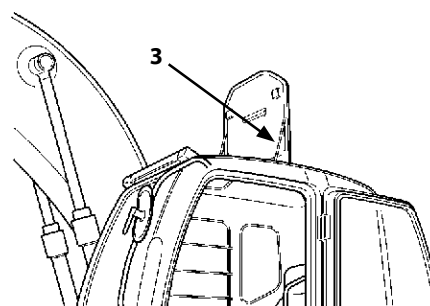
#### Closing

1. Hold handle (2) and pull window down until "click" sound is heard from locks (1).

Note that the overhead window can be used as an emergency exit.



M1U4-01-011



M1U1-01-054

### OPENING/CLOSING OVERHEAD WINDOW

(Clear Hatch: If Equipped)

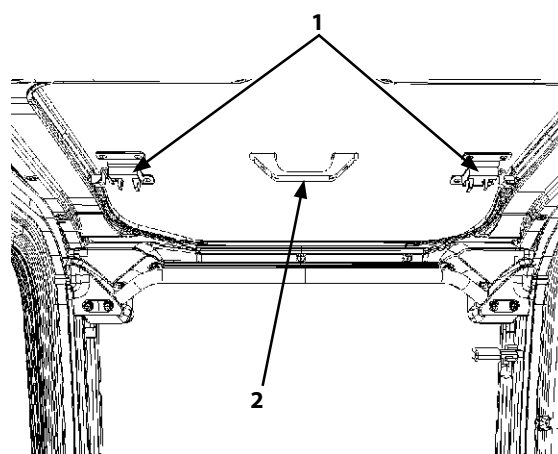
#### Opening

1. Move locks (1) toward center of window.
2. Hold handle (2) and lift window until it rises upright. With the window positioned upright, it will be secured in position by dampers (3).

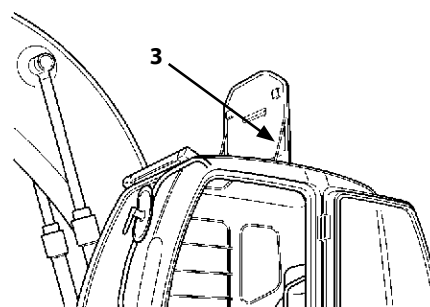
#### Closing

1. Hold handle (2) and pull window down until "click" sound is heard from locks (1).

Note that the overhead window can be used as an emergency exit.



M1U4-01-011



M1U1-01-054

#### IMPORTANT:

- Replace the clear hatch with a new one every 5 years even if undamaged. In case it was remarkably damaged or has received severe shock loads, replace it even if it has been not in use for 5 years.
- When cleaning the clear hatch, use a neutral detergent. If acidic or alkaline detergent is used, the clear hatch may become discolored or crack.
- Keep organic solvent away from the clear hatch. Failure to do so may cause the clear hatch to become discolored or crack.

# OPERATOR'S STATION

## EMERGENCY EXIT

ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

Escape from the cab in emergency in the following methods:

**CAUTION:** The danger of downfall is always present when escaping from the cab in emergency, possibly resulting in serious personal injury. Escape from the cab as safely as possible, depending on the posture of machine and the outside situation.

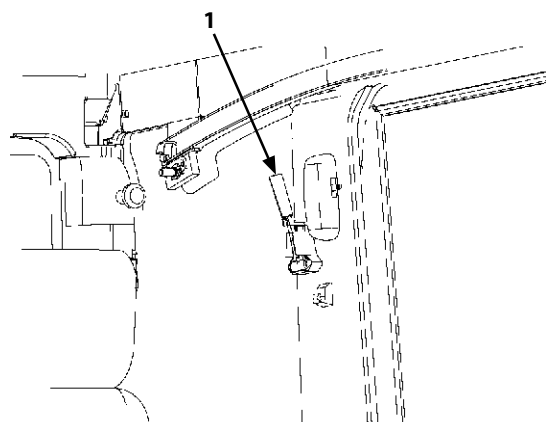
1. Open the cab door. Escape through the door.
2. If the cab door should be difficult to open or use, open the upper front window. Escape through the window.

**NOTE:** • Emergency exit decals (2) are affixed to the front and rear windows  
• See page "OPENING UPPER FRONT WINDOWS" for the opening method of the front windows.

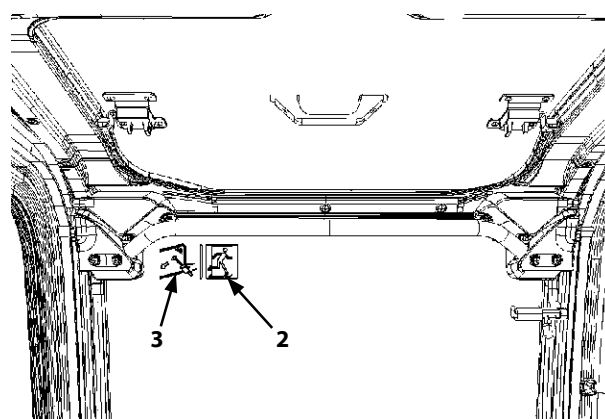
**CAUTION:**

- If decal (3) is affixed to the front window glass, the glass can be broken. However if decal (3) is not affixed to the front window glass, the glass cannot be broken.
- Take care not be injured with pieces of broken glass.

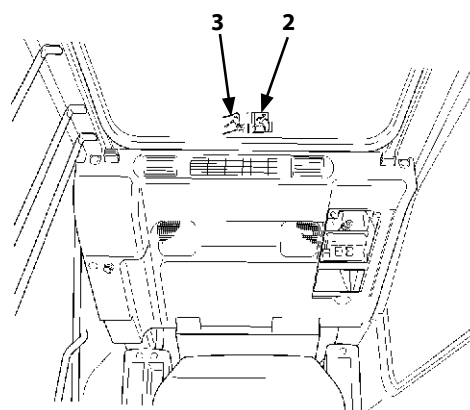
3. If upper front window should be difficult to open, check decal (3) affixed to the window glass.  
If decal (3) is affixed to the front window glass, break the front window glass using emergency evacuation tool (1) installed the cab left side. Then escape through the broken window.
4. If decal (3) is not affixed to the front window glass, or if the front window is not available for escaping, break the rear window glass using emergency evacuation tool (1). Then escape through the broken window.
5. If neither of front and rear windows are available for emergency exit, open the overhead window to escape from the cab.



M1U1-01-022



M1U4-01-012



M1U4-01-003

# OPERATOR'S STATION

## EMERGENCY EXIT

### ZX85USB-3

Escape from the cab in emergency in the following methods:

**CAUTION:** The danger of downfall is always present when escaping from the cab in emergency, possibly resulting in serious personal injury. Escape from the cab as safely as possible, depending on the posture of machine and the outside situation.

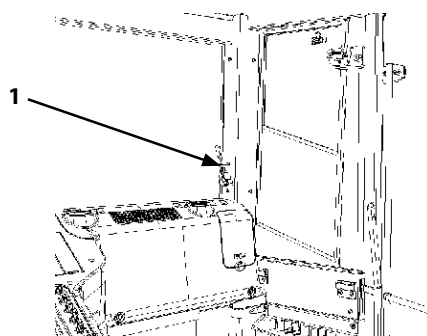
1. Open the cab door. Escape through the door.
2. If the cab door should be difficult to open or use, open the upper front window. Escape through the window.

**NOTE:** • Emergency exit decals (2) are affixed to the front and rear windows  
• See page "OPENING UPPER FRONT WINDOWS" for the opening method of the front windows.

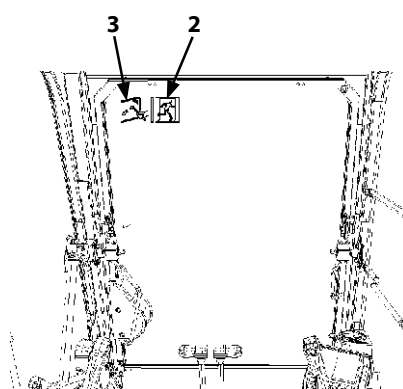
**CAUTION:**

- If decal (3) is affixed to the front window glass, the glass can be broken. However if decal (3) is not affixed to the front window glass, the glass cannot be broken.
- Take care not be injured with pieces of broken glass.

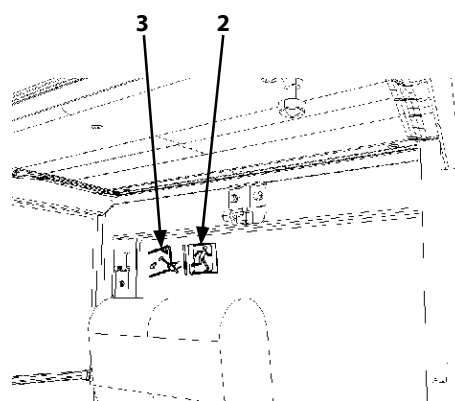
3. If upper front window should be difficult to open, check the decal (3) affixed to the window glass. If decal (3) is affixed to the front window glass, break the front window glass using emergency evacuation tool (1) installed the cab left side. Then escape through the broken window.
4. If decal (3) is not affixed to the front window glass, or if the front window is not available for escaping, break the rear window glass using emergency evacuation tool (1). Then escape through the broken window.
5. If neither of front and rear windows are available for emergency exit, open the overhead window to escape from the cab.



M1P1-01-040



M1P1-01-037



M1P1-01-039

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### ADJUSTING THE SEAT

#### Seat Height and Angle Adjustment

Seat height adjustment range is 60 mm (2.4 in) with steps every 15 mm (0.6 in) (5 positions in total). Moreover, the height of the front part and the rear part of the seat are adjusted independently, thus allowing the angle of the seat to be adjusted.

**CAUTION:** Avoid possible injury while operating lever (1). When pushing down lever (1), do not grab it. Fingers may be pinched between lever (1) and the seat stand. Be sure to push on the upper face of lever (1).

Use lever (1) to adjust the seat height and/or seat angle as follows:

- To adjust the front part of the seat:  
Push down lever (1) while sitting on the seat, and apply or remove body weight to obtain the desired height. When the desired height is obtained, release lever (1).
- To adjust the rear part of the seat:  
Pull up lever (1) while sitting on the seat, and apply or remove body weight to obtain the desired height. When the desired height is obtained, release lever (1).

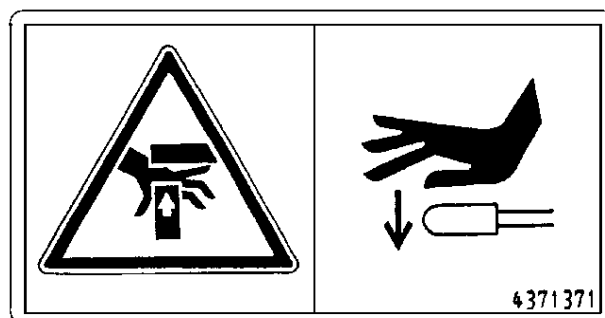
#### Seat Fore-Aft Adjustment

Pull lever (2) to unlock the seat from both consoles. With lever (2), slide the seat to the desired distance from pilot control levers. Release lever (2).

**NOTE:** Seat fore-aft adjustment range is 160 mm (6.3 in) with steps every 16 mm (0.8 in).

#### Backrest Adjustment

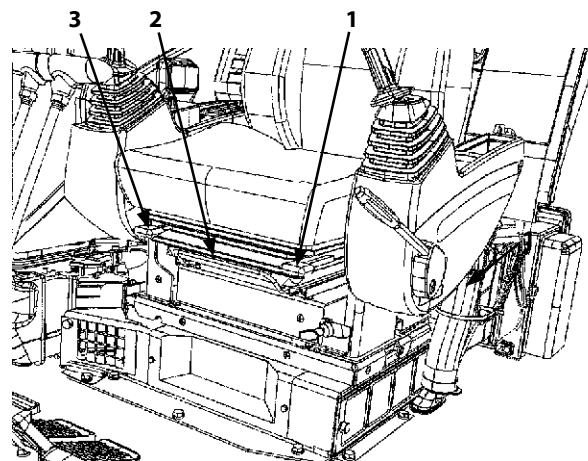
Pull up lever (3) to release backrest lock. Move backrest to the desired position and release lever (3).



Caution: Possibility of pinched fingers

Push down with the palm.

SS-955



M1P1-01-018

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### ADJUSTING THE SEAT (Optional)

#### Seat Height and Angle Adjustment

Seat height adjustment range is 60 mm (2.4 in) with steps every 15 mm (0.6 in) (5 positions in total). Moreover, the height of the front part and the rear part of the seat are adjusted independently, thus allowing the angle of the seat to be adjusted.

- CAUTION:** Avoid possible injury while operating lever (1). When pushing down lever (1), do not grab it. Fingers may be pinched between lever (1) and the seat stand. Be sure to push on the upper face of lever (1).

Use lever (1) to adjust the seat height and/or seat angle as follows:

- To adjust the front part of the seat:  
Push down lever (1) while sitting on the seat, and apply or remove body weight to obtain the desired height. When the desired height is obtained, release lever (1).
- To adjust the rear part of the seat:  
Pull up lever (1) while sitting on the seat, and apply or remove body weight to obtain the desired height. When the desired height is obtained, release lever (1).

#### Console and Seat Fore-aft Adjustment

Pull lever (2) to the right to adjust the seat and both right and left consoles to desired distance from the travel pedals and levers. Release lever (2) to lock seat and consoles into position.

- NOTE:** Seat and console fore-aft adjustment range is 40 mm (1.6 in) with steps every 20 mm (0.8 in).

#### Seat Fore-Aft Adjustment

Pull lever (3) to unlock the seat from both consoles. With lever (3), slide the seat to the desired distance from pilot control levers. Release lever (3).

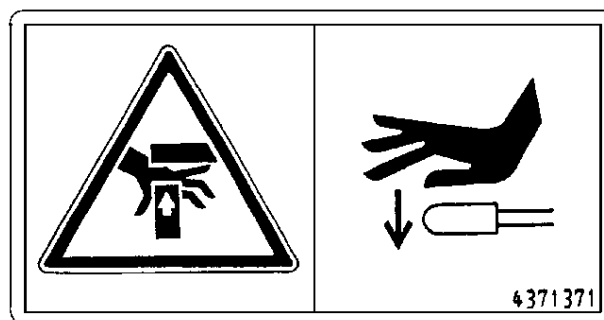
- NOTE:** Seat fore-aft adjustment range is 160 mm (6.3 in) with steps every 16 mm (0.8 in).

#### Suspension Adjustment

Turn knob (4) clockwise to increase suspension stiffness. Turn knob (4) counter clockwise to decrease suspension stiffness.

#### Backrest Adjustment

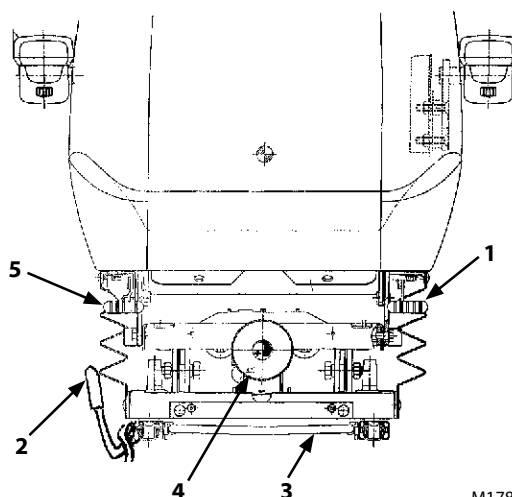
Pull up lever (5) to release backrest lock. Move backrest to the desired position and release lever (5).



Caution: Possibility of pinched fingers

Push down with the palm.

SS-955



M178-01-065

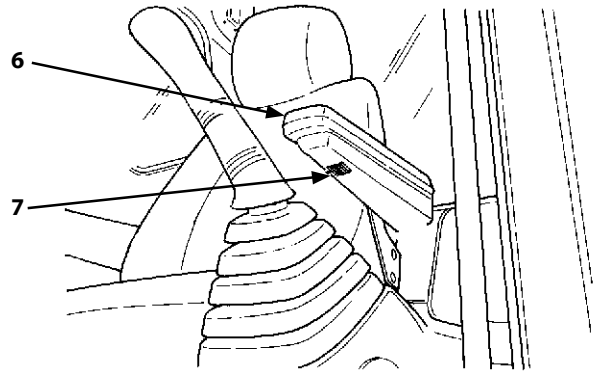
## OPERATOR'S STATION

---

### Armrest Adjustment

Armrest (6) can be pulled upright by hand to get on and off the machine easily.

The angle of armrest (6) can be adjusted to the desired position by turning adjusting dial (7) located on the bottom of armrest (6).



M1G6-01-017

## OPERATOR'S STATION

### ADJUSTING CONSOLE HEIGHT

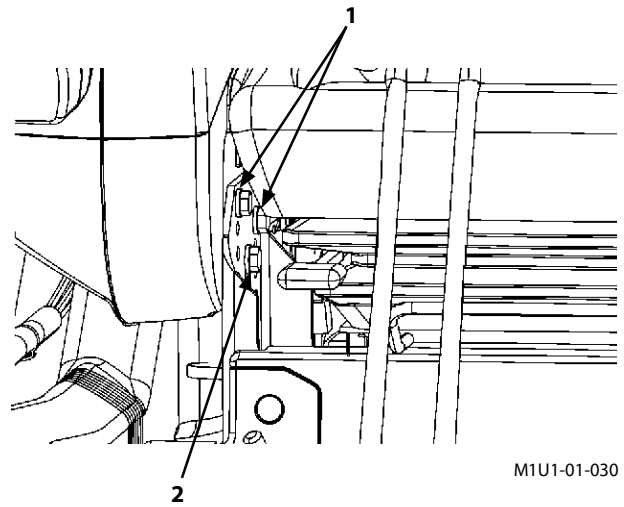
Adjust the console height to the operator's comfort and/or work conditions. Adjusting console height can be achieved using four positions provided vertically at 20 mm intervals.

**CAUTION:** Before loosening the console, support the console. Otherwise, the console may suddenly drop, possibly causing personal injury.

#### Adjusting Procedures

1. Lower the bucket to the ground. Stop the engine.
2. Move the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
3. Remove left and right console holding bolts (1). Loosen bolts (2) to adjust the console height.
4. After adjusting, tighten bolts (1) and (2).

Tightening Torque: 50 N·m (5 kgf·m)



M1U1-01-030



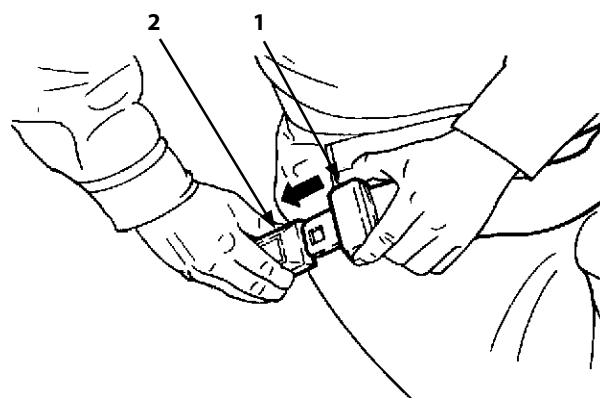
## OPERATOR'S STATION

### SEAT BELT

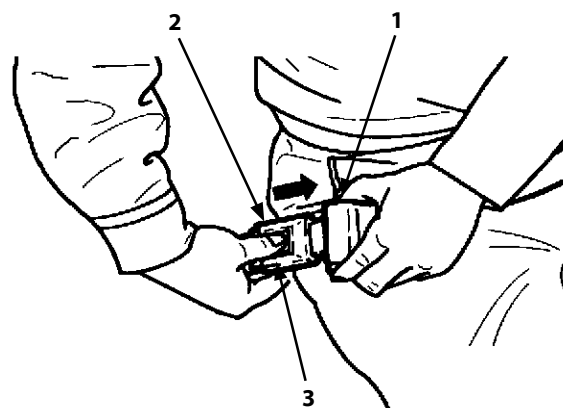
**⚠ CAUTION:** Be sure to use seat belt (1) when operating the machine.  
Before operating the machine, be sure to examine seat belt (1), buckle (2), and attaching hardware. Replace seat belt (1), buckle (2), or attaching hardware if they are damaged, or worn.  
Replace seat belt (1) every three years, regardless of appearance.

#### Seat Belt

1. Confirm that seat belt (1) is not twisted. Securely insert the end of seat belt (1) into buckle (2). Lightly pull on the belt to confirm that buckle (2) latches securely.
2. Push button (3) on buckle (2) to unfasten seat belt (1).



M1U1-01-031



M1U1-01-032

## BREAK-IN

---

### OBSERVE ENGINE OPERATION CLOSELY

**IMPORTANT:** Be extra cautious during the first 50 hours, until you become thoroughly familiar with the sound and feel of your new machine.

1. Operate the machine only in economy (E) mode and limit the engine horsepower up to about 80 % of full load.
2. Avoid excess engine idling.
3. Check indicator lights and gauges frequently during operation.

### EVERY 8 HOURS OR DAILY

1. Perform 8-hour or daily service. (See Maintenance guide -- 8 hours.)
2. Watch for fluid leaks.
3. Lubricate working tool pivots every 8 hours for the first 50 hours, and every 8 hours when working in mud and water.

### AFTER THE FIRST 50 HOURS

1. Perform 50-hour service. (See Maintenance guide -- 50 hours.)
2. Check accessible hardware torque. (See Hardware Torque Specifications in Maintenance chapter.)

### AFTER THE FIRST 100 HOURS

Perform 50-hour and 100-hour service. (See Maintenance Guide -- 50 hours and 100 hours.)



## OPERATING THE ENGINE

---

### INSPECT MACHINE DAILY BEFORE STARTING

#### **ELECTRICAL SYSTEM**

Check for worn or frayed wires and loose connections.

#### **BOOM, BUCKET, SHEET METAL, TRACKS**

Check for bent, broken or missing parts.

#### **HARDWARE**

Check for loose or missing parts.

#### **FUEL SYSTEM**

Drain water and sediments from fuel tank.

#### **HYDRAULIC SYSTEM**

Check for leaks, kinked hoses, and lines or hoses that rub against each other or other parts.

#### **LUBRICATION**

Check lubrication points on the Periodic Service Chart.

#### **PROTECTIVE DEVICES**

Check guards, fenders.


#### **SAFETY**

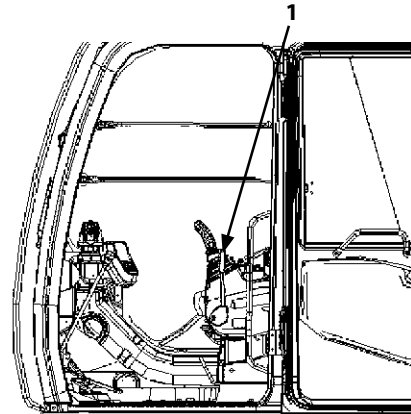
Walk around machine to clear all bystanders/obstacles from machine area.

# OPERATING THE ENGINE

## BEFORE STARTING ENGINE

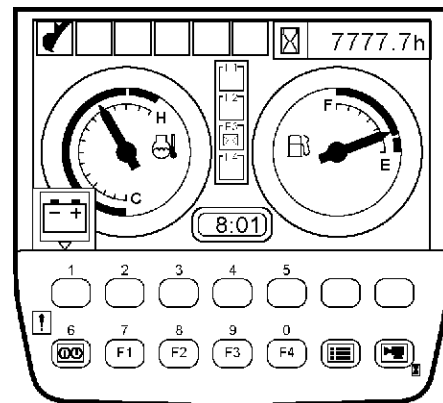
1. Confirm that pilot control shut-off lever (1) is in the LOCK position.
2. Confirm that all control levers are placed in neutral.
3. Adjust the seat to allow full pedal and control levers stroke with operator's back against the backrest. Fasten the seat belt.

 **NOTE:** Use a wet cloth when wiping dust off monitor or switch panels to prevent damaging the panel face. Rubber is used on the switch parts. Take care not to tear the rubber-made parts with sharp-edged tool, such as a screwdriver.



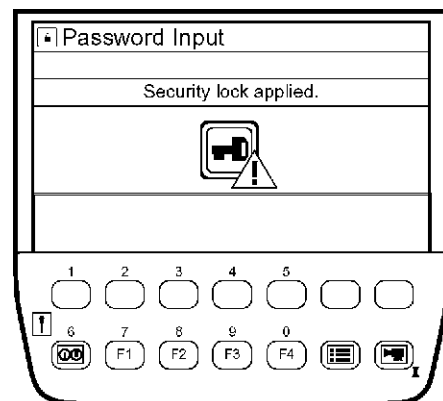
LOCK Position

M1U1-01-025



T1P1-05-02-005

**IMPORTANT:** If the security lock screen is displayed when turn the key switch to ON position, return key switch to OFF. Wait for more than 30 seconds (the buzzer stopped), then try again. If the security lock screen is displayed again, contact your nearest HITACHI dealer.



Security Lock Screen

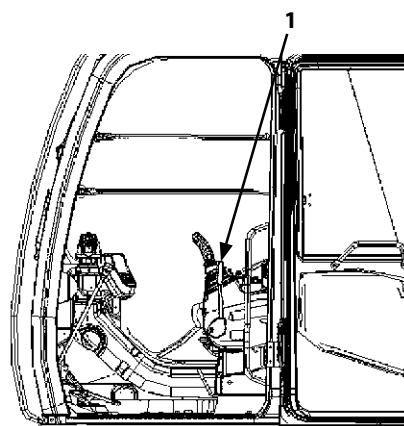
T1V5-05-01-005

## OPERATING THE ENGINE

### STARTING THE ENGINE IN ORDINARY TEMPERATURE

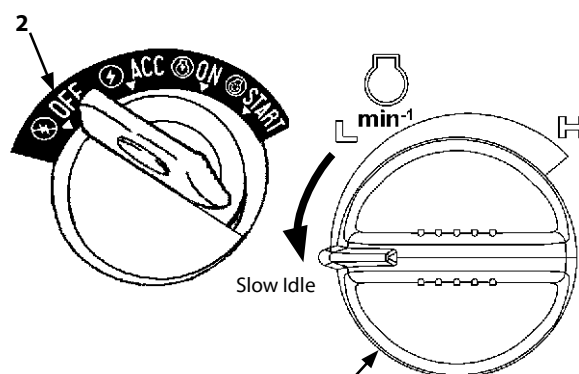
1. Pull pilot control shut-off lever (1) up to the LOCK position.
2. Turn engine control dial (3) to the slow idle position.
3. Sound horn to alert bystanders.
4. Insert key switch (2). Turn it ON position.
5. "Wait-screen (nothing is displayed)" is displayed on the monitor for 2 seconds. Regardless of pilot control shut-off lever (1) position, the engine can not be cranked during this duration.
6. When the password input screen is displayed on the monitor, input the password. Unless the TEN-key function (ignition block system) is activated, this screen is not displayed.

**IMPORTANT:** When required to activate the TEN-key function (ignition block system), consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.



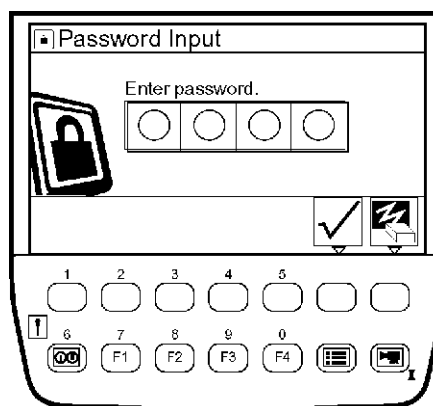
LOCK Position

M1U1-01-025



M178-01-049


M1U1-01-033



Password Input Screen

T1V5-05-01-002

## OPERATING THE ENGINE

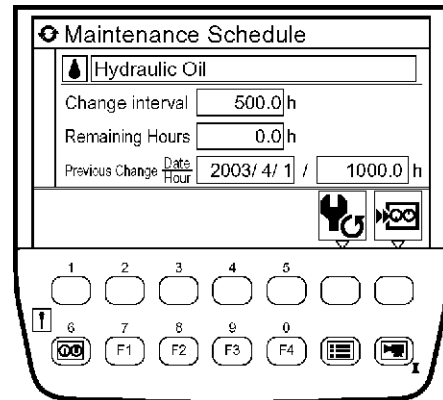
 **NOTE:** When the maintenance information display is ON with the maintenance setting, the scheduled maintenance screen for the item whose change interval has expired displays for three to ten seconds. Then, the basic screen displays.

7. The basic screen will be displayed on the monitor. Check that preheat indicator (4) is OFF at this time.
8. Turn key switch (2) to start the engine.

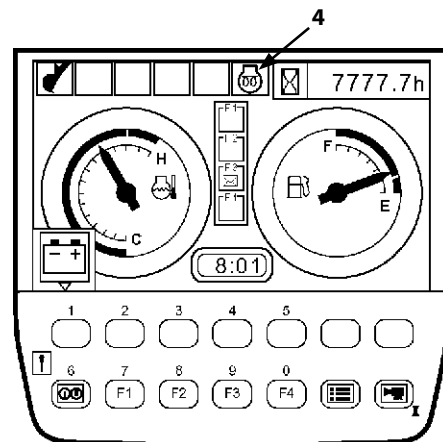
**IMPORTANT: Prevent the starter damage.**

**Never operate the starter motor for more than 10 seconds at a time. If the engine fails to start, return the key switch to OFF. Wait for more than 30 seconds, then try again. After a false start, do not turn the key switch until the engine stops or the starter may be damaged.**

9. Release key switch (2) immediately after the engine has started. It will return to ON position.



T1V5-05-01-170



Basic Screen

M1P1-03-003

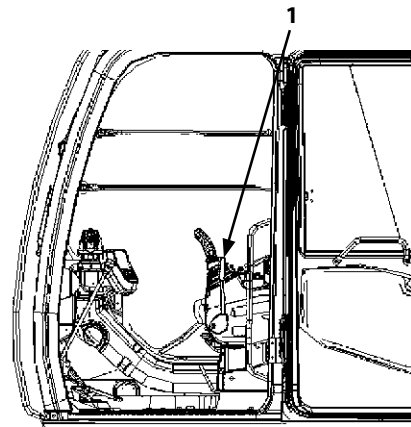
# OPERATING THE ENGINE

## STARTING IN COLD WEATHER

### Preheating

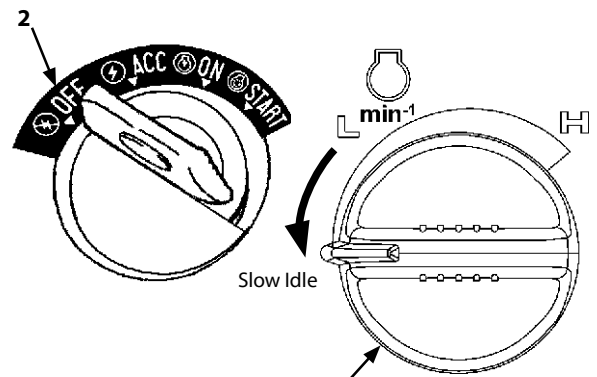
1. Pull pilot control shut-off lever (1) up to the LOCK position.
2. Turn engine control dial (3) to around the middle between the L and H positions.
3. Sound horn to alert bystanders.
4. Insert key switch (2). Turn it ON position.
5. "Wait-screen (nothing is displayed)" is displayed on the monitor for 2 seconds. Regardless of pilot control shut-off lever (1) position, the engine can not be cranked during this duration.
6. When the password input screen is displayed on the monitor, input the password. Unless the TEN-key function (ignition block system) is activated, this screen is not displayed.

**IMPORTANT:** When required to activate the TEN-key function (ignition block system), consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.



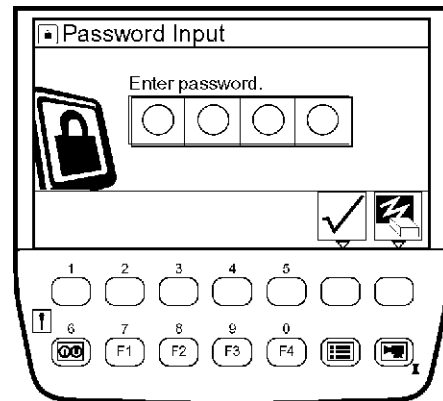
LOCK Position

M1U1-01-025



M178-01-049

M1U1-01-033



Password Input Screen

T1V5-05-01-002



## OPERATING THE ENGINE

**NOTE:** When the maintenance information display is ON with the maintenance setting, the scheduled maintenance screen for the item whose change interval has expired displays for three to ten seconds. Then, the basic screen displays.

- The basic screen will be displayed on the monitor. The machine will automatically check if preheating is required or not. When preheating is required, preheat indicator (4) is lit for automatically.

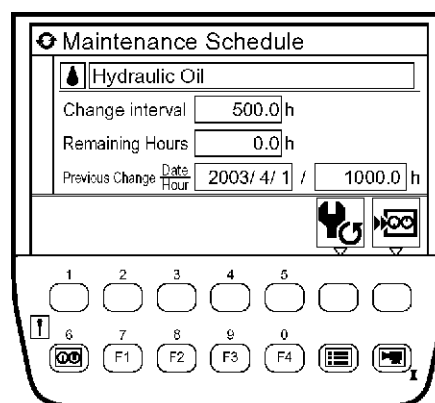
**NOTE:** In case, preheat indicator (4) does not come ON, preheating is not required.

- As soon as preheat indicator (4) goes OFF, turn the key switch to the START position to rotate the starter.

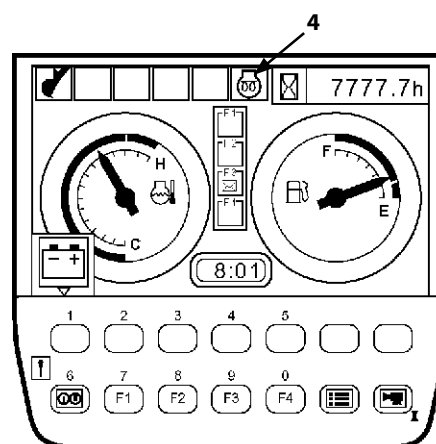
### IMPORTANT: Prevent the starter damage.

Never operate the starter motor for more than 10 seconds at a time. If the engine fails to start, return the key switch to OFF. Wait for more than 30 seconds, then try again. After a false start, do not turn the key switch until the engine stops or the starter may be damaged.

- Release the key switch immediately after the engine has started. It will return to ON position.



T1V5-05-01-170



Basic Screen

M1P1-03-003

## CHECK INSTRUMENTS AFTER STARTING

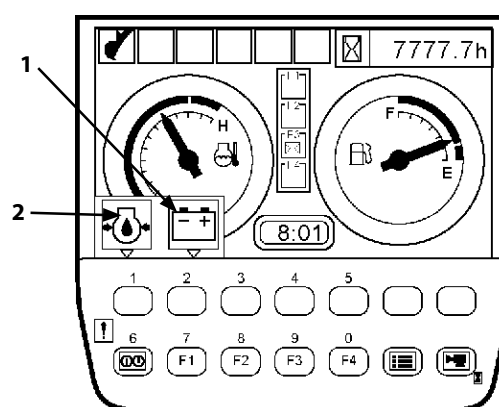
Checking instruments through monitor functions. After starting the engine, check the following points through the monitor functions.

### Check that

- Alternator indicator (1) is off.
- Engine oil pressure indicator (2) is off.
- Engine noise and exhaust gas are normal.

**IMPORTANT: Prevent possible damage to engine. If indicator lights do not go out after starting engine, IMMEDIATELY STOP THE ENGINE and correct the cause.**

**Operate machine at less-than-normal loads and speeds until the engine is at normal operating temperature.**



M1P1-03-004

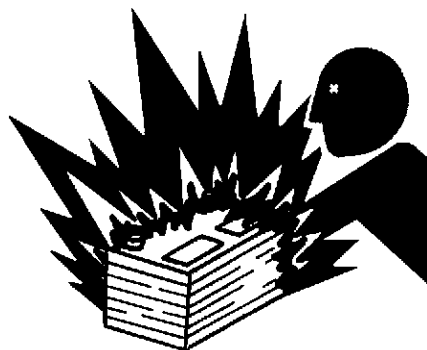
## OPERATING THE ENGINE

### USING BOOSTER BATTERIES



#### WARNING:

- An explosive gas is produced while batteries are in use or being charged. Keep flames or sparks away from the battery area. Charge the batteries in a well ventilated area.  
Do not continue to use or charge the battery when electrolyte level is lower than specified. Explosion of the battery may result.  
Park the machine on a dry, firm or concrete surface, not on steel plates, if the machine is parked on steel plates, dangerous sparks may be unexpectedly created on the machine.  
Never connect a positive terminal to a negative terminal, as a dangerous short circuit will occur.
- The operator must be in the operator's seat so that the machine will be under control when the engine starts. Jump starting is a two-person operation.



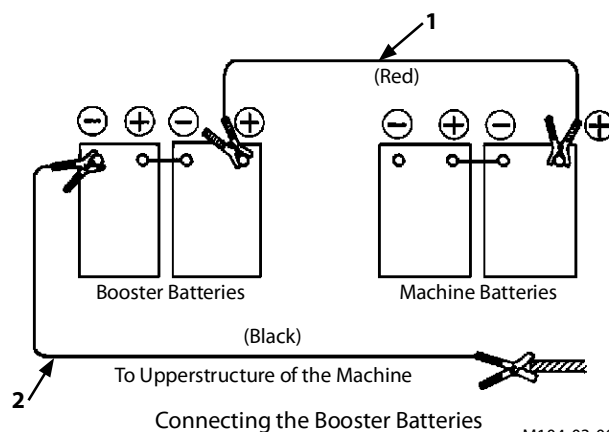
SA-032

**IMPORTANT:** The machine electrical system is a 24 volt negative (-) ground. Use only 24 volt booster batteries.

When the machine batteries are exhausted, start the engine using booster batteries as shown below.

#### Connecting the booster batteries

1. Stop the engine of the machine on which booster batteries are mounted.
2. Connect one end of red cable (1) to the positive (+) terminal of the machine batteries, and the other end to the positive (+) terminal of the booster batteries.
3. Connect one end of black cable (2) to the negative (-) terminal of the booster batteries, and then make ground connection to the frame of the machine to be started with the other end of black (-) cable (2). In the last connection to frame, be sure to connect the cable end as far away from the machine batteries as possible.
4. Start the engine of the machine on which booster batteries are mounted.
5. Start the engine of the troubling machine.
6. After the engine starts, disconnect cables (2) and (1), following the procedure below.

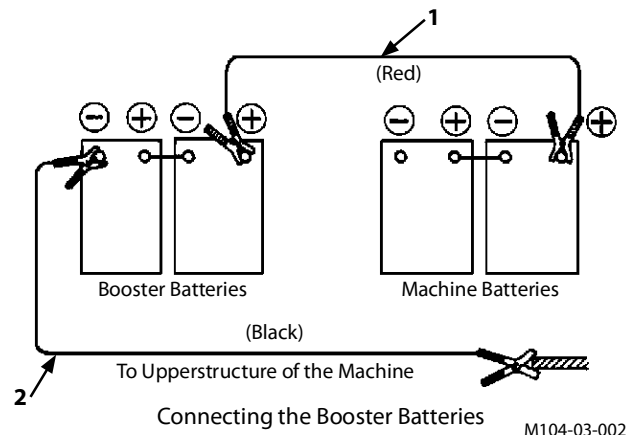


M104-03-002

## OPERATING THE ENGINE

### Disconnecting the booster batteries

1. Disconnect black negative (-) cable (2) from the machine frame first.
2. Disconnect the other end of black negative (-) cable (2) from the booster batteries.
3. Disconnect red positive (+) cable (1) from the booster batteries.
4. Disconnect red positive (+) cable (1) from the machine batteries.



## OPERATING THE ENGINE

### STOPPING THE ENGINE

#### Engine stop procedure


1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn engine control dial (1) to the slow idle position and run the engine for 5 minutes to cool the engine.


**IMPORTANT: Turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.**

4. Turn key switch (2) OFF. Remove the key from the key switch.
5. Pull pilot control shut-off lever (3) to the LOCK position.

#### If the engine does not stop with key switch (2) turned in the OFF position

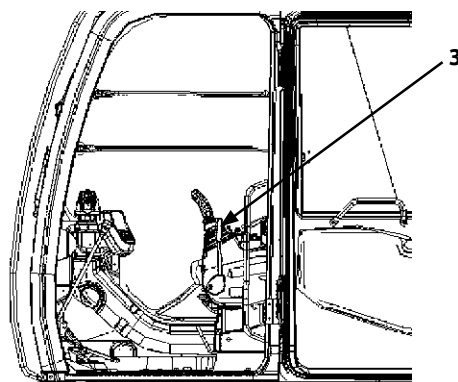
In case the engine does not stop even if key switch (2) is turned OFF due to failure of the machine, pull engine stop knob (4) located at the front-left side of the seat stand to stop the engine.

 **NOTE:** If knob (4) is pulled halfway, the engine may not start or may stall during operation. Be sure to push knob (4) to the fully retracted position before restarting the engine.

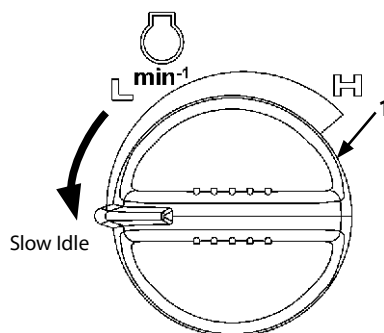
 **CAUTION:** Do not use engine stop knob (4), except when unavoidable. Moreover, Do not operate the machine until repair is completed when stopping the engine with the failure of the machine.



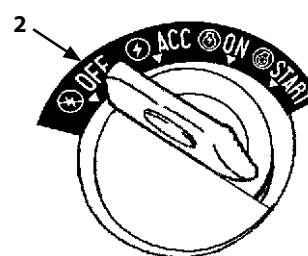
SA-390



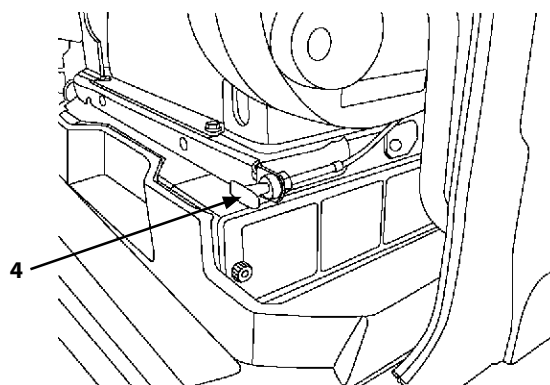
M1U1-01-025



M1U1-01-033



M178-01-049



M1P1-07-027

## OPERATING THE ENGINE

---

MEMO

Lined area for taking notes, consisting of multiple horizontal dotted lines.

## DRIVING THE MACHINE

---


### DRIVE THE MACHINE CAREFULLY

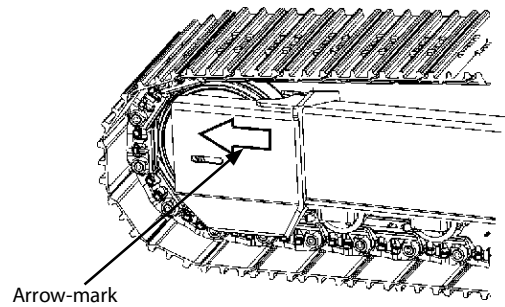
**IMPORTANT:** During freezing weather, park machine on a hard surface to prevent tracks from freezing to the ground. Clean debris from tracks and track frame.

**If tracks are frozen to the ground, raise tracks using boom, move machine carefully to prevent damage to drive train and tracks.**

Select a route that is as flat as possible. Steer machine as straight as possible making small, gradual changes in direction.

When driving over rough terrain, reduce the engine speed to lessen possibility of undercarriage damage.

 **NOTE:** An arrow-mark seal is stuck on the inside surface of the side frame to indicate the machine front direction.



M178-03-001

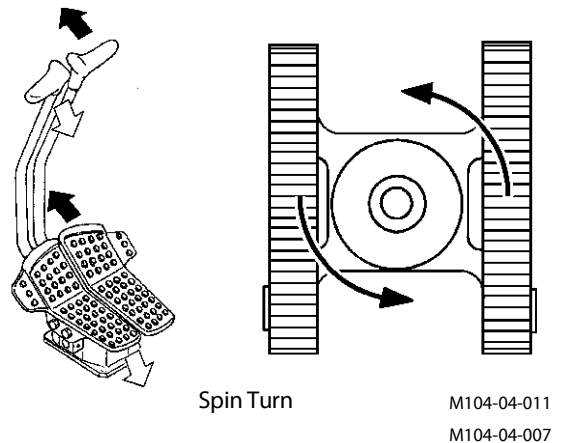
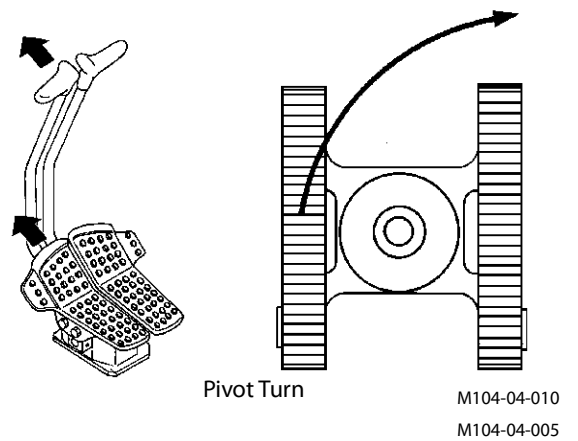
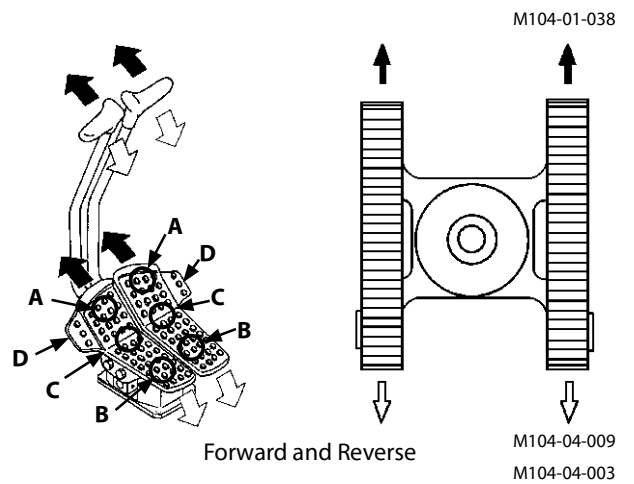
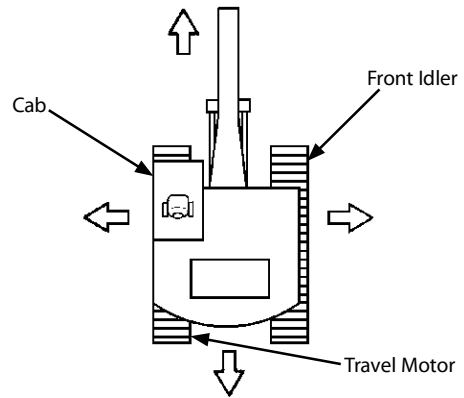
# DRIVING THE MACHINE

## STEERING THE MACHINE USING PEDALS

**WARNING:** In the standard travel position, the front idlers are positioned at the front of the machine and the travel motors at the rear. If the travel motors are positioned at the front of the machine, the control actions of the travel pedals will be reversed. Be sure to confirm the position of the travel motors before traveling.

- FORWARD TRAVEL  
Push down on front (A) of both pedals.
- REVERSE TRAVEL  
Push down on rear (B) of both pedals.
- NEUTRAL POSITION (C)  
When the travel pedals are placed in neutral, travel brakes automatically will stop and/or hold the machine.
- RIGHT TURN  
Push down on front of left pedal.
- LEFT TURN  
Push down on front of right pedal.
- SHORT TURN (Spin turn)  
Push down the front of one pedal and the rear of the other.

**NOTE:** For long-term traveling, push down on pedal tabs (D) and rest feet on the footrests.



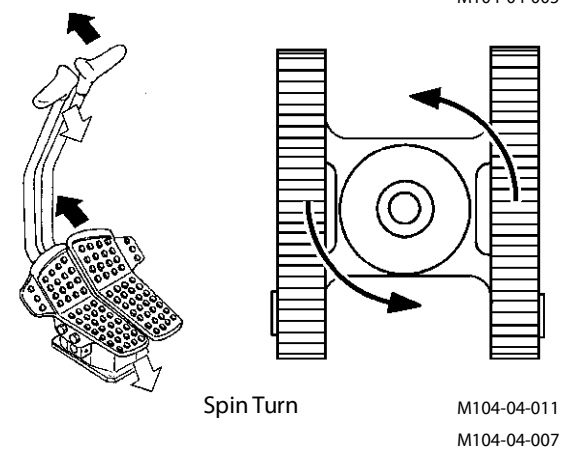
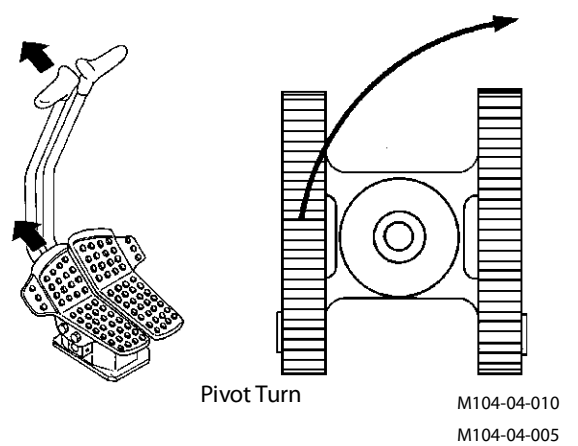
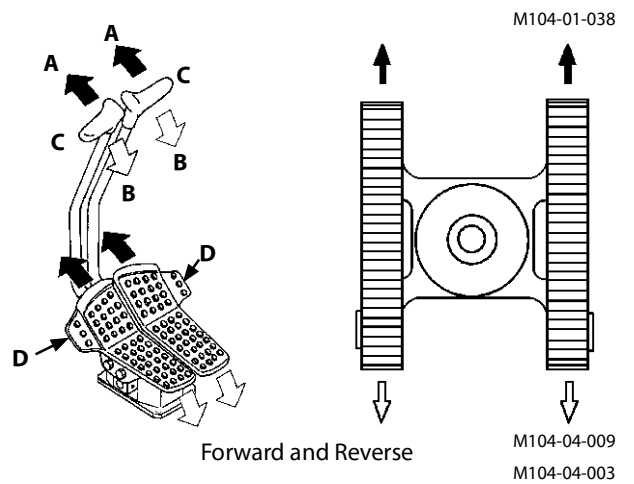
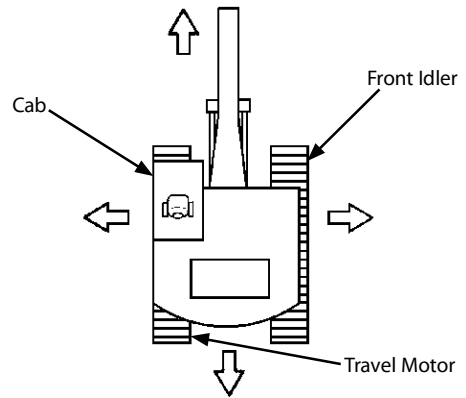
# DRIVING THE MACHINE

## STEERING THE MACHINE USING LEVERS

**WARNING:** In the standard travel position, the front idlers are positioned at the front of the machine and the travel motors at the rear. If the travel motors are positioned at the front of the machine, the control actions of the travel levers will be reversed. Be sure to confirm the position of the travel motors before traveling.

- FORWARD TRAVEL  
Push both levers forward (A).
- REVERSE TRAVEL  
Pull both levers rearward (B).
- NEUTRAL POSITION (C)  
When the travel levers are placed in neutral, travel brakes automatically will stop and/or hold the machine.
- RIGHT TURN  
Push left lever forward.
- LEFT TURN  
Push right lever forward.
- SHORT TURN (Spin turn)  
Push one lever forward and pull the other rearward.

**NOTE:** For long-term traveling, push down on pedal tabs (D) and rest feet on the footrests.








## DRIVING THE MACHINE

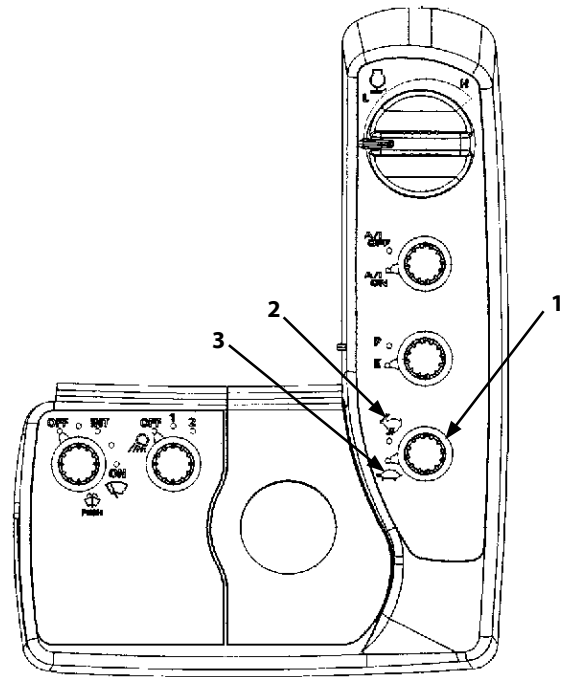
### TRAVEL MODE SWITCH

**⚠ WARNING:** Tipping-over accidents can cause serious personal injury. Do not change travel mode switch (1) while traveling; especially, changing to fast mode (2) when descending slopes will create a very dangerous situation. Always stop the machine before changing the travel speed mode.

Turn travel mode switch (1) on the switch panel to the specified position to select the travel mode (Fast/Slow).

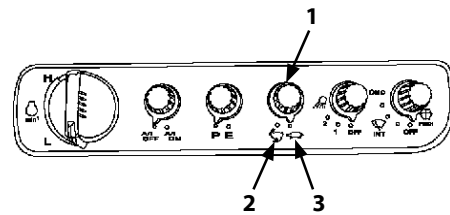
- Fast Mode: Turn travel mode switch (1) to  mark (2) position.
- Slow Mode: Turn travel mode switch (1) to  mark (3) position.

-  Mark (Fast Speed Mode)
-  Mark (Slow Speed Mode)



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-01-020



ZX85USB-3

M1P1-07-020

## DRIVING THE MACHINE

### TRAVEL ALARM (Optional)

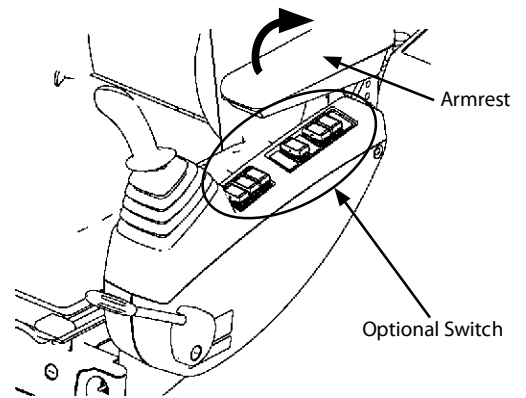
During travel operation, the travel alarm sounds the buzzer to warn the people near the machine that the machine is traveling.

#### Deactivating Travel Alarm

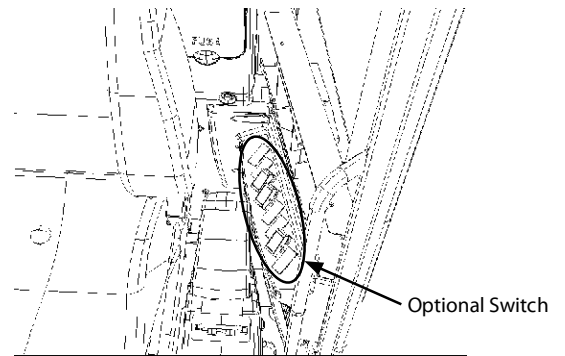
More than 12 seconds after starting to travel the machine, raise the armrest and push travel alarm deactivation switch (4) to stop the travel alarm. (Within 12 seconds, travel alarm deactivation switch (4) is inoperable.)

Once the machine stops traveling and when restarting to travel, the travel alarm will sound again. If desired to stop the alarm, operate deactivation switch (4) once more.

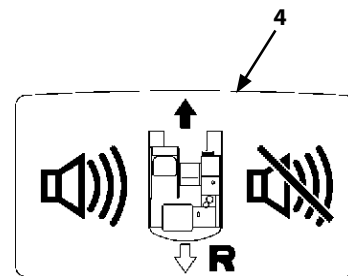
**NOTE:** *The optional switch locations differ depending on what kinds of optional devices are equipped. Before using the switches, make sure what kinds of optional devices are equipped.*



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3 T1V1-05-02-004



ZX85USB-3 M1P1-01-031



M1U1-01-035

## DRIVING THE MACHINE

### OPERATING ON SOFT GROUND

- Avoid traveling on very soft ground that does not have sufficient strength to firmly support the machine.
- If the machine is operated on very soft ground or becomes stuck, it may be necessary to clean the track frame area.
- Swing the upperstructure 90 ° and lower the bucket to raise one track off the ground. Make sure to keep the angle between the boom and arm 90 to 110 ° and position the bucket's round side on the ground.
- Rotate the raised track back and forth to remove mud and dirt.
- After lowering the track to the ground, select slow travel speed. Carefully move the machine to firm ground.
- Utilize the boom and arm functions to pull the machine toward firm ground.
- Tow the machine if the machine becomes stuck but only if the engine is still operating. Be sure to attach a tow line correctly. (Refer to the "TOWING MACHINE A SHORT DISTANCE" section on the next page.)



M104-05-012

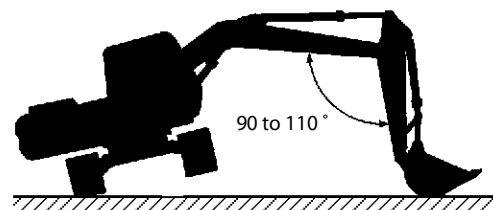
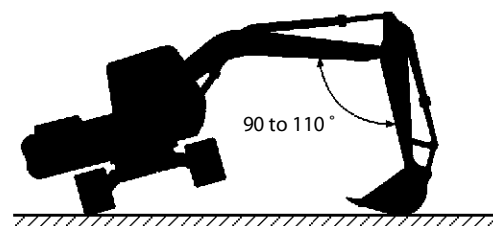
### RAISE ONE TRACK USING BOOM AND ARM

**WARNING:** Keep the angle between boom and arm 90 to 110 ° and position the bucket's round side on the ground.

Swing the upperstructure 90 ° and lower the bucket to raise track off ground. Do not dig bucket teeth into the ground when using the hoe bucket reversed.

Place blocks under machine frame to support the machine.

**IMPORTANT:** When the machine is modified as a face shovel by installing the hoe bucket in reverse, avoid raising the machine above the ground using the front attachment with the bucket cylinder fully extended. Excessive loads will be applied to the pins around the bucket and the bucket cylinder, resulting in breakage of the pins.



M104-05-013



SA-817

## DRIVING THE MACHINE

### TOWING MACHINE A SHORT DISTANCE

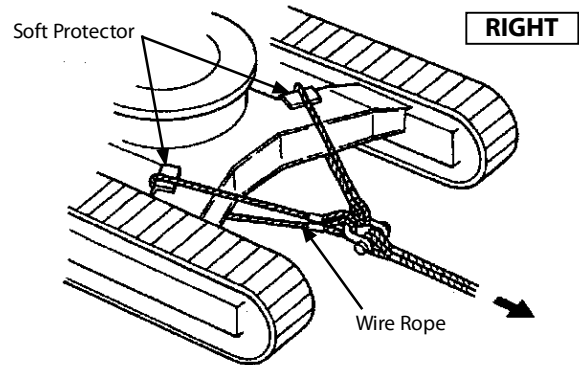
**CAUTION:** Cables, straps, or ropes can break causing serious injury. Do not tow machine with damaged chains, frayed cables, slings, straps, or wire ropes. Always wear gloves when handling cable, straps or wire ropes.

When your machine becomes stuck but the engine is still operational, attach wire ropes to the machine as illustrated at right, and slowly tow your machine to firm ground using another machine.

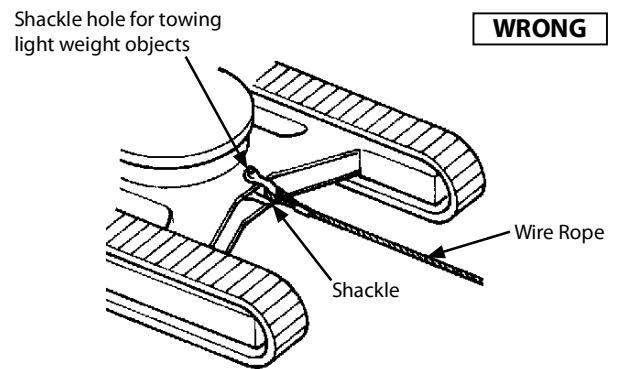
Be sure to attach the wire ropes around the track frames of both machines as illustrated.

To prevent the wire ropes from being damaged, place some protective material between the track frame and the wire ropes.

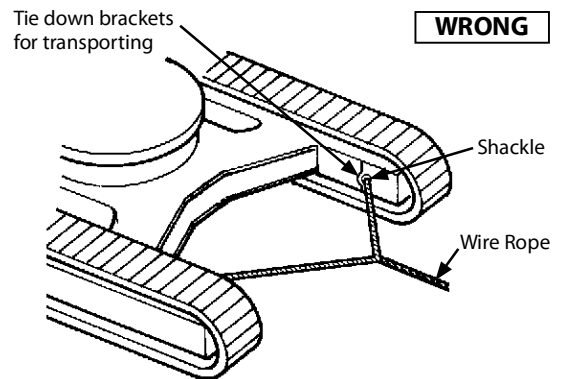
**IMPORTANT:** Do not use the shackle holes on the track frame for towing the machine. A center shackle hole on the track frame is provided to pull only lightweight objects. The shackle holes on the bottom of the track frame are used to secure the machine for transportation. Refer to the instructions on page 5-28 for using the center shackle hole appropriately.



M104-05-010



M104-05-011



M1P1-04-001

## DRIVING THE MACHINE

### OPERATING IN WATER OR MUD

The machine can be operated in water up to the upper edge of the upper rollers only if work site footing has sufficient strength to prevent the machine from sinking past the upper edge of the upper roller, and only if the water is flowing slowly.

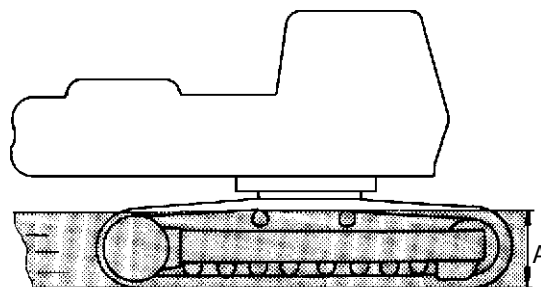
When operating in such conditions, check the machine's position often. Reposition the machine if necessary.

Avoid submerging the swing bearing, swing gears and center joint.

If the swing bearing, swing gears and center joint are submerged, remove the drain plug to drain mud and water. Clean swing area. Install plug. Lubricate swing internal gear and swing bearing.

Swing Internal Gear Capacity: 4.4 L (1.2 US gal)

Lubricate swing bearing. (See Maintenance Guide, 500 hours)



M104-05-009

Model	A mm (in)
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3, 85USB-3	560 mm (22 in)

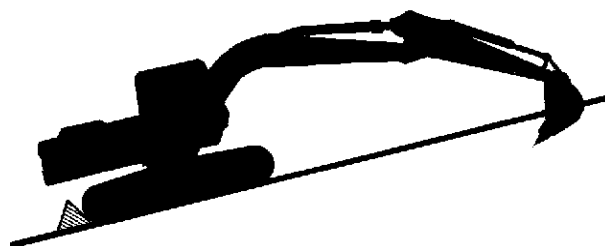
## DRIVING THE MACHINE

### PARKING THE MACHINE ON SLOPES

**WARNING:** Avoid parking machine on slopes. The machine may tip over, possibly resulting in personal injury.

If parking the machine on a slope is unavoidable:

- Thrust the bucket teeth into the ground.
- Return the control levers to neutral and pull pilot control shut-off lever (2) to the LOCK position.
- Block both tracks.



M104-05-014

### PARKING THE MACHINE

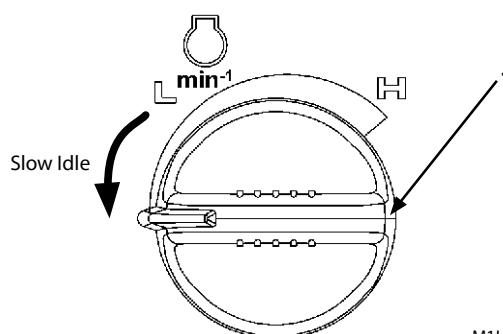
1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.

**IMPORTANT:** Turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

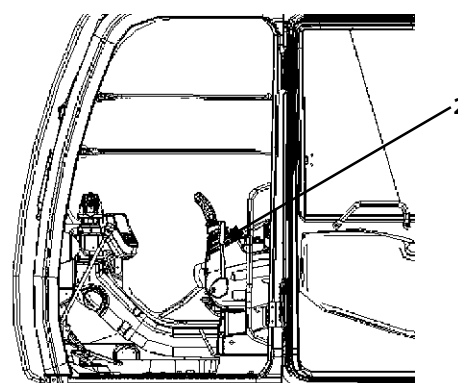
4. Turn engine control dial (1) counterclockwise to the stop (the slow idle position). Run the engine approximately 5 minutes to cool the engine.
5. Turn the key switch to OFF. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Pull pilot control shut-off lever (2) to the LOCK position.

**IMPORTANT:** Protect cab electrical components from bad weather. Always close windows, roof vent and cab door when parking the machine.

7. Close windows, roof vent, and cab door.
8. Lock all access doors and compartments.

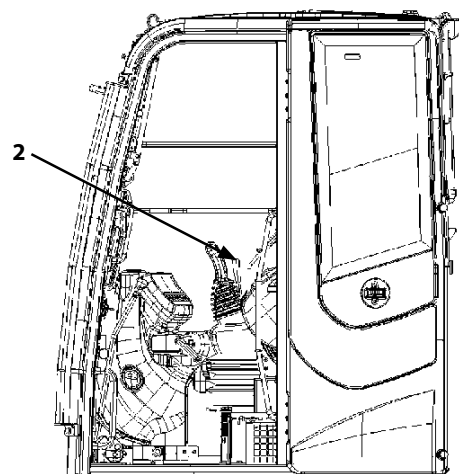


M1U1-01-033



Lock Position  
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1U1-01-025



LOCK Position  
ZX85USB-3

M1P1-01-035

## DRIVING THE MACHINE

---

**MEMO**

A series of horizontal dotted lines for writing a memo.

## OPERATING THE MACHINE

### CONTROL LEVER (ISO PATTERN)

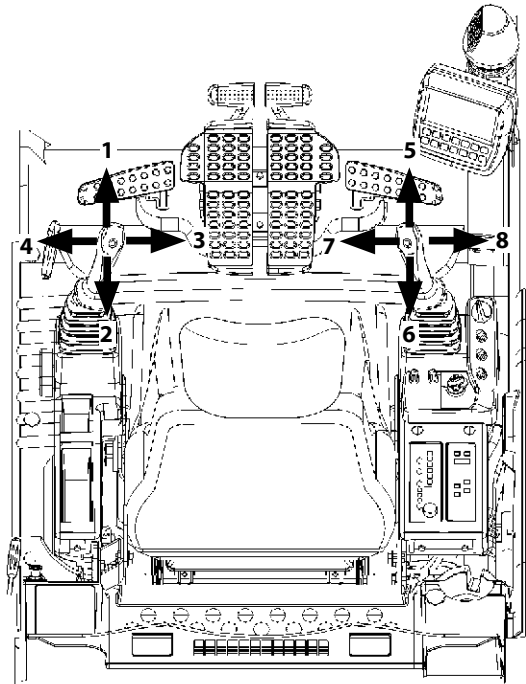
- ⚠ WARNING:** Never place any part of body beyond window frame. It could be crushed by the boom if boom control lever is accidentally bumped or otherwise engaged. If window is missing or broken, replace immediately.
- Prevent possible injury from unexpected machine movement.
- Make sure you know the location and function of each control before operating.

The machine is equipped with a label showing the control patterns of the levers and pedals.

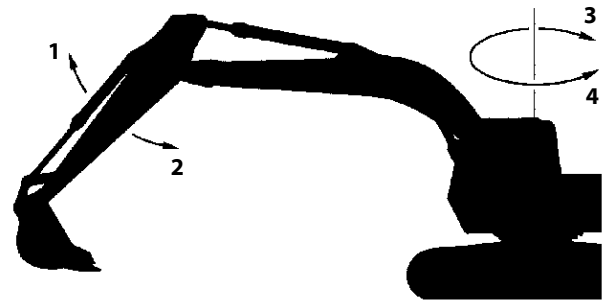
- IMPORTANT:** When digging, avoid hitting tracks with boom cylinders.
- When digging over the end of the tracks, travel motors should be at the rear to maximize machine stability and lift capacity.

When a lever is released, it will automatically return to neutral, and that machine function will stop.

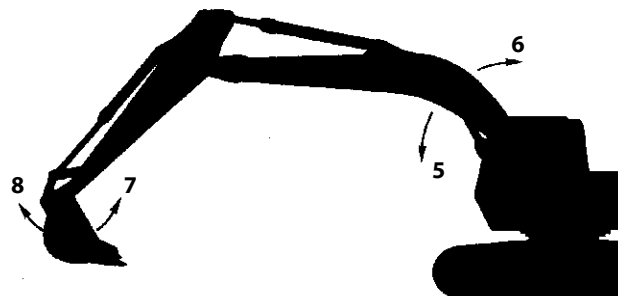
- 1- Arm Roll-Out
- 2- Arm Roll-In
- 3- Swing Right
- 4- Swing Left
- 5- Boom Lower
- 6- Boom Raise
- 7- Bucket Roll-In
- 8- Bucket Roll-Out



M1J1-01-022



M104-05-001



M104-05-002



## OPERATING THE MACHINE

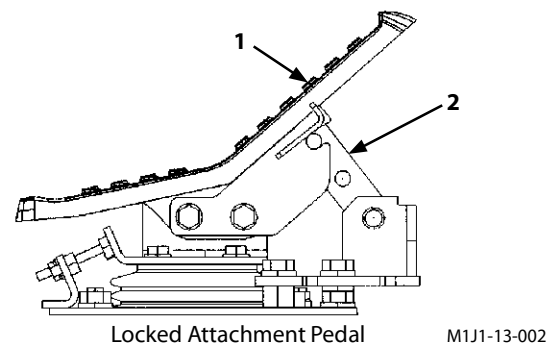
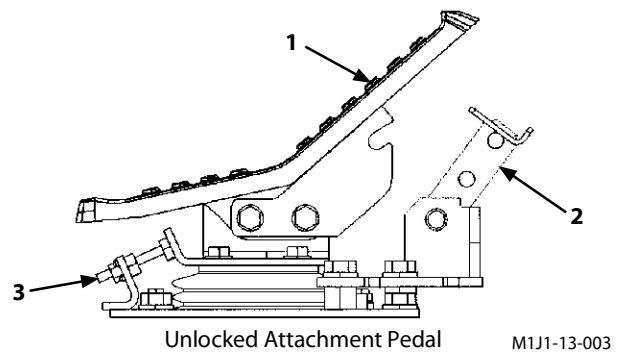
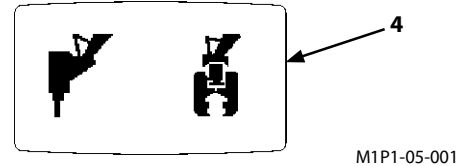
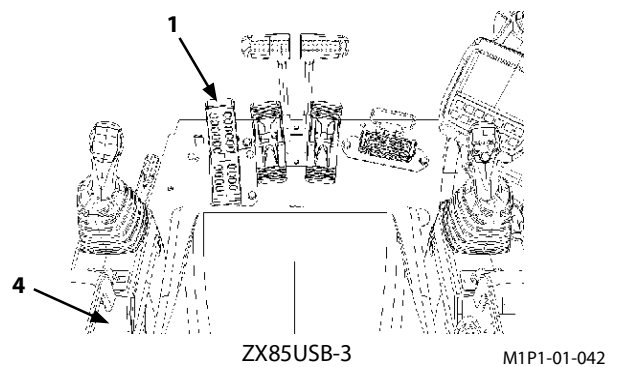
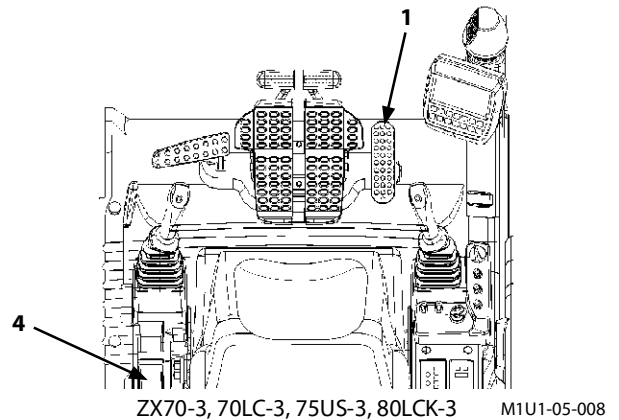
### ATTACHMENT PEDAL (HYDRAULIC BREAKER)

The breaker can be operated using attachment pedal (1) located on the right front of the seat, as illustrated.

**CAUTION:** Be sure to lock attachment pedal (1) with pedal lock (2) when attachment pedal (1) is not in use.

1. Press the breaker side of attachment select switch (4).
2. Move pedal lock (2) forward to unlock attachment pedal (1).
3. Push down on attachment pedal (1) to operate the breaker.  
Loosen stopper bolt (3) until stopper bolt (3) comes in contact with the bracket in attachment pedal (1) neutral to prevent attachment pedal (1) from being stepped backward.
4. Remove foot from attachment pedal (1) to stop the breaker.
5. Always keep attachment pedal (1) locked with pedal lock (2) when attachment pedal (1) is not in use.

**IMPORTANT:** When operating a hydraulic breaker, do not step on attachment pedal (1) rearward. Damage to the hydraulic breaker may result.



## OPERATING THE MACHINE

### ATTACHMENT PEDAL (HYDRAULIC CRUSHER)

Machine stability, applicable hydraulic oil pressure and oil quantity for crusher, etc. must be examined when selecting a crusher.

Be sure to consult your authorized dealer when selecting a crusher.

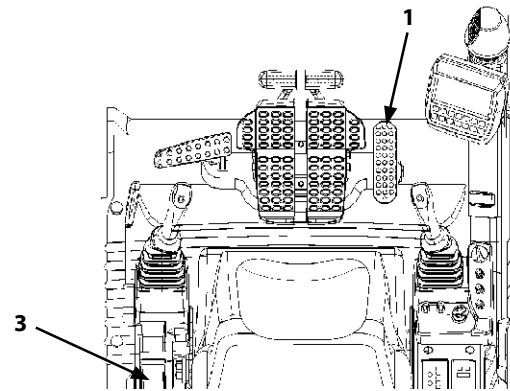
For operational instructions, refer to the crusher instruction manual.

#### Operation

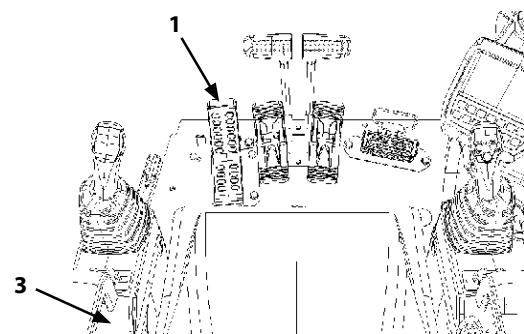
The crusher can be operated using attachment pedal (1) located on the right front of the seat, as illustrated.

**CAUTION:** Be sure to lock attachment pedal (1) with pedal lock (2) when attachment pedal (1) is not in use.

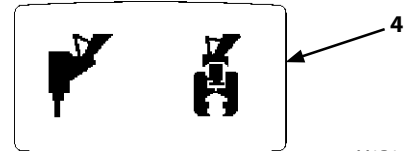
1. Press the crusher side of attachment select switch (3).
2. Move pedal lock (2) forward to unlock attachment pedal (1).
3. Push down on attachment pedal (1) either forward or backward to open or close the crusher.
4. Remove foot from attachment pedal (1) to stop the crusher.
5. Always keep attachment pedal (1) locked with pedal lock (2) when attachment pedal (1) is not in use.



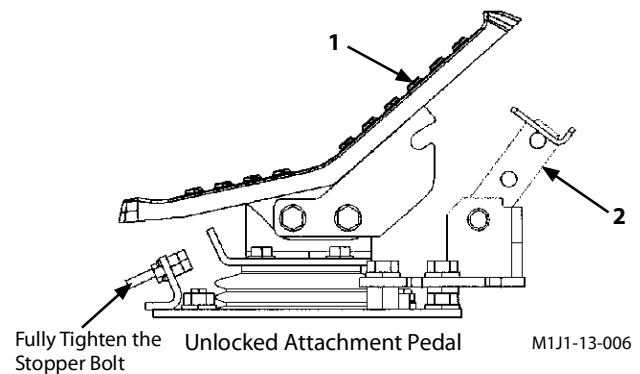
M1U1-05-008



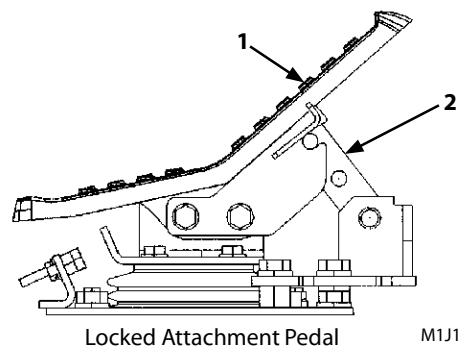
M1P1-01-042



M1P1-05-001



M1J1-13-006



M1J1-13-009

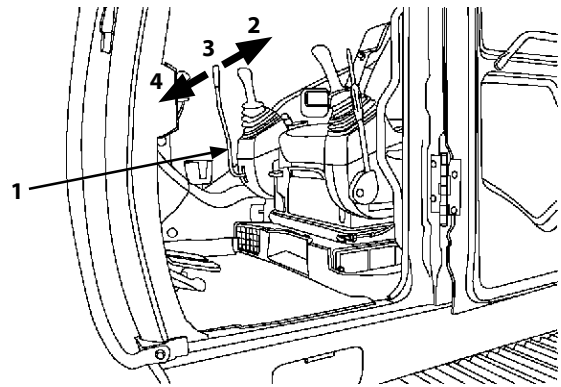
## OPERATING THE MACHINE

### BLADE LEVER

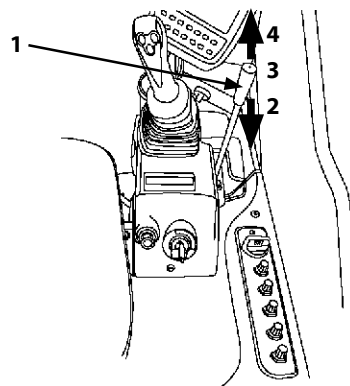
Use blade lever (1) on the operator's right to raise and lower the blade.

When the lever is released, it automatically returns to neutral, keeping the blade in its position until the lever is operated again.

- 1- Blade Lever
- 2- Blade Raise
- 3- Neutral
- 4- Blade Lower



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3 M1P1-13-001



ZX85USB-3

M1P1-07-019

### PRECAUTIONS FOR BLADE OPERATION

This blade is designed as a light service attachment for the hydraulic excavator. Please keep the following points in mind:

1. This blade is designed to be used for dozing work only. Do not attempt to dig deeply with the blade. Doing so will damage not only the blade but the undercarriage as well.
2. Do not apply intensive or uneven loads. Never apply high-speed impact to the blade by running the machine into a load.
3. Jacking up the machine with this blade, the surface beneath the blade comes under high pressure, increasing the risk of surface collapse. Always be sure that the surface is strong enough to support the weight of the machine during operation. Avoid dangerously uneven distribution of weight on the blade by maintaining even contact between the blade and the ground.
4. Never use this blade as an outrigger.
5. Avoid contact between the bucket and the blade while digging.



M1CC-07-016

# OPERATING THE MACHINE

## PILOT CONTROL SHUT-OFF LEVER

Pilot control shut-off lever (1) functions to prevent misoperation of the machine from occurring if the control levers are accidentally moved when leaving the operator's seat or when entering the cab.

### WARNING:

- Always pull pilot control shut-off lever (1) into the full LOCK position. The pilot control shut-off function will not be activated otherwise.
- When leaving the machine:
  - Stop the engine.
  - Then, pull pilot control shut-off lever (1) up to the LOCK position.
- Always check to be sure that pilot control shut-off lever (1) is pulled up to the LOCK position before:
  - Transporting the machine.
  - Leaving the machine at the end of the shift.

### Pilot Control Shut-Off Lever Operation

Before Leaving the Machine:

1. Park the machine on a firm, level surface. Lower the bucket to the ground. Return all control levers to neutral. Properly shut down the engine.
2. Pull pilot control shut-off lever (1) up into the full LOCK position.


Before Starting Operation:

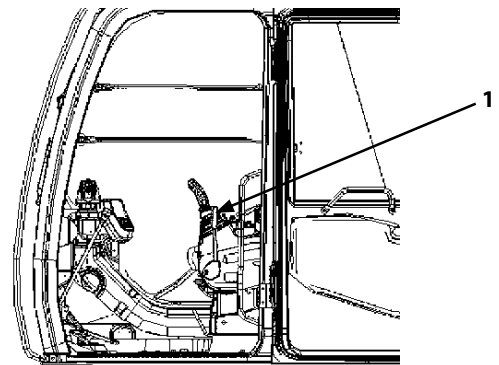
1. Confirm that pilot control shut-off lever (1) is pulled up to the LOCK position.

After starting the engine:

1. Confirm that all control levers and pedals are in neutral and that no part of the machine is in motion.
2. Lower pilot control shut-off lever (1) to the UNLOCK position.

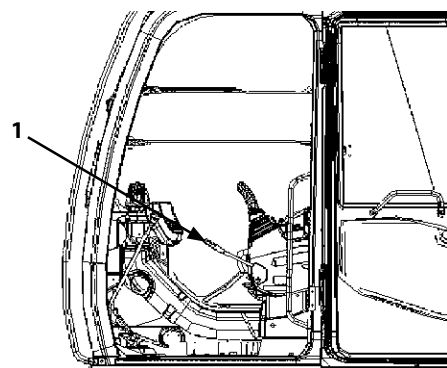
If any part of the machine (any actuator) moves when pilot control shut-off lever (1) is lowered to the UNLOCK position despite the fact that all controls are placed in neutral, the machine is malfunctioning. Immediately pull pilot control shut-off lever (1) back to the LOCK position, and stop the engine. Then, see your authorized dealer.

 NOTE: When pilot control shut-off lever (1) is in the LOCK position, it decrease the engine speed by  $200 \text{ min}^{-1}$  from the slow idle speed.



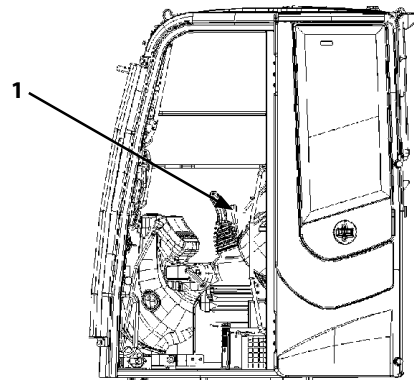
LOCK Position  
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1U1-01-025



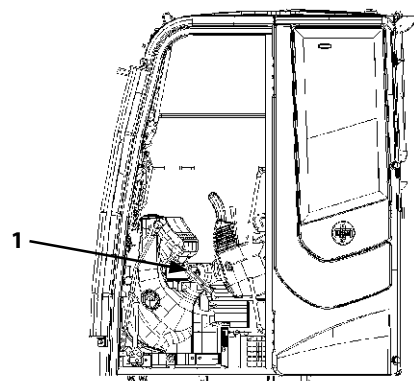
UNLOCK Position  
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1U1-01-024



LOCK Position  
ZX85USB-3

M1P1-01-035



UNLOCK Position  
ZX85USB-3

M1P1-01-036


# OPERATING THE MACHINE

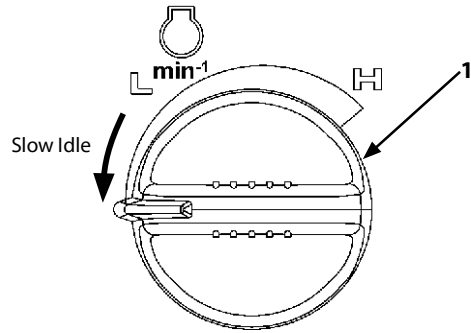
## WARMING-UP OPERATION

In cold weather, warm up the machine until coolant and hydraulic oil temperature increases to the appropriate operating temperature.

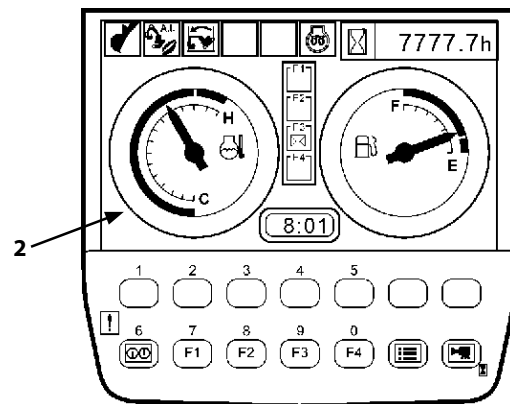
**IMPORTANT: The appropriate hydraulic oil operating temperature on this machine is 50 to 80 °C. Hydraulic components may be seriously damaged if the machine is operated with low temperature hydraulic oil. In case warming up the machine by relieving the hydraulic system continuously relieve the relief valve for 10 to 15 seconds while taking a pause for 5 to 10 seconds.**

1. Run the engine with engine control dial (1) turned to the slow idle position.  
Do not operate the machine until the needle of coolant temperature gauge (2) starts swinging.
2. After the needle of coolant temperature gauge (2) starts swinging, turn engine control dial (1) to approx. medium position.
3. Operate the boom, arm and bucket cylinders slowly to each stroke end several times.
4. Operate the travel and swing functions slowly to allow hydraulic oil to circulate through the systems.
5. Warming up operation ends after the above operation is completed.

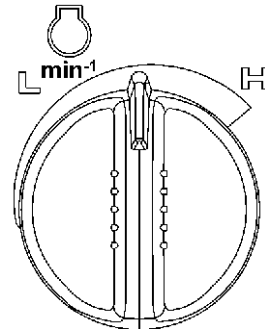
 **NOTE:** During cold weather season, the warm-up operation system automatically operates so that the engine speed increases for a moment even though engine control dial (1) is in the slow idle position.



M1U1-01-033



M1P1-01-026



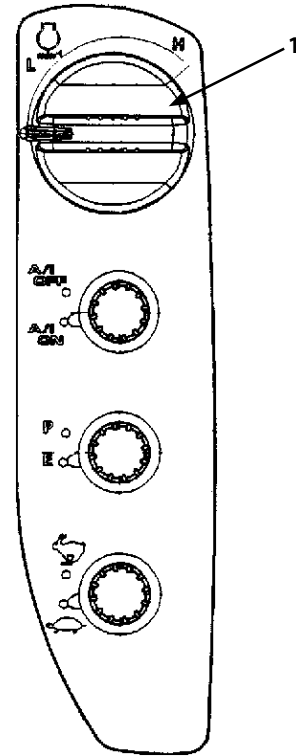
M1U1-03-006

## OPERATING THE MACHINE

### ENGINE SPEED CONTROL

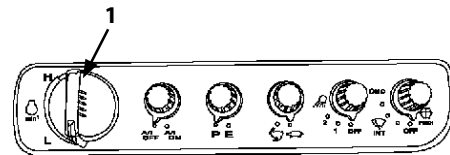
Increase and decrease the engine speed using engine control dial (1) located on the right console, as illustrated.

- Turn engine control dial (1) clockwise to increase the engine speed. Turn engine control dial (1) counterclockwise to decrease the engine speed.
- Note that the auto-idle function will be deactivated if engine control dial (1) is operated while the engine is running at the auto-idle setting.
- Before stopping the engine, always turn engine control dial (1) counterclockwise to the stop (to the slow idle setting). Run the engine five minutes to cool the engine. Then, turn key switch to OFF position to stop the engine.



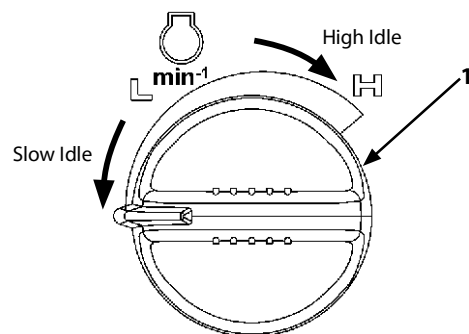
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-01-019



ZX85USB-3

M1P1-07-020



M1U1-01-033

# OPERATING THE MACHINE

## AUTO-IDLE

With auto-idle switch (3) turned to the A/I ON position, approximately 4 seconds after all control levers are returned to neutral, the engine speed decreases to the auto-idle setting to save fuel consumption. The engine speed will immediately increase to the speed set by engine control dial (2) when any control lever is operated.

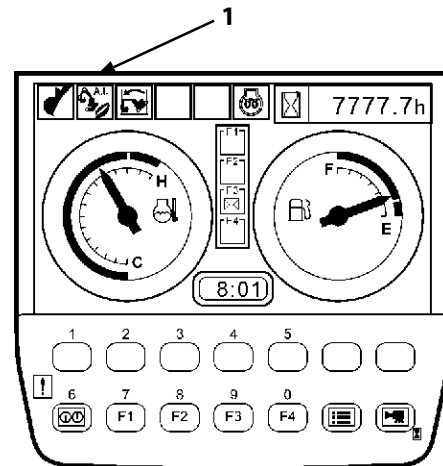
- IMPORTANT:**
- Always check if auto-idle indicator (1) is turned on or off before starting operation. If the indicator is on, the auto-idle function will be activated.
  - Always be aware of engine control dial (2) setting when auto-idle switch (3) turned to the A/I ON position. If the engine speed is set high with engine control dial (2), and if the operator is not aware of the high engine speed setting, the engine speed will unexpectedly increase when any control lever is operated, causing unexpected machine movement, thus possibly resulting in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Prevent the machine from unexpected movement. Be sure to turn off auto-idle switch (3) when unexpected machine movement is undesirable, especially when loading/unloading the machine for transportation.

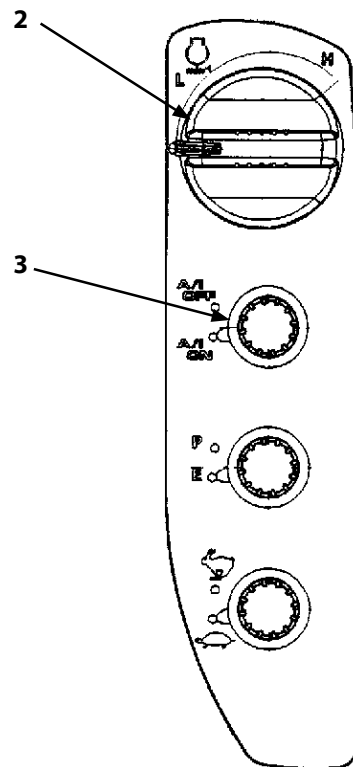
Note that auto-idle function can be turned on or off only when the key switch is in ON position. Always check if the auto-idle function is turned on or off with auto-idle indicator (1).

Auto-Idle Function ON :            Auto-Idle Indicator (1) ON  
 Auto-Idle Function OFF :        Auto-Idle Indicator (1) OFF

- When auto-idle switch (3) is turned OFF with auto-idle indicator (1) ON, indicator (1) will go OFF and the auto-idle system is deactivated.
- Even if the engine is stopped by turning the key switch with auto-idle switch (3) in the A/I ON position [indicator (1) ON], the auto-idle system is not deactivated. When the engine is restarted, the auto-idle system remains activated, allowing auto-idle indicator (1) to flash for 5 seconds and stay ON later.

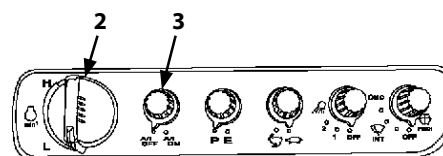


M1P1-01-026



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-01-019



ZX85USB-3

M1P1-07-020

## OPERATING THE MACHINE

### POWER MODE

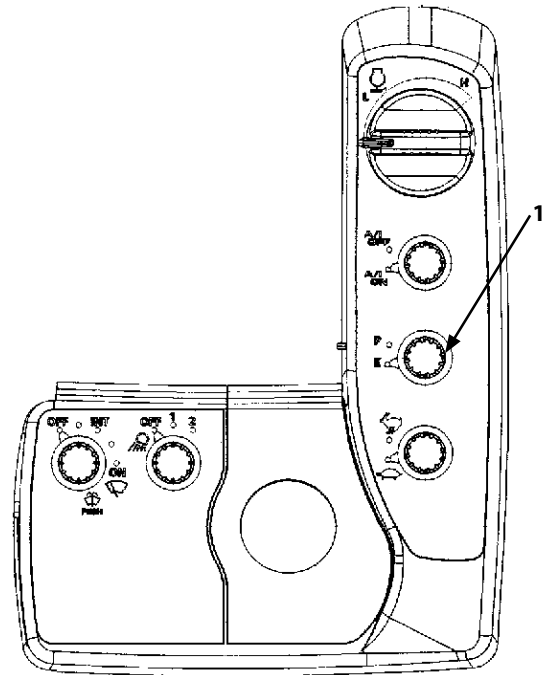
One of two engine speed modes, E or P mode, can be selected using power mode switch (1).

- E (Economy) Mode

Even if the engine speed is reduced in the E mode, digging force remains unchanged from that in the P mode. Although production is reduced slightly more than in the P mode, the fuel consumption and noise levels are reduced, allowing the machine to operate most efficiently.

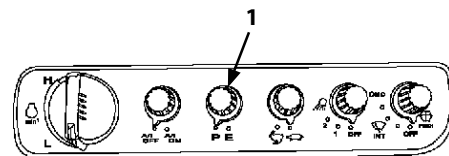
- P (Power) Mode

Operate the machine in this mode when performing normal work.



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-01-020



ZX85USB-3

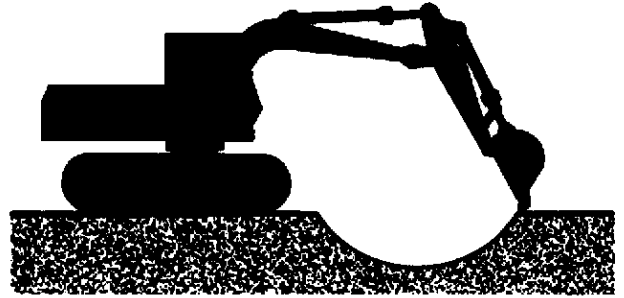
M1P1-07-020



## OPERATING THE MACHINE

### OPERATING BACKHOE

1. Place the bucket teeth on the ground with the bottom of the bucket at a 45 degree angle to the ground.
2. Pull the bucket toward the machine using the arm as the main digging force.
3. When soil sticks to the bucket, remove it by moving the arm and/or bucket rapidly back and forth.
4. When trenching a straight line, position the tracks parallel to the trench. After digging to the desired depth, move the machine as required to continue the trench.



M107-05-037

**IMPORTANT:** When lowering the boom, avoid sudden stops that may cause shock load damage to the machine.

**When operating the arm, avoid bottoming the cylinder to prevent cylinder damage.**

**When digging at an angle, avoid striking the tracks with the bucket teeth.**

**When digging a deep excavation, avoid striking the boom or bucket cylinder hoses against the ground.**

### GRADING OPERATION

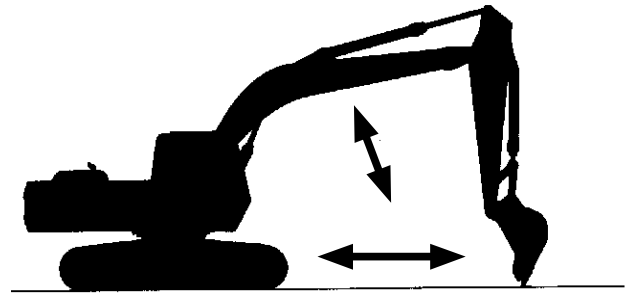
**IMPORTANT:** Do not pull or push dirt with the bucket when traveling.

Select grading mode when finishing work is required.

Position the arm slightly forward of the vertical position with bucket rolled back, as shown.

Operate arm roll-in function while slowly raising the boom. Once the arm moves past the vertical position, slowly lower the boom to allow the bucket to maintain a smooth surface.

Grading operation can be more precisely done by operating the boom, arm and bucket simultaneously.



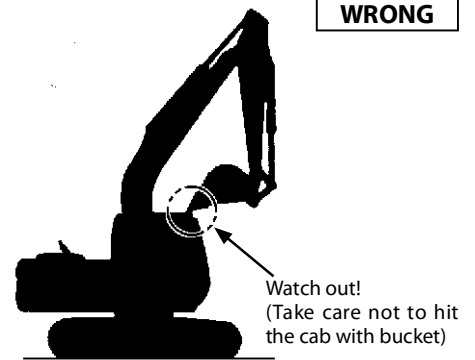
M104-05-017

## OPERATING THE MACHINE

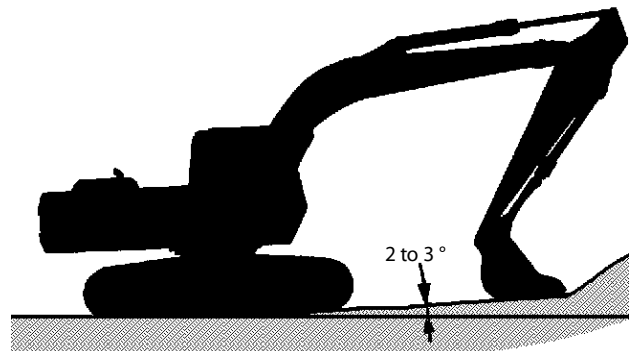
### FACE SHOVEL OPERATION

**⚠ WARNING:** Take care not to hit the cab when rolling in the arm with the reversed-installed bucket.

- For face shovel operation, dig the ground using the arm cylinder in a scraping motion.
- When underground water is expected, make a slope angle of 2 to 3 ° to drain this water as shown.



M107-05-045

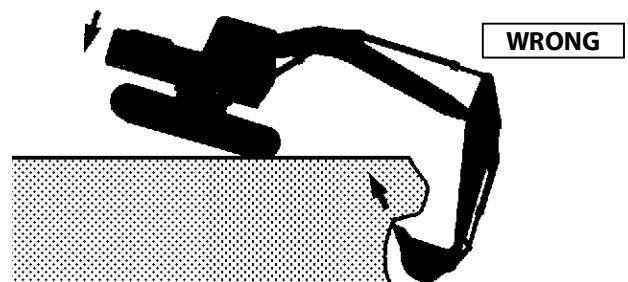
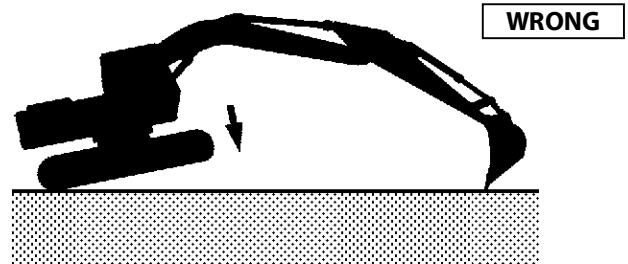
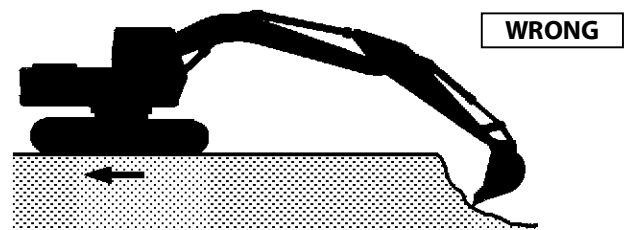


M104-05-020

### AVOID ABUSIVE OPERATION

Do not use travel as an additional digging force. Severe machine damage may result.

Do not raise rear of machine to use the machine's weight as additional digging force. Severe machine damage may result.



M104-05-018

## OPERATING THE MACHINE

### OPERATING TIPS

Do not hit the track with the bucket when digging. Whenever possible, position your machine on a level surface. Do not use the bucket as a hammer or pile driver. Do not attempt to shift rocks and break walls using swing motion.

**IMPORTANT: To avoid damaging cylinders, do not strike the ground with the bucket nor use the bucket for tamping with the bucket cylinder fully extended (the bucket completely curled under).**

Adjust the length and depth of each cut to produce a full bucket with every pass. Full loads on every pass is more productive than a faster cycle with a partially filled bucket. Full load should be the first objective, followed by speed, to increase productivity.

**IMPORTANT: Do not attempt to break ledge rock by extending the arm to maximum reach and dropping the front of the bucket on the bucket teeth for penetration. Serious damage to the machine can result.**

Once the trench is open, ledge rock can be broken by pulling the bucket up under the layers. The top layers are pulled out first, with one or two layers being lifted at a time. Do not side load the bucket. For example, do not swing the bucket to level material or do not strike objects from the side with the bucket.

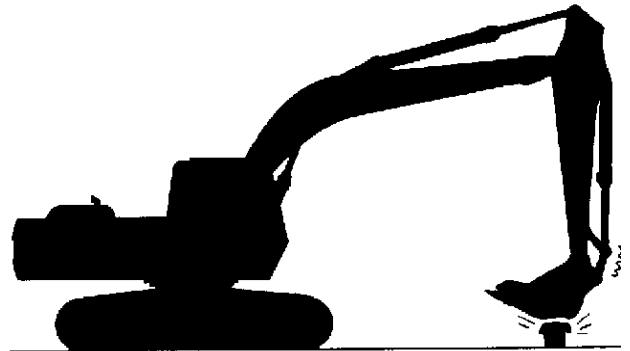
### SELECT CORRECT TRACK SHOES

**IMPORTANT: Using wide track shoes on rough ground may result in shoe bending and/or loosening, and may damage other undercarriage components.**

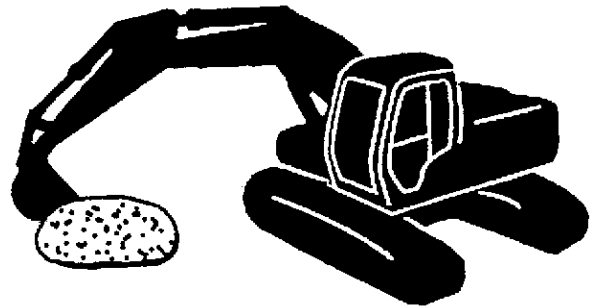
Never use wide track shoes on rough ground such as rocks, sand or gravel. Wide track shoes are designed for soft ground.

Track shoe bolts should be checked periodically for tightness.

WRONG



M104-05-019



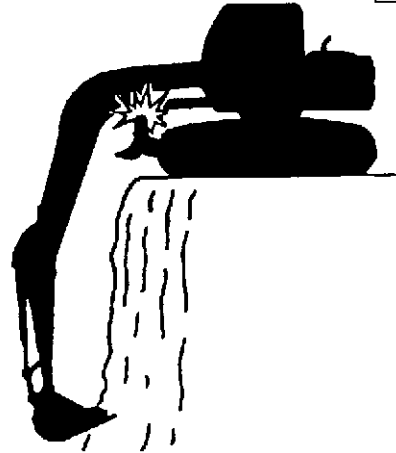
M161-05-006

## OPERATING THE MACHINE

### AVOID HITTING BLADE WITH FRONT-END ATTACHMENT

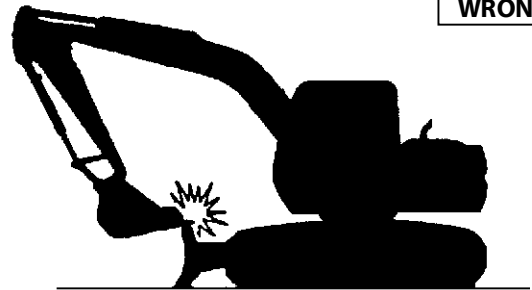
When operating the machine with the blade positioned towards the front, the bucket or boom cylinder may come into contact with the blade if you are not careful. Be sure to prevent this from happening.

WRONG



M1CC-07-017

WRONG

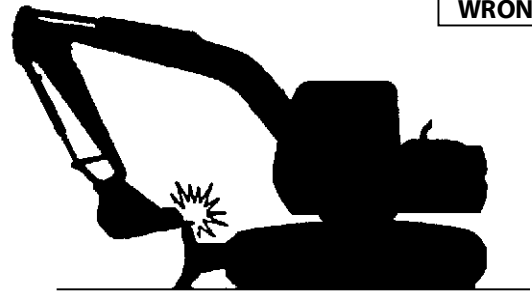


M1CC-07-018

### AVOID HITTING BLADE WITH BUCKET

When crowding the arm into a traveling or transporting position, be careful not to let the bucket hit the blade.

WRONG



M1CC-07-018

### AVOID STRIKING THE BLADE INTO A ROCK

Do not attempt to strike large rocks with the blade, as doing so will damage the blade and the blade cylinders, shortening their operating lives.



M1CC-07-020

## OPERATING THE MACHINE

---

### HYDRAULIC BREAKER AND HYDRAULIC CRUSHER

Select a breaker or crusher that is the correct size and weight for your machine. See your authorized dealer for correct breaker information.

Carefully study the operation manuals of the machine, breaker and crusher, and perform the required checks and/or inspection before connecting the breaker or the crusher to the arm.

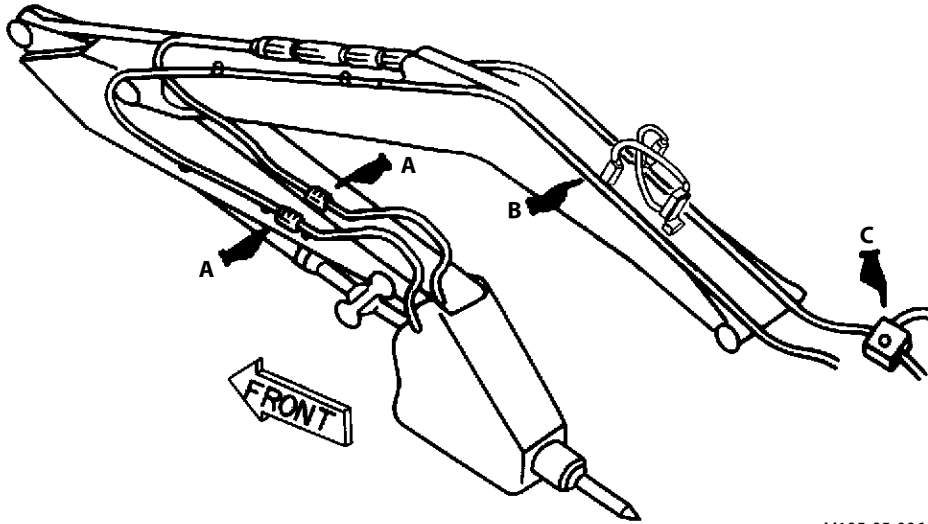
**IMPORTANT: Precautions for connecting breaker or crusher piping.**

- **Do not allow impurities to enter into the system when switching the breaker or the crusher with the bucket.**
- **When the breaker or crusher is not used, apply the cover to the pipe opening on the arm top and install the plug into the hose end of the breaker or the crusher to prevent impurities from entering the system.**  
**Be sure to provide spare covers and plugs in the tool box so that they will be available when needed.**
- **After connecting, check the connecting seal fitting for oil leakage, and pipe clamp bolts for looseness.**

# OPERATING THE MACHINE

## PIPIINGS FOR BREAKER AND CRUSHER

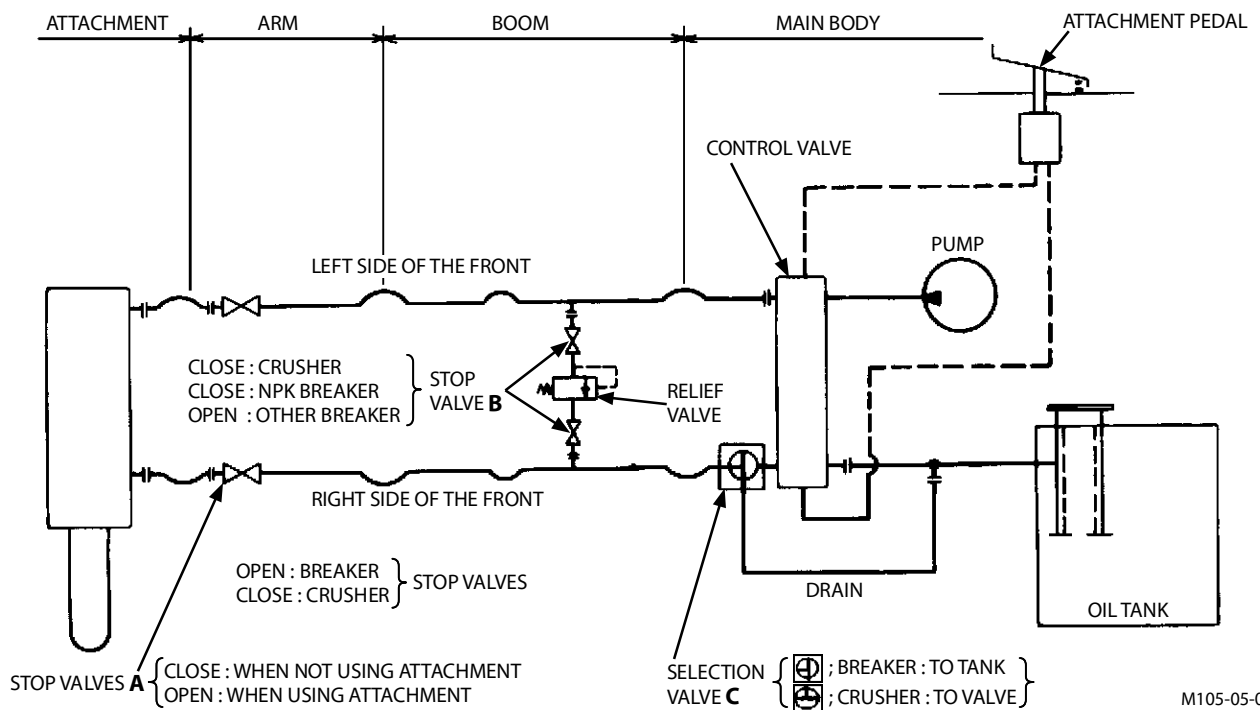
Operational procedures for stop valves and selection valve.



M105-05-006

<b>A, B</b> Stop Valves	Close	
	Open	
<b>C</b> Selection Valves	when using breaker	
	when using crusher	

Stop Valves <b>A</b>	Stop Valves <b>B</b>	Stop Valves <b>C</b>
Close : When not using attachment or is detached.	Close : When using crusher	Refer to the right table
Open : When using attachment	Open : When using breaker	



M105-05-007

## OPERATING THE MACHINE

### SECONDARY RELIEF PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT

When attaching the breaker other than the NPK, it is necessary to install the secondary relief valve in line. For this purpose, the boom piping for the attachment is provided with a part to which the secondary relief valve is connected.

Pressure is set to 9.8 MPa (100 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1420 psi) when shipped from HITACHI.

After completing piping, reset this pressure to the specified level of each breaker.

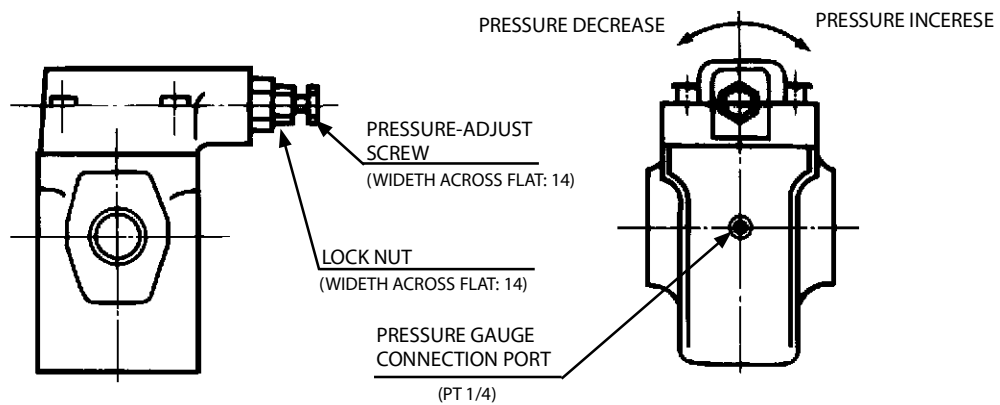
Adjust the pressure as follows :

1. Attach the pressure gauge to the pressure gauge port.
2. Loosen the lock nut, then gradually turn the pressure-adjust screw clockwise to increase the pressure, or counterclockwise to reduce the pressure.  
One turn of the screw changes about 4.9 MPa (50 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 710 psi) in pressure.
3. After adjusting the pressure, make sure to tighten the lock nut.

Two methods are available to measure the pressure. Measure the pressure as follows.

#### 1. Measuring the pressure at the relief valve :

- (1) Attach a pressure gauge to the pressure gauge connection port (see the figure below)
- (2) Close the stop valves at the arm end. Depress the attachment pedal to pressure the line.
- (3) Adjust the pressure to 1 to 1.5 MPa (10 to 15 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 145 to 220 psi) higher the setting pressure.



M107-05-005

#### 2. Measuring the pressure at the arm end.

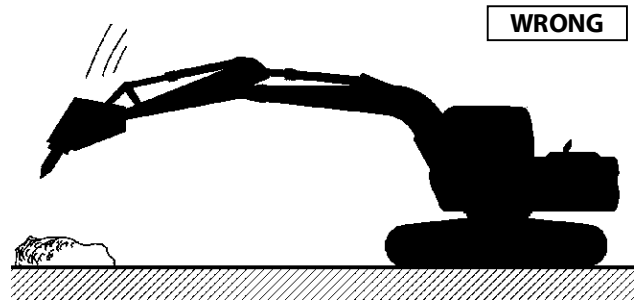
- (1) Remove the attachment connection hose and connect a pressure gauge to the connection fitting at the arm end.
- (2) Adjust the pressure to the setting pressure.

## OPERATING THE MACHINE

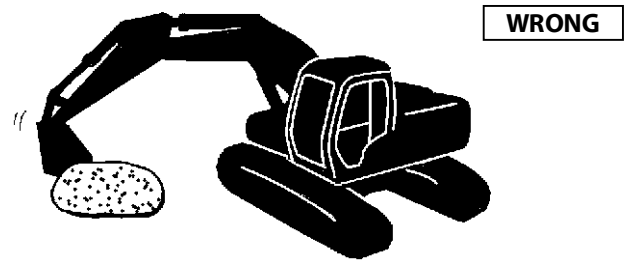
### PRECAUTIONS FOR BREAKER OPERATION

**⚠ WARNING:** Machine stability is reduced as the breaker is much heavier than the bucket. When using a breaker, the machine is more apt to tip over. Also, flying objects may hit the cab or other part of the machine. Observe the following precautions and take any other precautions necessary to prevent accidents and machine damage from occurring.

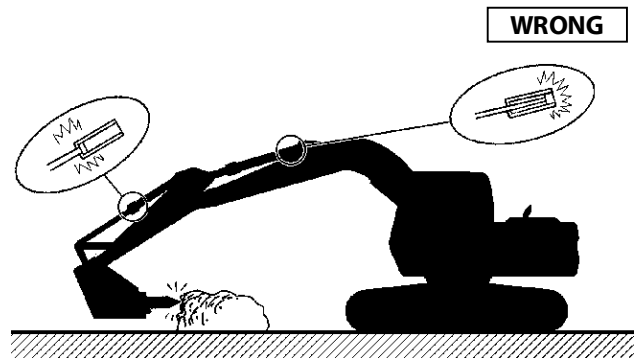
- Avoid hitting objects with breaker.  
The breaker is heavier than the bucket, causing the breaker to lower faster.  
Take care not to hit any objects with breaker. Doing so will result in damage to the breaker, the front attachment, and/or the upperstructure. Always move (lower) the breaker slowly to position the tip of the chisel on the object to be broken before starting breaker operation.
- Do not use the breaker and/or the swing function to move objects. Damage to the boom, arm, and/or breaker may result.
- To prevent cylinder/machine damage, do not operate the breaker with the hydraulic cylinder rod fully retracted or fully extended.



M104-05-055



M104-05-056

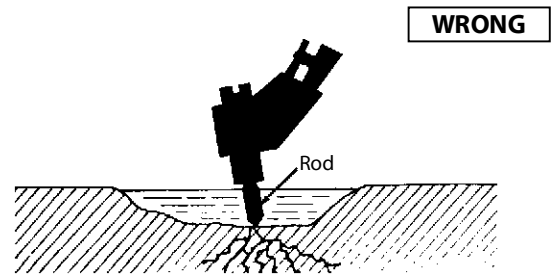


M104-05-057



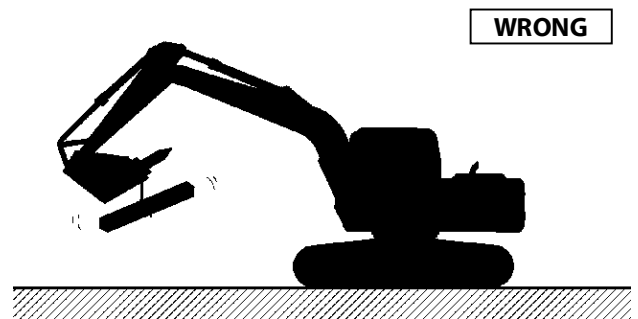
## OPERATING THE MACHINE

- Do not operate the breaker in water. Doing so will cause rust and seal damage, resulting in damage to the hydraulic system components.



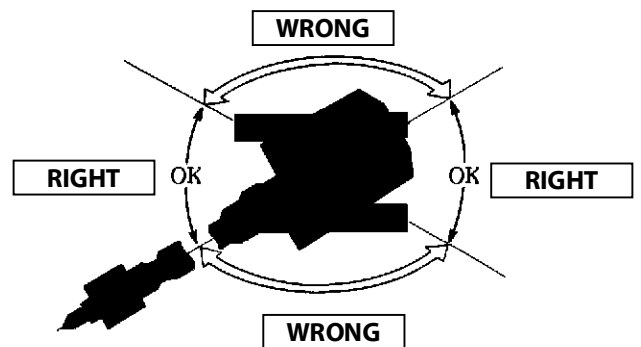
M104-05-059

- Do not use breaker for lifting operation. The machine tipping over and/or breaker damage may result.



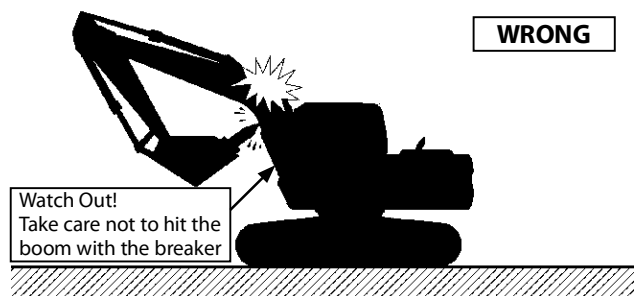
M104-05-060

- Do not operate the breaker to the side of the machine. The machine may become unstable and undercarriage component life may shorten as a result from operating the breaker to the side of the machine.



M104-05-061

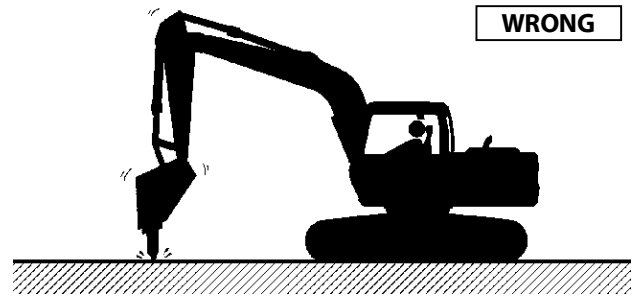
- Operate the hydraulic excavator carefully to avoid hitting the boom.



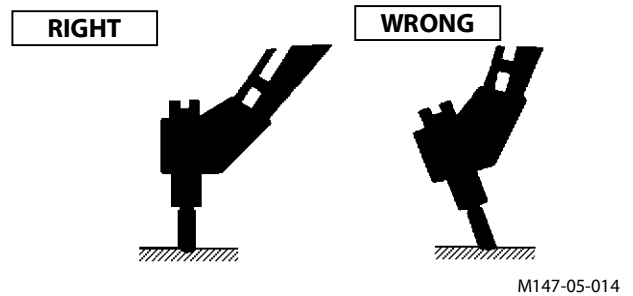
M104-05-062

## OPERATING THE MACHINE

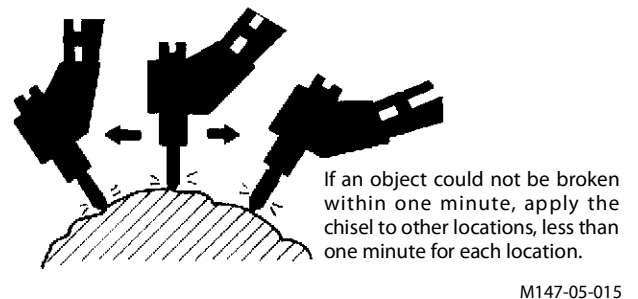
- Do not operate breaker with the arm positioned vertically. Excessive vibration to the arm cylinder will occur, causing oil leakage.



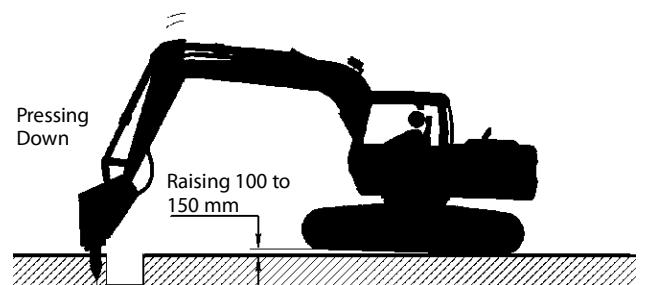
- Press the breaker so that the chisel (the axis) is positioned and thrust perpendicular to the object.



- Do not operate the breaker continuously longer than one minute. Excessive chisel wear will result. If an object could not be broken within one minute, apply the chisel to other locations, less than one minute for each location.



- Raising the front part of the undercarriage by pressing down the breaker may cause damage to the front attachment. Although raising the front edge of the undercarriage up to 150 mm (6 in) is tolerable, do not practice this method more than necessary. Never raise the front edge of the undercarriage higher than 150 mm (6 in) by pressing the breaker down.



# OPERATING THE MACHINE

## BREAKER MAINTENANCE

### Change Hydraulic Oil and Replace Hydraulic Oil Tank Filter

Hydraulic breaker operation subjects the hydraulic system to become contaminated faster and to quickly deteriorate the hydraulic oil. For this reason, hydraulic oil must be changed and the hydraulic oil tank filter must be replaced more often than the machine equipped with a bucket. Failure to do so may result in damage to the breaker, hydraulic oil pump, and other

related hydraulic system components. Recommended changing intervals are shown below. For filter replacement and oil changing intervals are shown below. (For filter replacement and oil changing procedures, refer to the "Hydraulic System" in the "MAINTENANCE" Section.)

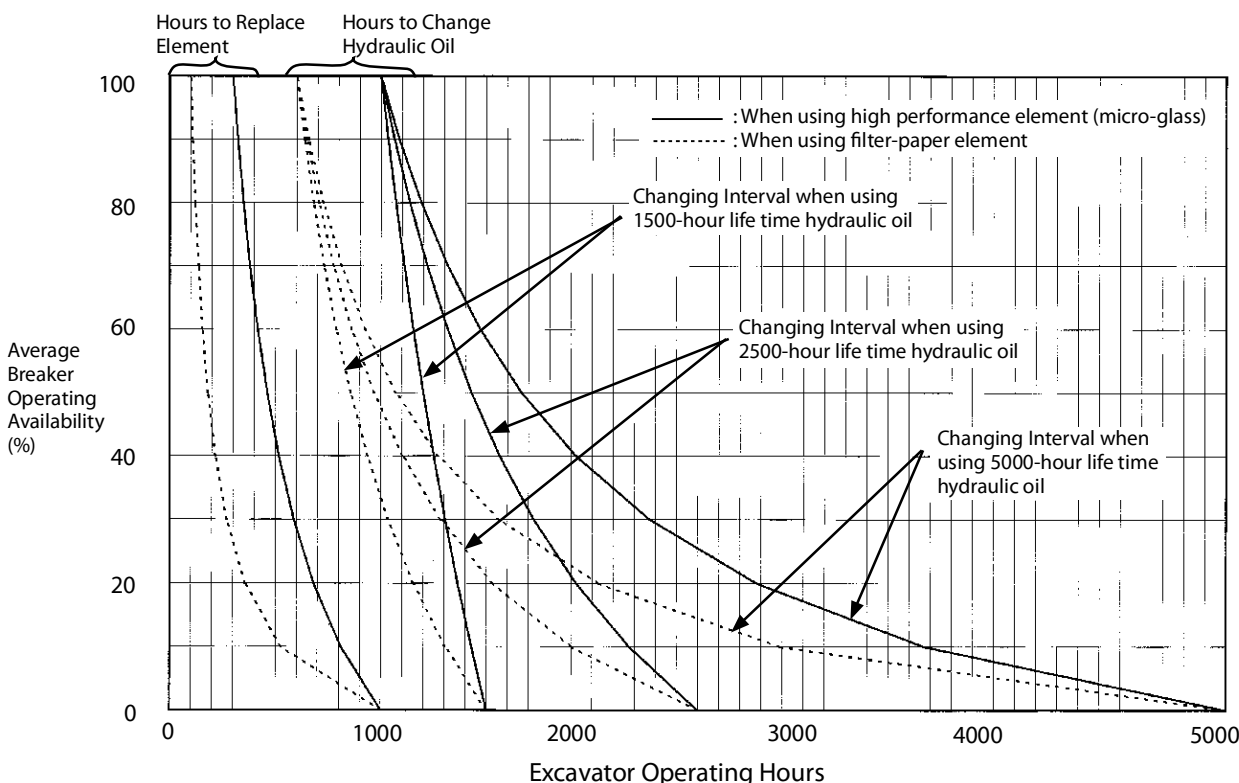
Changing intervals (Hours)

Attachment	Availability	*Hydraulic Oil	Hydraulic Oil Tank Filter Element	**Element Type
Bucket	100%	1500	1000	Standard Filter Paper High Performance Element
		2500		
		5000		
Hydraulic Breaker	100%	600	100	Standard Filter Paper
		1000	300	High Performance Element

\* : Changing intervals differ depending on the brand of hydraulic oil used. Refer to the Hydraulic System in the MAINTENANCE section.

\*\* : Use the high performance element (micro-glass) on excavators engaged in demolition work.

**Changing Intervals (Hours) of Hydraulic Oil and Full Flow Filter Element**



M1U1-05-006

**IMPORTANT:** Use a high performance element (micro-glass) on excavators engaged in demolition work. In case using a filter-paper element is unavoidable, change hydraulic oil and the filter element at the intervals as illustrated with dotted lines.

**NOTE:** Hydraulic oil tank filter restriction indicator is optional. If a filter-paper element is used, this indicator does not operate. (Refer to the Hydraulic System in the Maintenance section.)

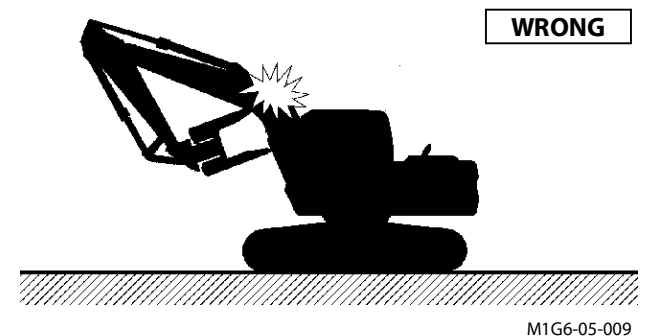
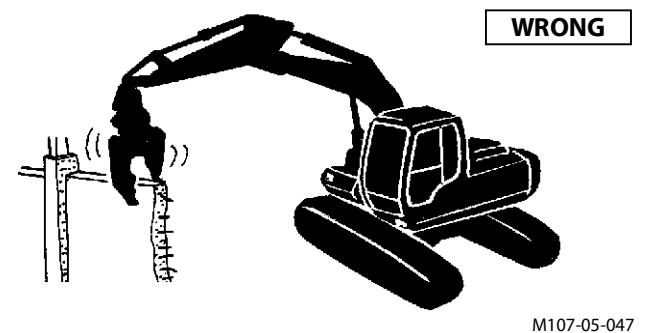
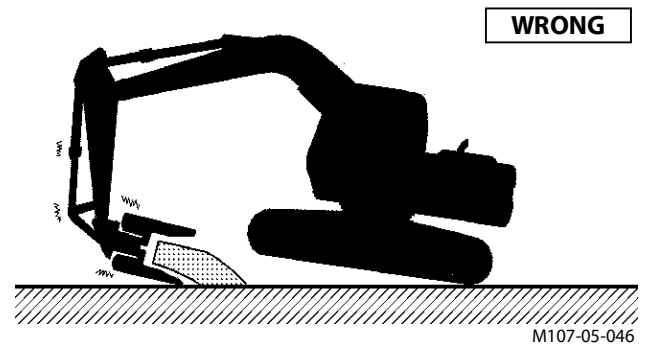
## OPERATING THE MACHINE

### PRECAUTIONS FOR CRUSHER OPERATION

Prevent machine tipping over and damage to the front attachment. Observe the following precautions for crusher operation.

**WARNING:** Machine stability is reduced as crusher is much heavier than bucket. When operating with a crusher, the machine is more apt to tip over. Also, falling or flying objects may hit the cab or other part of the machine. Observe the following precautions and take any other precautions necessary to prevent accidents and machine damage from occurring.

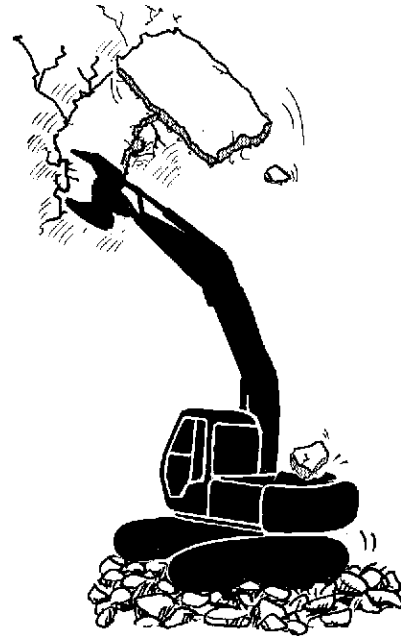
- Do not allow the machine's weight to be supported by the crusher or bucket cylinder with the bucket cylinder fully extended or retracted. Doing so may damage the front attachment. In particular, avoid doing so with the bucket cylinder fully extended, as the front attachment will be easily damaged. Take care to prevent this from happening when dismantling foundation structures using the crusher.
- Using the front attachment, do not raise the base machine off the ground with the arm cylinder fully extended. Failure to do so may result in damage to the arm cylinder.
- When a heavyweight attachment such as a crusher is installed, avoid quickly starting or stopping the front attachment. Failure to do so may result in damage to the front attachment.
- Do not attempt to perform crushing on either side of the machine. Always perform crushing operations to the fore or rear, parallel with the tracks. Otherwise, tipping over may occur.
- Operate the hydraulic excavator carefully to avoid hitting the boom, and cab.



## OPERATING THE MACHINE

When operating the crusher up high with the boom fully raised, be careful of falling objects.

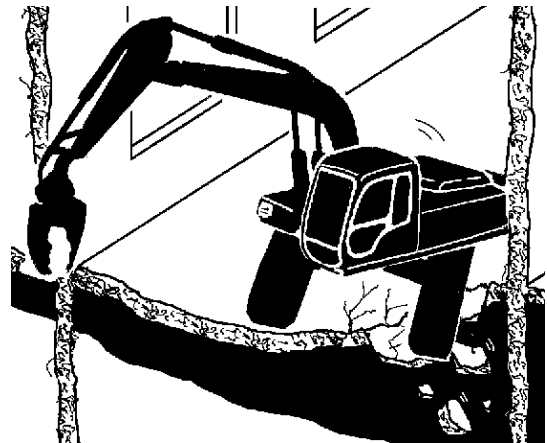
**WRONG**



M107-05-048

- When operating the crusher on a floor in a building, first confirm that the floor has sufficient strength to support the load caused by crushing, in addition to the machine weight.
- Always operate the crusher on a stable, level surface, not on a slope or on crushed scraps.
- Do not use the crusher to haul or load crushed scraps.
- If a multiple number of attachments, such as crusher and bucket, or crusher and breaker, are used, replacing them with each other at intervals, impurities are more apt to enter the hydraulic system and the hydraulic oil deteriorates quickly. For this reason, replace the hydraulic oil tank filter and change the hydraulic oil at the intervals specified in the breaker time sharing diagram in the previous section. Read the breaker time sharing diagram supposing that time sharing percentage of attachment (s) other than the crusher is that of the breaker.
- Always remove the crusher from the excavator before transporting the machine. Do not fully extend the bucket cylinder when transporting, as this may damage the front attachment, when vibrations arise during transportation.

**WRONG**



M107-05-049

## OPERATING THE MACHINE

---

### ATTACHMENT

#### Allowable Weight Limits of Installed Attachment

- When an attachment other than the standard bucket is installed on the machine, the machine stability will be different. If a heavy attachment is used, not only will controllability be affected but also machine stability will be reduced, possibly causing safety hazard.
- Before installing attachments such as hydraulic breaker, crusher (concrete crusher), or pulverizer, take machine controllability into account when selecting the weight of the attachment by referring to the table below.

Unit: kg (lb)

Specification	Base Machine		Breaker		Crusher/Pulverizer	
	Model	Arm	Std. Weight	Max. Weight	Std. Weight	Max. Weight
Standard Type	ZX70LC-3	Std.	700 (1540)	750 (1650)	850 (1870)	1000 (2200)
	ZX75US-3	Std.	700 (1540)	750 (1650)	800 (1760)	950 (2090)
	ZX85USB-3	Std.	550 (1210)	600 (1320)	650 (1430)	750 (1650)

## OPERATING THE MACHINE

---

- Breaker operation speed is faster than crusher operation so that the recommended breaker max. weights are reduced more than those of the crushers.
- The weight is not the only factor to be considered when selecting a breaker. Select proper manufacturers' breaker models while referring to the table on the next page.
- Avoid installing an attachment with a long overall length. Damage to the front attachment may result.
- When an attachment of the max. weight is installed, always operate the attachment over the front or rear side of the machine. In addition, avoid operating the attachment at the maximum reach.
- Crushers are heavier than breakers. Slowly move the control lever when operating a crusher.

## OPERATING THE MACHINE

### Attachments

Example commercial attachment models (breakers and crushers) for excavators are shown in the following table. Among the crusher models, some models are heavier than the recommended weight on the previous page. Before installing them, sufficiently coordinate with the attachment manufacture. Always contact your nearest HITACHI dealer before installing attachments shown with this mark \*.

When the machine is operated with an attachment other than bucket, generally heavier loads are applied to the base machine comparing with bucket only operation. Therefore, unless the machine is properly operated, damage not only the attachment but to the base machine may result. Thoroughly read and understand the base machine operator's manual and the attachment manual to prevent accidents.

#### Breaker

Maker	HITACHI		NPK	NPK	Okada	Furu-kawa	Mitsubishi	Toukuu	Matuda	MON-TABERT	STK	Ranma	GERMANY KRUPP
Model	HSB66	HSB66S	H-10XB	E-12X	OUB312	HB20G	MKB1400	TNB14E	THBB1400	BRH501	SIB221	E-66	HM960CS
Weight kg (lb)	1510 (3330)	1520 (3350)	1450 (3200)	1550 (3420)	1400 (3090)	1480 (3260)	1480 (3260)	1487 (3280)	1480 (3260)	1350 (2980)	1400 (3090)	1300 (2870)	1500 (3310)
Flow Rate (L/min)	110~160	110~160	160~200	165~210	140~180	125~150	110~160	130~170	120~170	110~140	160~210	100~160	130~170
Operating Pressure MPa (kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )	12.3~13.2 (125~135)	12.3~13.2 (125~135)	11.8~13.7 (120~140)	15.7~17.7 (160~180)	13.7~16.7 (140~170)	15.7~17.6 (160~180)	14.7~17.6 (150~180)	12.7~16.7 (130~170)	9.8~12.7 (100~130)	7.8~10.8 (80~110)	15.7~17.6 (160~180)	13.2~14.2 (135~145)	11.8~13.7 (120~140)
Secondary Relief Valve Set Pressure MPa (kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )	21.6 (220)	21.6 (220)	—	—	17.6 (180)	17.6 (180)	17.6 (180)	17.6 (180)	12.7 (130)	10.8 (110)	19.6 (200)	15.9 (160)	16.7 (170)

#### Crusher

Maker	HITACHI		SANGO JYUKI	NPK*	Sakado	Oosumi*	STK*
Model	HSC100	HSC160	TS850RCD	S-22XA	SPAC80R-3	MR1100-2	CX1100
Weight kg (lb)	2430 (5360)	2300 (5070)	2000 (4410)	2000 (4410)	1640 (3620)	2100 (4630)	2350 (5180)
Overall Length mm (ft-in)	2340 (7'8")	2600 (8'6")	2500 (8'2")	2500 (8'2")	1810 (5'11")	2100 (6'11")	2450 (8'0")
Rated Pressure MPa (kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )	27.9 (285)	27.9 (285)	27.4 (280)	24.5 (250)	27.4 (280)	27.4 (280)	27.4 (280)
Maximum Opening Width mm (ft-in)	900 (2'11")	850 (2'9")	850 (2'9")	850 (2'9")	850 (2'9")	1000 (3'3")	1100 (3'7")
Swing Method	Hydraulic	Hydraulic	Free	Free	Free	Free	Free
Jaw Tip Crushing Force	kN (tf-f)	640 (65)	980 (100)	970 (99)	630 (64)		590 (60)
Jaw Center Crushing Force	kN (tf-f)	980 (100)	1570 (160)	1570 (160)	780 (80)	1540 (157)	880 (90)



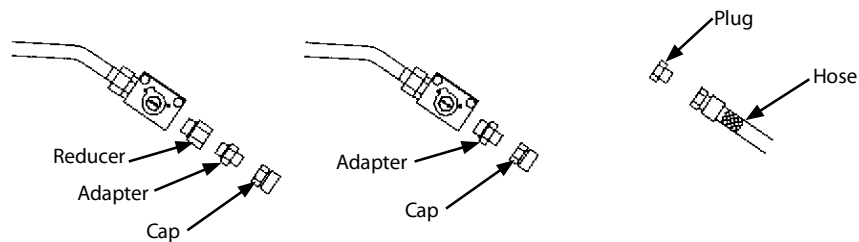
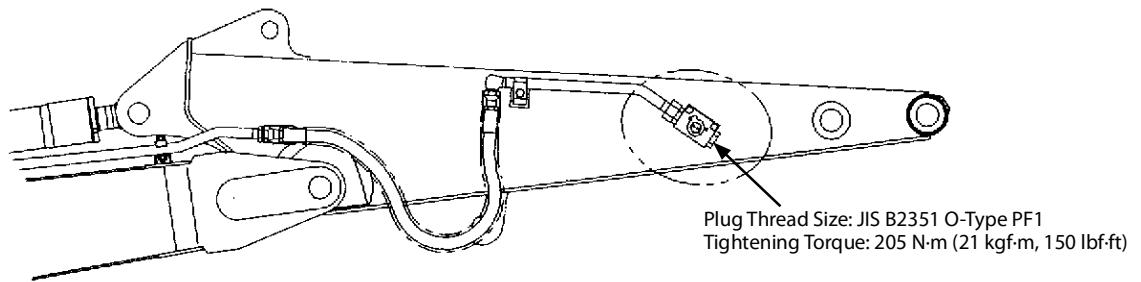
# OPERATING THE MACHINE

## ATTACHMENT CONNECTION PARTS

The attachment hydraulic line and connection parts are located as illustrated below. When the attachment is disconnected, be sure to install caps or plugs to the ends of both the arm and attachment side hydraulic lines to prevent dust from entering or from sticking.

Adapter tightening torque:

PF1      210 N·m (21 kgf·m, 150 lbf·ft)



When the attachment is disconnected:

M1CE-05-001

Part No. List (Fill attachment manufacturer's part Nos. in the blank spaces.)

Maker	Adapter Size	Adapter	Cap	Plug	Hose
Form / Size	Male-Type PF-UNF				
	PF1-1-1/16-12UN	4456399	4222711	4222264	
	PF3/4-3/4-16UN	*4279302	4223519	4225492	
Form / Size	Female-Type PF-PF30°				
	PF1-PF3/4	4129457	9718916	4222047	
	PF3/4- PF 1/2	*4129227	9719234	4095927	
Form / Size	Male-Type PF-PF30°				
	PF1-PF3/4	4456120	4222715	4222044	
	PF3/4-PF1/2		4222714	4222043	

\*When using the adapter shown with mark \*, reducer (P/N 4263448) must be installed.

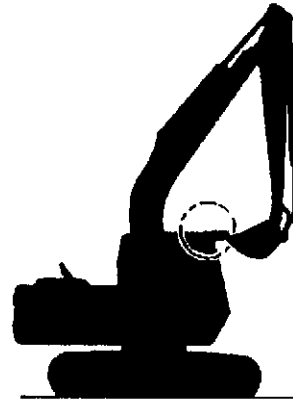
## OPERATING THE MACHINE

---

### PRECAUTION FOR ARM ROLL-IN/BUCKET ROLL-IN COMBINED OPERATION

#### --- If Headguard-Integrated Cab or Rainguard is Equipped

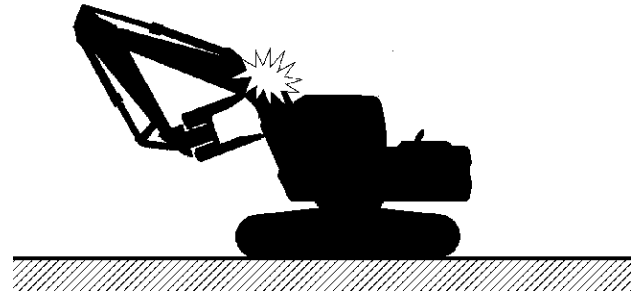
- ⚠ WARNING:** The bucket teeth will hit the headguard or rainguard if the bucket is rolled in with the arm fully rolled in, as illustrated. When performing combined operation of long arm roll-in/bucket roll-in or when rolling in the bucket with the arm fully retracted, be careful not to hit the headguard or rainguard with the bucket teeth.



M107-05-072

### WHEN INSTALLING AN ATTACHMENT LONGER THAN STANDARD BUCKET

- ⚠ WARNING:** When an attachment (such as a hydraulic breaker or crusher), the overall length of which is longer than that of the bucket, is installed, the attachment may come in contact with the cab and/or the boom. Operate the machine with care not to allow the tip of the front attachment to hit the cab and/or the boom while rolling in the front attachment.



M1G6-05-009

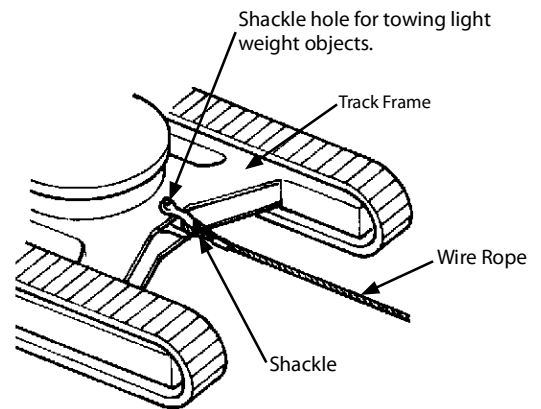
## OPERATING THE MACHINE

### SHACKLE HOLE USAGE

A shackle hole is provided on the track frame to tow light weight objects as specified below.

**IMPORTANT:** Be sure to conform to the restrictions and precautions stated below when towing a light weight object using the shackle hole provided on the track frame. The track frame and/or the shackle hole may be damaged otherwise.

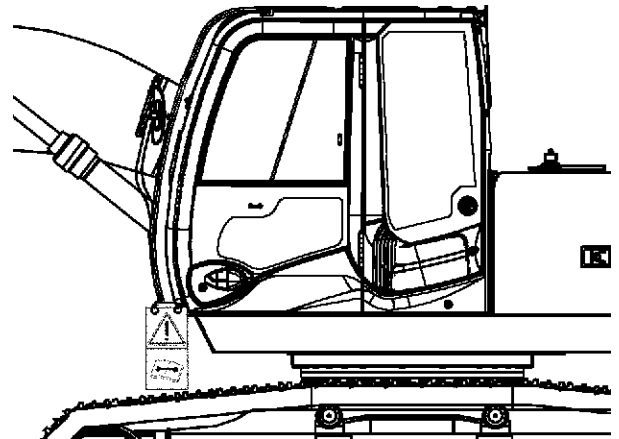
- The maximum drawbar pull is 19610 N (2.0 tf).
- Be sure to use a shackle.
- Keep the tow line horizontal, straight, and parallel to the tracks.
- Select the slow travel mode. Slowly drive the machine when towing.



M104-05-011

### OVERNIGHT STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

1. After finishing the day's operation, drive the machine to a firm, level ground where no possibility of falling stones, ground collapse, or floods. Park the machine referring to the "PARKING THE MACHINE" in the "DRIVING THE MACHINE" section.
2. Fill the fuel tank with fuel.
3. Clean the machine.
4. If anti-freeze or long life coolant is not used in cold weather, be sure to drain coolant from the radiator and the engine jacket. Also, be sure to put a tag in a visible place if the coolant has been drained.



M1U1-05-003

## OPERATING THE MACHINE

### EMERGENCY BOOM LOWERING PROCEDURE (Without hose-rupture safety valve)

**⚠ WARNING: Prevent personal injury. Confirm that no one is under the front attachment before starting the procedure below.**

If the engine stalls and cannot be restarted, lower the boom to lower the bucket to the ground referring to the emergency boom lowering procedure stated below.

**IMPORTANT: Never loosen screw (2) more than 2 turns. Screw (2) may come off.**

1. Loosen lock nut (1). Loosen screw (2) one half of a turn. The boom will start to lower. The boom lowering speed can be somewhat adjusted by loosening screw (2) more.

**IMPORTANT: Excessive leakage may result if screw (2) and lock nut (1) are tightened insufficiently. Be sure to retighten screw (2) and lock nut (1) to specifications.**

2. After the bucket is lowered to the ground, retighten screw (2), then lock nut (1) to the specifications below.

Lock Nut (1)

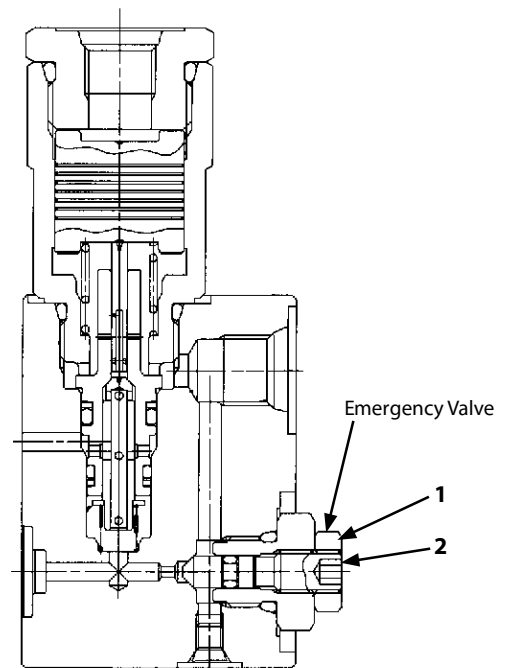
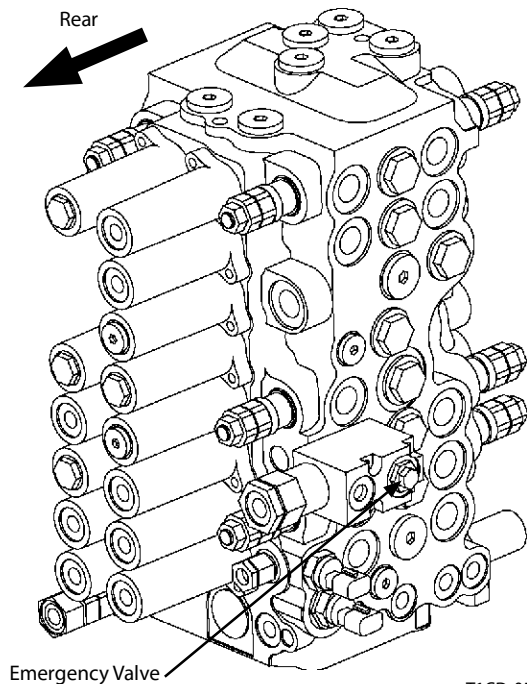
Tool : 13 mm

Torque : 13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m, 9.4 lbf·ft)

Screw (2)

Tool : 4 mm (Hexagonal wrench)

Torque : 7 N·m (0.7 kgf·m, 5.0 lbf·ft)



## OPERATING THE MACHINE

---

### OBJECT HANDLING --- IF EQUIPPED

**⚠ WARNING:** When you use machine for object handling, be sure to comply with all local regulations. Cables, straps, or ropes can break, causing serious injury. Do not use damaged chains, frayed cables, slings, straps, or ropes to crane.

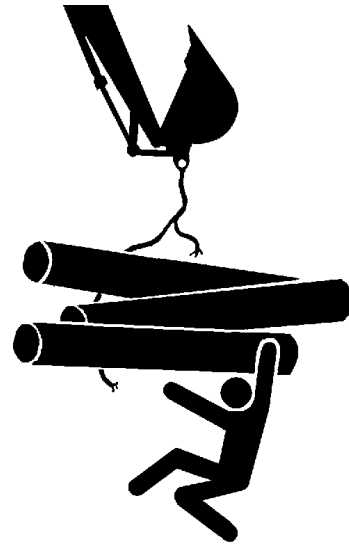
**Never move the load suddenly. Never move load over a person's head. Do not allow any persons near load.**

**Keep all persons away from wire-rope-attached load, lifted or sitting on the ground unless it is securely sitting on blocks or on the ground.**

**Position upperstructure so that the travel motors are at the rear.**

**Do not attach sling/chain to the bucket teeth.**

- Secure sling/chain tightly to the load being lifted. Wear gloves when securing sling/chain.
- Fasten sling/chain to bucket loop, with the bucket curled and arm retracted.
- Coordinate hand signals with your signal man before starting.
- Be aware of the location of all persons in the working area.
- Attach a hand line to load and make sure person holding it is well away from load.
- Before lifting, test your load.
  1. Park your machine close to load.
  2. Attach load to the machine.
  3. Raise load 50 mm (2 in) above the ground.
  4. Swing the load all the way to one side.
  5. While keeping load close to the ground, move it away from machine.
  6. If there is any indication of reduced stability of your machine, lower load to the ground.
- Lift load only as high as necessary.



SA-014

# TRANSPORTING

---

## TRANSPORTING BY ROAD

When transporting the machine on public roads, be sure to first understand and follow all local regulations.

- When transporting using a trailer, check the width, height, length and weight of the trailer with the machine loaded. Note that transporting the weight and dimensions may vary depending on the type of shoe or front attachments installed.
- Investigate beforehand the conditions of the route to be traveled, such as dimensional limits, weight limits, and traffic regulations.

In some cases, disassemble the machine to bring it within dimensional limits or weight limits of local regulations.



M1P1-06-001

## LOADING/UNLOADING ON A TRAILER

Always load and unload the machine on a firm, level surface.



**WARNING: Be sure to use a loading dock or a ramp for loading/unloading. Never load or unload the machine onto or off a truck or trailer using the front attachment functions when driving up or down the ramp.**

### Ramp/Loading Dock:

1. Before loading, thoroughly clean the ramp and flatbed. Dirty ramps or flatbeds with oil, mud, or ice on them are slippery and dangerous.
2. Place blocks against the truck and trailer wheels while using a ramp or loading dock.
3. Ramps must be sufficient in width, length, and strength. Be sure that the incline of the ramp is less than 15 degrees.
4. Loading docks must be sufficient in width and strength to support the machine and have an incline of less than 15 degrees.

## TRANSPORTING

### Loading/Unloading

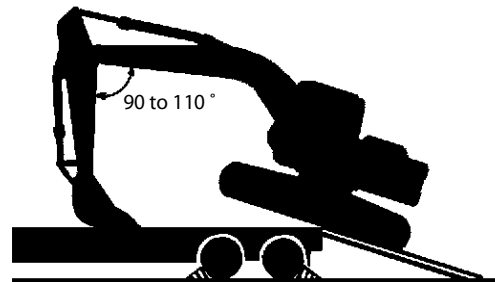


#### WARNING:

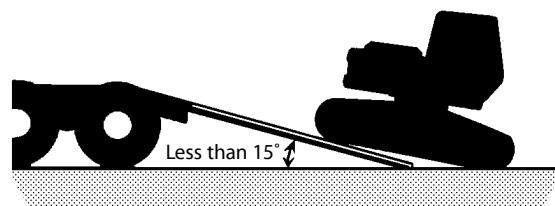
- Always turn the auto-idle switch OFF when loading or unloading the machine, to avoid unexpected speed increase due to unintentional operation of a control lever.
- Always select the slow speed mode with the travel mode switch. In the fast speed mode, travel speed may automatically increase.
- NEVER steer while driving up or down a ramp as it is extremely dangerous. If repositioning is necessary, first move back to the ground or flatbed, modify traveling direction, and begin to drive again.
- The top end of the ramp where it meets the flatbed is a sudden bump. Take care when traveling over it.
- Prevent possible injury from machine tipping while the upperstructure is rotating. Keep the arm tucked under and rotate the upperstructure slowly for best stability.

### Loading

1. The machine direction should be as follows:  
With the front attachment: Travel forward with the front attachment at the front.  
Without the front attachment: Travel in reverse, as illustrated.
2. The centerline of the machine should be over the centerline of the trailer.
3. Drive the machine onto the ramp slowly.  
With the front attachment:
  - Position the bucket with its flat surface resting on the trailer. Angle of the arm to boom should be 90 to 110 °.
  - Rest the bucket on the trailer just before the machine begins to tip forward onto the trailer. Slowly travel forward until the tracks are firmly on the trailer.
  - Slightly raise the bucket. Keeping the arm tucked under, slowly rotate the upperstructure 180 °.
  - Lower the bucket onto blocks.



M1CC-05-007



M1CC-05-008



M1CC-05-009

## TRANSPORTING

---

4. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
5. Move the control levers several times until hydraulic pressure in the cylinders is released.
6. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to LOCK position.
7. Close cab windows, roof vent and door, and cover the exhaust opening, to prevent entry of wind and water.



**CAUTION: In cold weather, be sure to warm up the machine before loading or unloading it.**



## TRANSPORTING

### Transporting

**WARNING:** Fasten chains or cables to the machine frame. Do not place chains or cables over or against the hydraulic lines or hoses.

1. Place blocks in front of and behind the tracks.
2. Fasten each corner of the machine and front attachment to the trailer with a chain or cable.



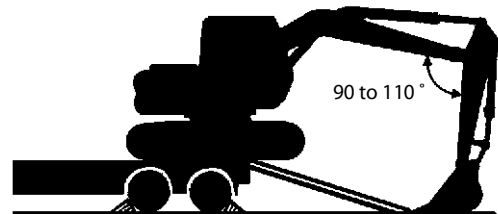
M1P1-06-001

### Unloading

**WARNING:** The rear end of the flatbed where it meets the ramp is a sudden bump. Take care when traveling over it.

**IMPORTANT:** Prevent possible damage to the front attachment. Always position the arm at 90 to 110 ° to the boom when unloading the machine. Unloading the machine with the arm tucked in may cause machine damage.

1. To move the machine over end of the trailer onto the ramp, rest the flat surface of the bucket on the ground. Angle of the arm to the boom should be 90 to 110 °.



M1CC-05-010

**IMPORTANT:** Prevent possible damage to the hydraulic cylinders. Do not allow the machine to hit the ground hard with the bucket.

2. The bucket must be on the ground before the machine begins to tip forward.
3. As the machine moves forward, raise the boom and extend the arm until the machine is completely off the ramp.



M1CC-05-011

# TRANSPORTING

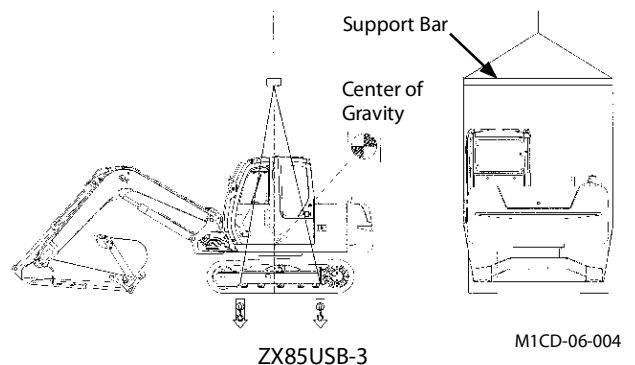
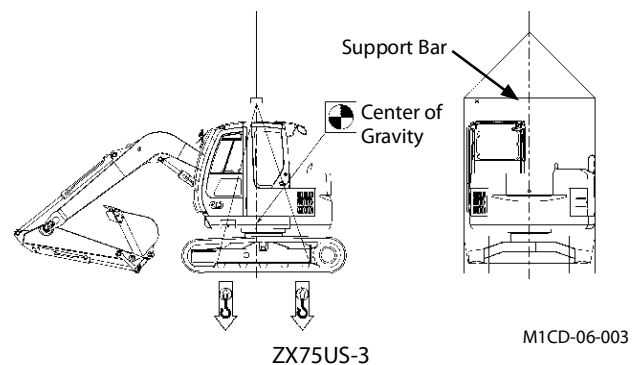
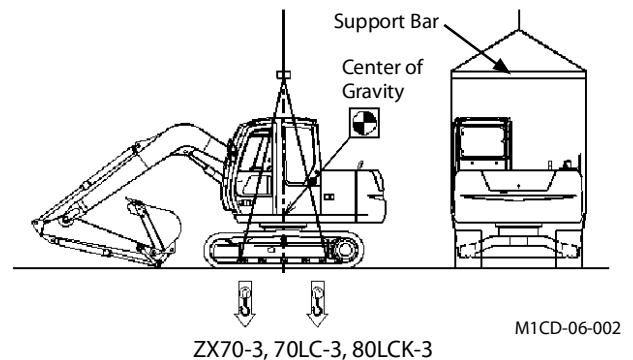
## MACHINE LIFTING PROCEDURE



### WARNING:

- Lifting wire ropes and other lifting tools can break, possibly causing serious personal injury. Do not use damaged or deteriorated wire ropes or lifting tools.
- Be sure to contact your authorized dealer for correct lifting procedure, and size and kinds of lifting wire ropes and lifting tools.
- Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position so that the machine does not accidentally move while being lifted.
- Incorrect lifting procedure and/or incorrect wire rope attachment will cause the machine to move (shift) while being lifted, resulting in machine damage and/or personal injury.
- Do not lift the machine quickly. Excessive load will be applied to the lifting wire ropes and/or lifting tools, possibly causing them to break.
- Do not allow anyone to come close to or under the lifted machine.
- The indicated gravity center is for the standard specification machine. The gravity center will vary depending on the kinds of attachments and/or optional equipment to be installed or their position to be taken. Therefore, take care not to lose the balance of the machine while lifting.

1. Fully extend the arm and bucket cylinders. Lower the boom until the bucket comes in contact with the ground.
2. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
3. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
4. Use wire ropes and support bar of sufficient length so that they do not come in contact with the machine while lifting.  
Wrap some protectors around wire ropes and/or support bar as required to prevent the machine from being damaged.
5. Drive a crane to an appropriate position for lifting.
6. Thread the wire rope through and under both sides of the track frames as illustrated. Attach the wire ropes to the crane.



# TRANSPORTING

---

## MEMO

A series of horizontal dotted lines for writing a memo.

## MAINTENANCE

---

### CORRECT MAINTENANCE AND INSPECTION PROCEDURES

Learn how to service your machine correctly. Follow the correct maintenance and inspection procedures shown in this manual.

Inspect machine daily before starting.

- Check controls and instruments.
- Check coolant, fuel and oil levels.
- Check for leaks, kinked, frayed or damaged hoses and lines.
- Walk around machine checking general appearance, noise, heat, etc.
- Check for loose or missing parts.

If there is any problem with your machine, repair it before operating or contact your authorized dealer.

- IMPORTANT:**
- **Use only recommended fuel and lubricants.**
  - **Be sure to use only genuine Hitachi parts. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death and/or machine breakdown.**
  - **Use only genuine HITACHI parts.**
  - **Failure to use recommended fuel, lubricants, and genuine Hitachi parts will result in loss of Hitachi product warranty.**
  - **Never adjust engine governor or hydraulic system relief valve.**
  - **Protect electrical parts from water and steam.**
  - **Never disassemble electrical components such as main controller, sensors, etc.**



SA-005

## MAINTENANCE

---

### CHECK THE HOUR METER REGULARLY

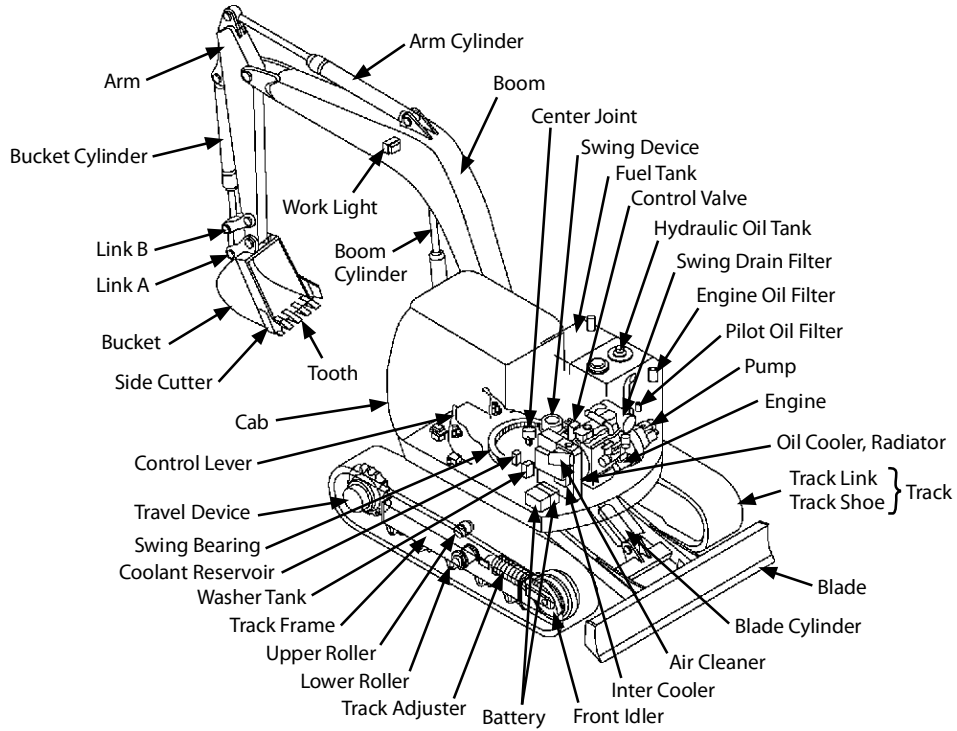
- Intervals on the periodic maintenance chart are for operating in normal conditions. If you operate your machine in more adverse conditions, you should service it at SHORTER INTERVALS.
- Lubricate, make service checks and adjustments at intervals shown on periodic maintenance guide table (see page 7-4 and 7-5).

### USE CORRECT FUELS AND LUBRICANTS

**IMPORTANT: Always use recommended fuels and lubricants.  
Failure to do so will result in machine damage and loss of Hitachi product warranty.**

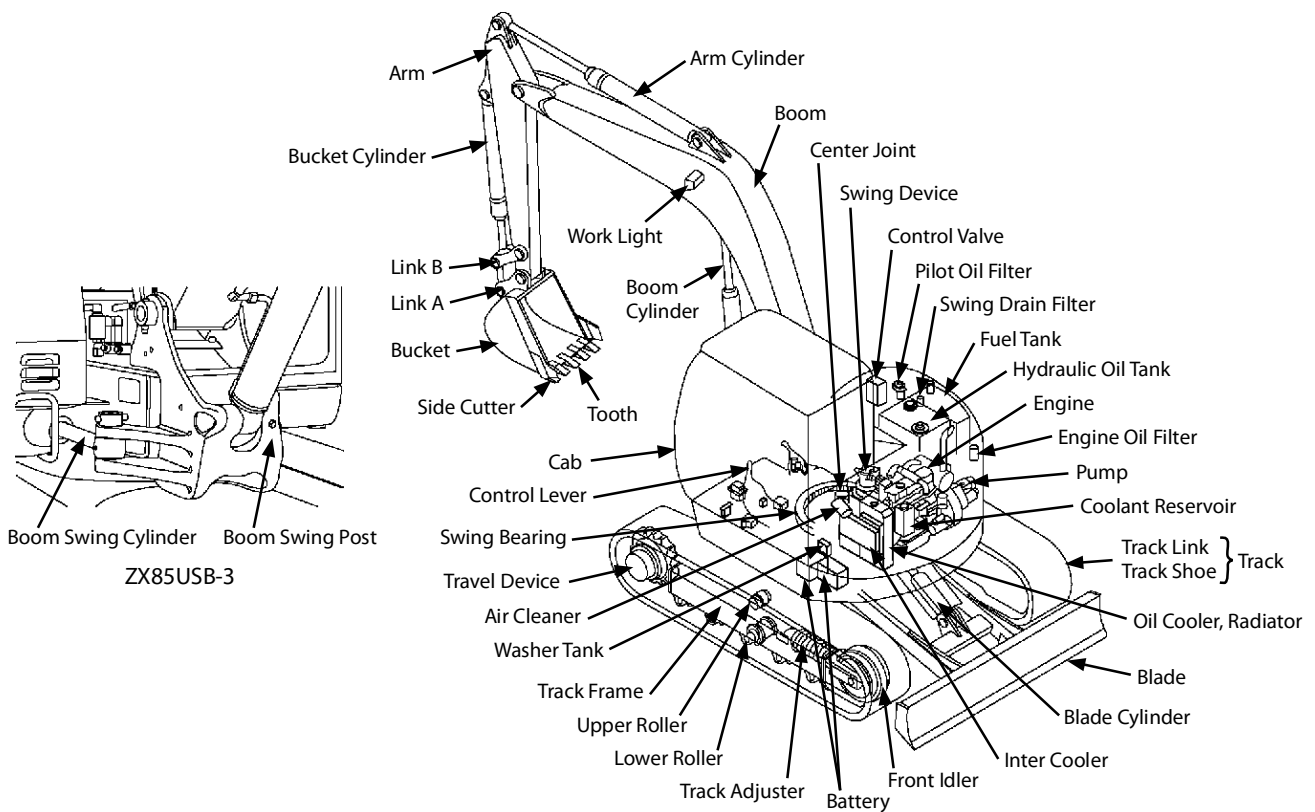
# MAINTENANCE

## LAYOUT



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-045



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3










M1P1-07-049

## MAINTENANCE

### MAINTENANCE GUIDE TABLE

The maintenance guide table is affixed to the right side of the cab (outside). Lubricate and/or service the parts at the intervals as instructed in the table so that all necessary maintenance can be performed regularly.

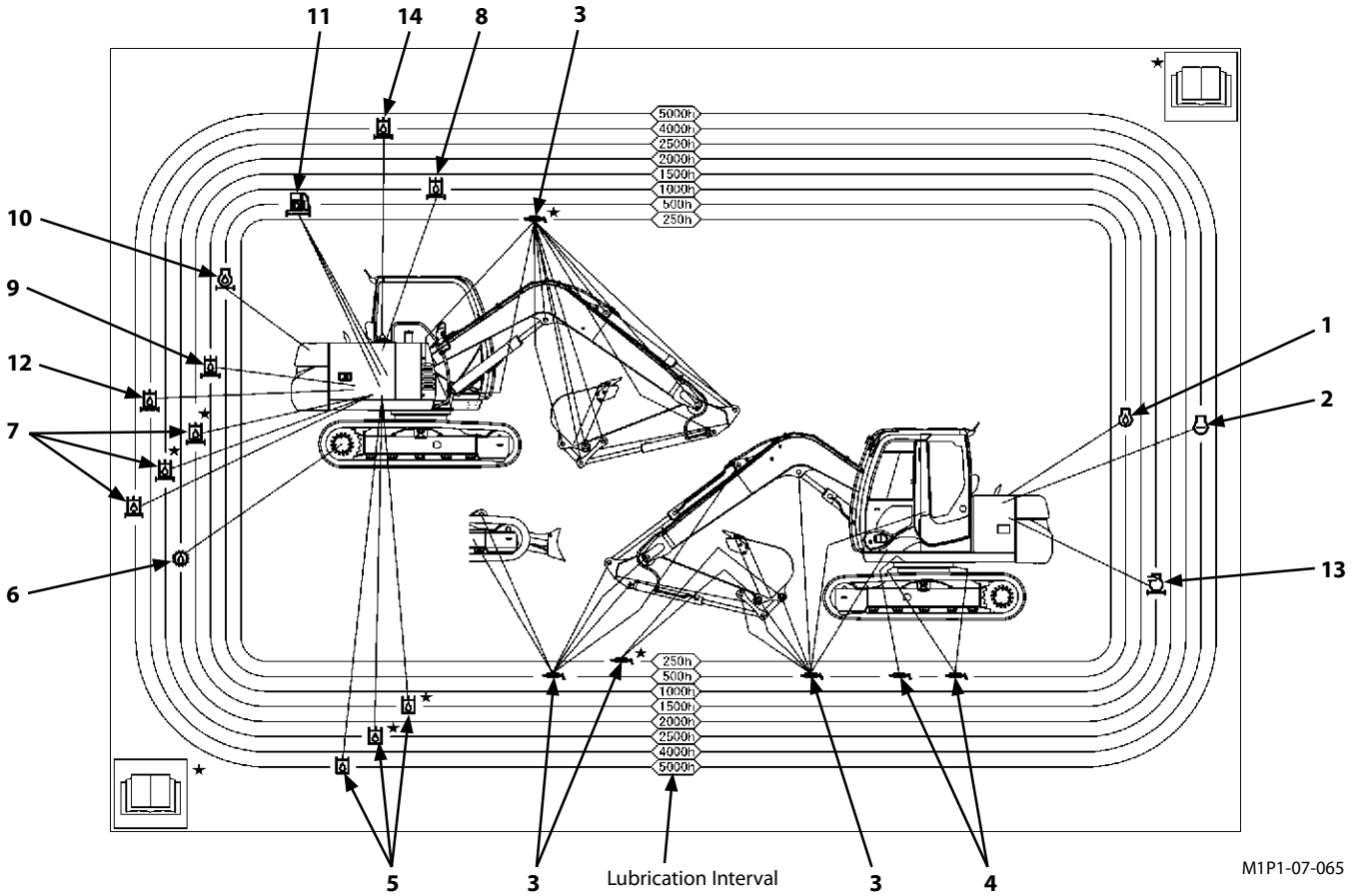
- **Symbol Marks**  
The following marks are used in the maintenance guide table.

	Grease (Front Joint Pin, Swing Bearing, Swing Gear)		Hydraulic Oil Filter (Pilot Oil Filter, Swing Drain Filter, Hydraulic Oil Tank Filter, Suction Filter)
	Gear Oil (Travel Reduction Device, Swing Reduction Device)		Air Cleaner Element
	Engine Oil		Coolant (Long-Life Coolant)
	Engine Oil Filter		Fuel Filter (Fuel Main Filter, Pre-Filter)
	Hydraulic Oil		

# MAINTENANCE

## Maintenance Guide Table

Sample: ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3



	Item	Page		Item	Page
1	Engine Oil	7-21	8	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Main)	7-34
2	Coolant (Long-Life Coolant)	7-53	9	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Pilot)	7-35
3	Grease	7-16	10	Engine Oil Filter	7-22
4	Grease	7-18	11	Fuel Filter	7-48
5	Hydraulic Oil	7-29	12	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Swing Device)	7-36
6	Gear Oil (Travel Device)	7-24	13	Air Cleaner Element	7-51
7	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Suction)	7-31	14	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Air Breather)	7-37

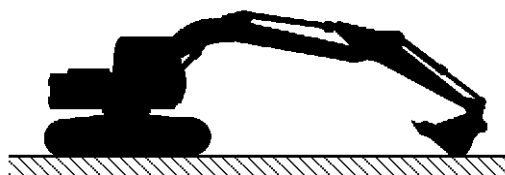


## MAINTENANCE

### PREPARE MACHINE FOR MAINTENANCE

Before performing the maintenance procedures given in the following chapters, park the machine as described below, unless otherwise specified.

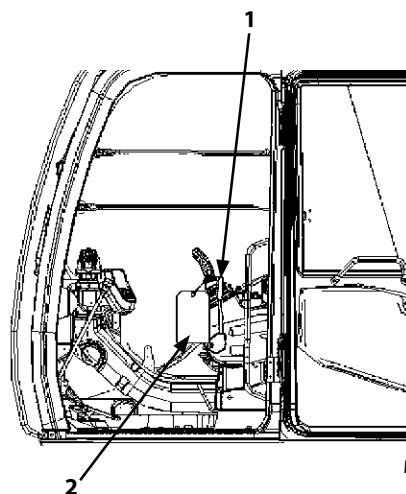
1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.



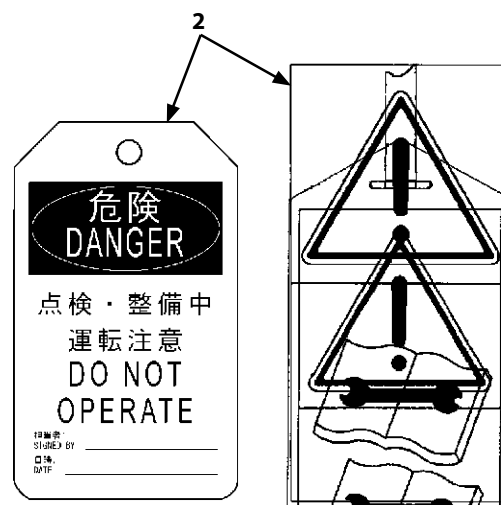
M1CC-07-002

**IMPORTANT: The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.**

4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
5. Turn the key switch OFF. Remove the key from the key switch. (If maintenance must be performed with engine running, do not leave machine unattended.)
6. Pull pilot control shut-off lever (1) to the LOCK position.
7. Before performing any work on the machine, attach a tag (2) on the right control lever.



M1V1-07-001



SS3076175

SS2045102

# MAINTENANCE


## HOOD AND ACCESS COVERS

ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

### ⚠ WARNING:

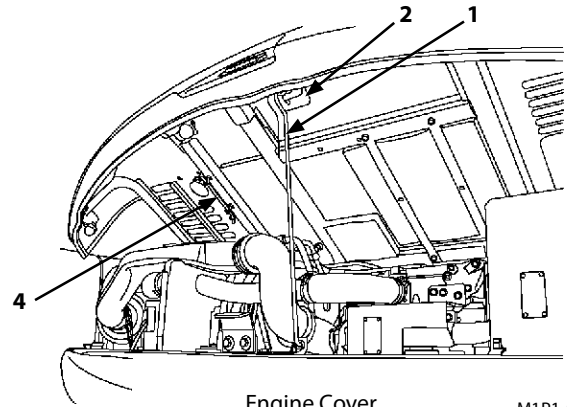
- Do not keep the hood and access covers open when the machine is parked on a slope, or while the wind is blowing hard. The hood or access covers may close accidentally, possibly resulting in personal injury.
- When opening or closing the hood and access covers, take extra care not to catch fingers between the base machine and the hood or access covers.

- When the engine access cover is opened, raise the cover until stay (1) is secured with catch (2).

 **NOTE:** Work on the engine only after providing a safe footing such as a stepladder. In case working on the engine is required, remove stay (1) from catch (2). While raising the engine access cover, insert stay (4) into holder (5) to secure stay (4) to catch (3).

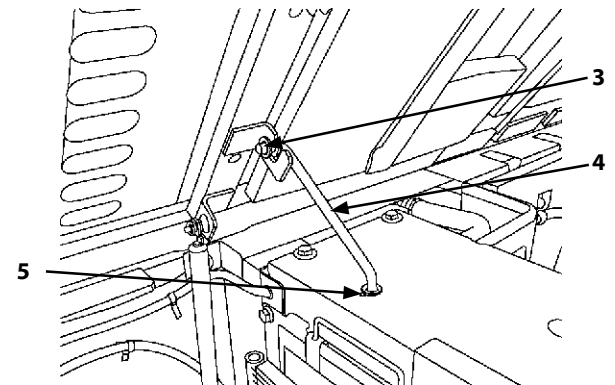
Be sure to close the engine access cover only after inserting stay (1) into catch (2).

- After opening the right and/or left access cover, be sure to secure the cover by inserting rod (7) into frame lock hole (6).



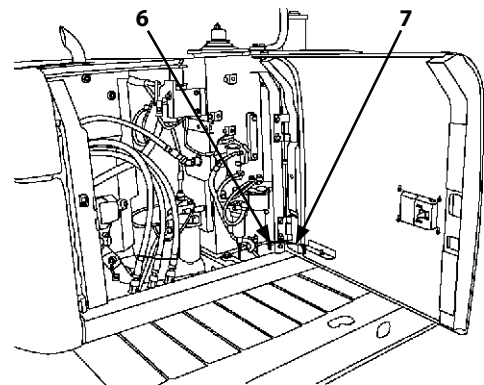
Engine Cover

M1P1-07-030



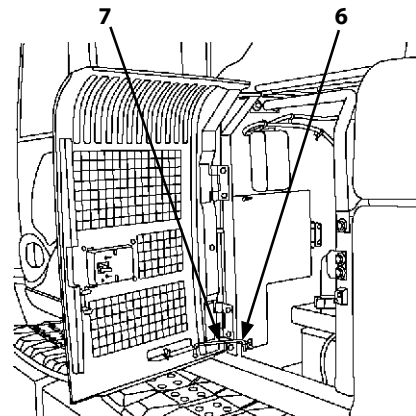
Engine Cover

M1P1-07-031



Right Cover

M1P1-07-013



Left Cover

M1P1-07-029

# MAINTENANCE

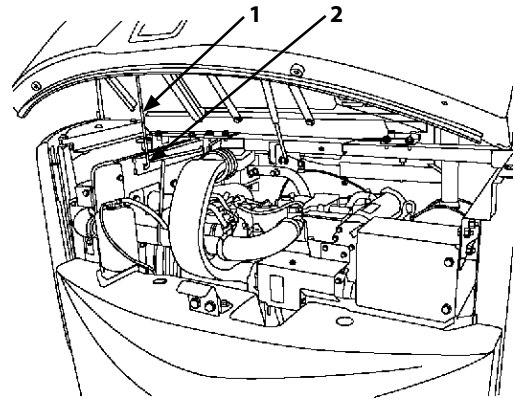
## HOOD AND ACCESS COVERS

ZX75US-3, 85USB-3



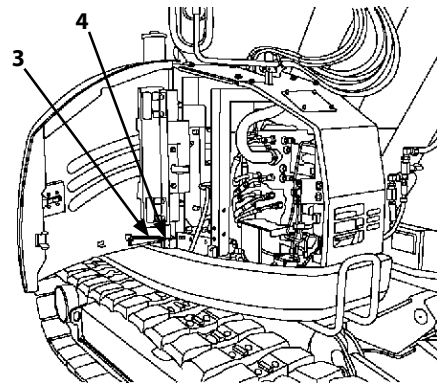
### WARNING:

- Do not keep the hood and access covers open when the machine is parked on a slope, or while the wind is blowing hard. The hood or access covers may close accidentally, possibly resulting in personal injury.
  - When opening or closing the hood and access covers, take extra care not to catch fingers between the base machine and the hood or access covers.
- 
- When the engine access cover is opened, raise the cover until stay (1) is secured with catch (2).
  - Be sure to close the engine access cover only after inserting stay (1) into catch (2).
  - After opening the front-right, rear-right and/or left access cover, be sure to secure the cover by inserting rod (3) into frame lock hole (4).



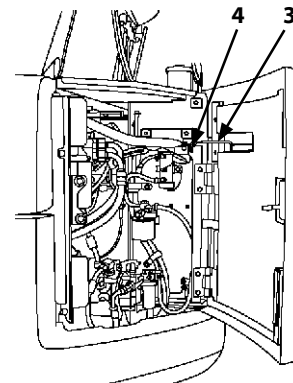
Engine Cover

M1P1-07-005



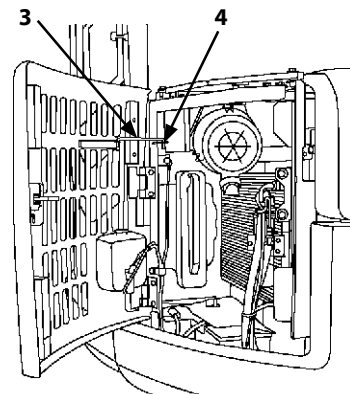
Front-Right Cover

M1P1-07-008



Rear-Right Cover

M1P1-07-003



Left Cover


M1P1-07-001

## MAINTENANCE

### PERIODIC REPLACEMENT OF PARTS

To ensure safe operation, be sure to conduct periodic inspection of the machine. In addition, the parts listed below, if defective, may pose serious safety/fire hazards. It is very difficult to gauge the extent of deterioration, fatigue, or weakening of the parts listed below simply by visual inspection alone. For this reason, replace these parts at the intervals shown in the table below. However, if any of these parts are found to be defective, replace before starting operation, regardless of the interval. Also, when replacing hoses, check the clamps for deformation, cracks, or other deterioration, and replace as necessary. Be sure to perform periodic inspection of all hoses, as shown below, and replace or retighten any defective parts found, as necessary. Consult your authorized dealer for correct replacement.

Periodic Replacement Parts		Replacement Intervals	
Engine	Fuel hose (Fuel tank to Supply pump)	Every 2 years	
	Oil filter hose (Engine to oil filter)	Every 2 years	
	Heater hose (Heater to engine)	Every 2 years	
Hydraulic System	Base Machine	Pump suction hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Pump delivery hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Swing hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Travel high pressure hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
	Front Attachment	Boom cylinder line hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Arm cylinder line hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Bucket cylinder line hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
	Seat belt		Every 3 years
	Clear hatch (If equipped)		Every 5 years

 **NOTE:** Be sure to replace seals, such as O-rings and gaskets, when replacing hoses.

#### IMPORTANT:

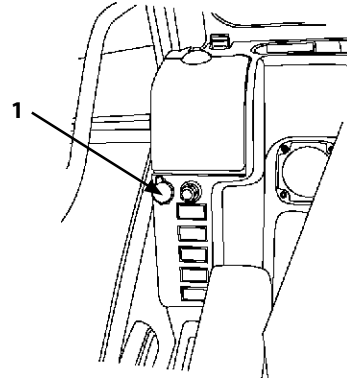
- **Replace the clear hatch with a new one every 5 years even if undamaged. In case it was remarkably damaged or has received severe shock loads, replace it even if it has been not in use for 5 years.**
- **When cleaning the clear hatch, use a neutral detergent. If acidic or alkaline detergent is used, the clear hatch may become discolored or crack.**
- **Keep organic solvent away from the clear hatch. Failure to do so may cause the clear hatch to become discolored or crack.**

## MAINTENANCE

---

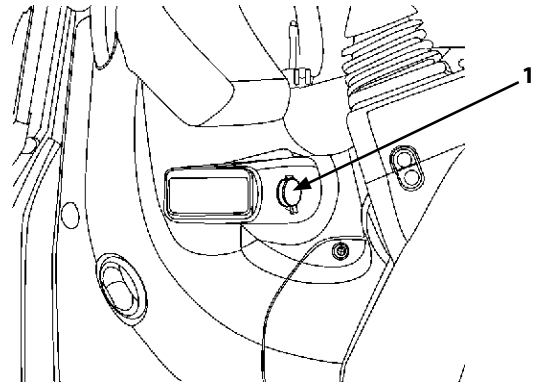
### USE ELECTRICAL OUTLET

When using an inspection lamp during maintenance work, use electrical outlet (1) provided in the position shown in the figure.



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-057



ZX85USB-3


M1P1-07-058

# MAINTENANCE

## MAINTENANCE GUIDE

### A. GREASING (See Page 7-16)

Parts		Quantity	Interval (hours)						
			8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000
1. Front Joint Pins	Bucket	4	★			★★			
	Link Pins	4	★			★★			
	Others	8	★			★★			
2. Swing Bearing		2							
3. Swing Internal Gear		1					★ ★ ★		
4. Blade Joint Pins		4							

 **NOTE:** ★ Maintenance required when operating in water or mud and under extremely severe condition.  
 ★★ Maintenance required only during first time check.  
 ★★★ Check and add grease.

**IMPORTANT:** Grease bucket and link pivots every day until break-in operation (50 hours) is complete. When the bucket joint boss end faces are not finished with WC thermal spraying, grease the bucket two joint pin sections at an interval of every 250 hours.

### B. ENGINE (See Page 7-21)

Parts		Quantity	Interval (hours)						
			8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000
1. Engine Oil	Oil Level Check	1							
2. Engine Oil	Change	12.0 L (3.2 US gal)							
3. Engine Oil Filter	Replacement	1							


### C. TRANSMISSION (See Page 7-24)

Parts		Quantity	Interval (hours)						
			8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000
1. Travel Reduction Gear	Oil Level Check	2							
	Change	1.2 L × 2 (1.3 US qt × 2)							

## MAINTENANCE

### D. HYDRAULIC SYSTEM (See Page 7-26)

Parts	Quantity	Interval (hours)									
		8	50	100	250	300	500	1000	1500	2500	5000
1. Check Hydraulic Oil Level	1										
2. Drain Hydraulic Oil Tank Sump	1										
3. Change Hydraulic Oil	100 L (26.4 US gal)							*	*	*	*
4. Suction Filter Cleaning	1	When changing hydraulic oil									
5. Replace Hydraulic Oil Tank Filter	1					**	*	*			
6. Replace Pilot Oil Filter	1										
7. Replace Swing Drain Filter Element	1										
8. Replace Air Breather Element	1										
9. Check Hoses and Lines	for leaks										
	for cracks, bend, etc.										

 **NOTE:** \* Changing interval differs according to the brand of hydraulic oil used, kind of filter element or average attachment operating availability. Refer to the "changing intervals of hydraulic oil and full flow filter element" on page 7-28.  
\*\* While demolition Work.

### E. FUEL SYSTEM (See Page 7-43)

Tank capacity 135 L (35.7 US gal)

Parts	Quantity	Interval (hours)						
		8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000
1. Drain Fuel Tank Sump	1							
2. Check Water Separator	1							
3. Replace Fuel Filter Element	1							
4. Clean Fuel Solenoid Pump Strainer	1							
5. Check Fuel Hoses	for leaks, cracks, etc.							
	for cracks, bend, etc.							


### F. AIR CLEANER (See Page 7-51)

Parts	Quantity	Interval (hours)							
		8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000	
1. Air Cleaner Outer Element	Cleaning	1	(Or when indicator lit)						
2. Air Cleaner Outer and Inner Elements	Replacement	1	After cleaning 6 times or 1 year						

## MAINTENANCE

### G. COOLING SYSTEM (See Page 7-53)

Parts		Quantity	Interval (hours)						
			8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000
1. Check Coolant Level		1							
2. Check and Adjust Fan Belt Tension		1		★★					
3. Change Coolant		10 L (2.6 US gal)	Twice a year * <sub>1</sub>						
4. Clean Radiator Interior		1	When Changing Coolant						
5. Clean Radiator, Oil Cooler and Inter Cooler Core	Outside	1					* <sub>2</sub>		
	Inside	1	When Changing Coolant						
6. Clean Oil Cooler, Radiator and Inter Cooler Front Screen		1					* <sub>2</sub>		
7. Clean Air Conditioner Condenser		1					* <sub>2</sub>		

 **NOTE:** ★★ Maintenance required only during first time check.

\*<sub>1</sub> When genuine Hitachi coolant is used, change every two years or 4000 operating hours, whichever comes first.


\*<sub>2</sub> Shorten the maintenance interval when the machine is operated in dusty areas.

**IMPORTANT:** Use fresh water or normal tap water as a coolant. Do not use strong acid or alkaline water.  
Use the coolant with genuine Hitachi Long-Life Coolant (LLC) mixed by 30 to 50 %.

### H. ELECTRICAL SYSTEM (See Page 7-58)

### I. MISCELLANEOUS (See Page 7-65)

Parts		Quantity	Interval (hours)						
			8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000
1. Check Bucket Teeth for Wear and Looseness		—							
2. Change Bucket		—	As required						
3. Convert Bucket Connection Into Face Shovel		—	As required						
4. Adjust Bucket Linkage		1	As required						
5. Remove Travel Levers		2	As required						
6. Check and Replace Seat Belt		1		Every 3 years (Replace)					
7. Check Windshield Washer Fluid Level		1	As required						
8. Check Track Sag		2							
9. Air Conditioner Filter	Circulating Air Filter	Cleaning	1						
		Replacement	1	After cleaning 6 times or so					
	Fresh Air Filter	Cleaning	1						
		Replacement	1	After cleaning 6 times or so					
10. Check Air Conditioner		—							
11. Clean Cab Floor		—	As required						
12. Check Injection Nozzle		—					*		
13. Retighten Cylinder Head Bolt		—	*As required						
14. Inspect and Adjust Valve Clearance		—					*		
15. Check Fuel Injection Timing		—	*As required						
16. Check Starter and Alternator		—					*		
17. Change and Replace EGR Device		—	*As required						
18. Measure Engine Compression Pressure		—					*		
19. Check Tightening Torque of Bolts and Nuts		—		★★					

 **NOTE:** ★★ Maintenance required only during first time check.


\* Contact your authorized dealer for maintenance.



## MAINTENANCE

Brand Names of Recommended Grease

Where to be applied	Bucket, Arm and Boom, Swing Gear, Swing Bearing, etc.	
Manufacturer	-20 to 40 °C (-4 to 104 °F)	
Nippon Koyu	SEP 2	*1
British Petroleum	BP Energrease	LS-EP2
Caltex Oil	Multifax	EP2
Esso	Beacon	EP2
Idemitsu Kosan	Daphne Coronex Grease	EP2
Mobil Oil	Mobilux	EP2
Nippon Oil	Epinoc Grease	AP2
Shell Oil	Shell Alvania	EP2 *2

 **NOTE:** The machine shipped from the factory is filled with lubricants marked with     .

- \*1 Front Joint Pin and Swing Bearing
- \*2 Swing Gear

### Recommended Engine Oil

Brand Names of Recommended Engine Oil


Kind of Oil	Engine Oil	
Application	Engine Crank Case	
Air Temp.	-20 to 40 °C (-4 to 104 °F)	
Manufacturer		JASO
Hitachi	Super wide DH-1 10W30	DH-1

**IMPORTANT:** Use only genuine Hitachi engine oil as shown below or engine oil equivalent to DH-1 specified in JASO. Failure to do so may deteriorate the engine performance and/or shorten the engine service life. Please be noted that all engine failures caused by using engine oil other than specified are excluded from Hitachi Warranty Policy. Use genuine Hitachi engine oil Super wide DH-1 15W40 when fresh air temperature is beyond 40 °C (104 °F). Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer for the unclear points.

## MAINTENANCE


### Brand Names of Recommended Oil

Application	Swing and Travel Reduction Gear	
Kind of Oil	Gear oil	
Air Temp.	-20 to 40 °C (-4 to 104 °F)	
Manufacturer	BP Gear oil	SAE90EP
British Petroleum		
Caltex Oil	Universal Thuban	SAE 90
Esso	Esso Gear Oil	80W-90, 85W-90
Idemitsu Kosan	Apollo Gear	HE90
Mobil Oil	Mobilube	GX90
Nippon Oil	Gear Lube SP90 SP80W-90	(Swing and travel reduction device) *1 SP80W-90(Pump Transmission 'only')
Shell Oil	Shell Spirax	EP90
Remarks	API GL 4 Class	

 **NOTE:** The machine shipped from the factory is filled with oil marked   .  
\*1 Gear oil for swing and travel reduction device  
 Engine/gear oil can be used for pump transmission.

### Brand Names of Recommended Hydraulic Oil

Kind of Lubricant	Hydraulic Oil					
Where to be applied	Hydraulic System					
Change Interval	5000 hours		2500 hours		1500 hours	
Environmental Temp.	-20 to 40 °C (-4 to 104 °F)	-10 to 40 °C (14 to 104 °F)	-20 to 40 °C (-4 to 104 °F)	-10 to 40 °C (14 to 104 °F)	-20 to 40 °C (-4 to 104 °F)	-10 to 40 °C (14 to 104 °F)
Manufacturer	Super EX 46HN		Super Hydro 46 WRHU			
Hitachi						
Idemitsu Kosan						
British Petroleum					Bartran HV46	
Caltex Oil						Rando Oil HD46
Texaco INC.						Rando Oil HD46
Chevron U.S.A INC.						Chevron AW46
Esso						NUTO H46
Mobil Oil						DTE 25
Shell Oil				Tellus Oil S46		Tellus Oil 46
Remarks	Anti-wear type hydraulic oil					

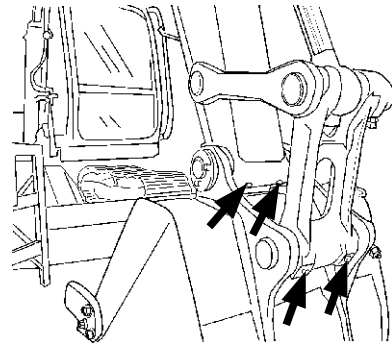
 **NOTE:** Use proper hydraulic oil in accordance with the atmospheric temperature.  
 The machine shipped from the factory is filled with oil marked   .  
 When the atmospheric temperature is between -40 °C and +20 °C: Use the proper hydraulic oil having high and low temperature characteristics by referring to the values shown below.  
 Low Temperature Viscosity: Less than 4000 cSt at -40 °C  
 High Temperature Viscosity: More than 6.5 cSt at +80 °C  
 The above values are approximately equivalent to ISO viscosity grade #22. However, low temperature viscosity will differ depending on each product. Contact each hydraulic oil manufacture directly.  
 When the atmospheric temperature is below -40 °C: Contact your authorized dealer.

# MAINTENANCE

## A. GREASING

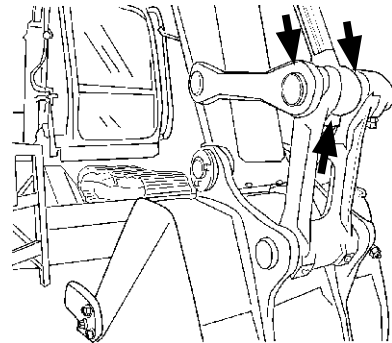
### 1 Front Joint Pins

• Bucket --- every 250 hours



M1CD-07-003

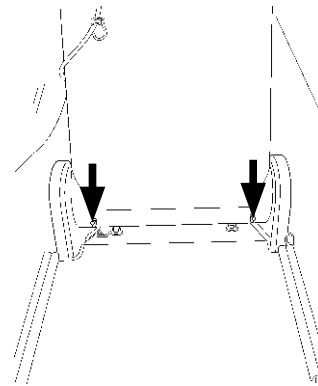
• Link Pins --- every 500 hours



M1CD-07-003

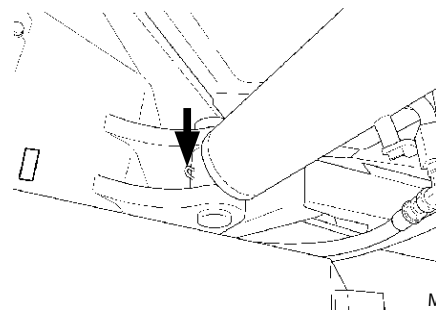
Others --- every 500 hours

• Boom Foot

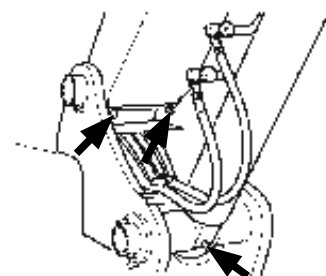


M1CG-07-006

• Boom Cylinder Bottom



M1CG-00-001



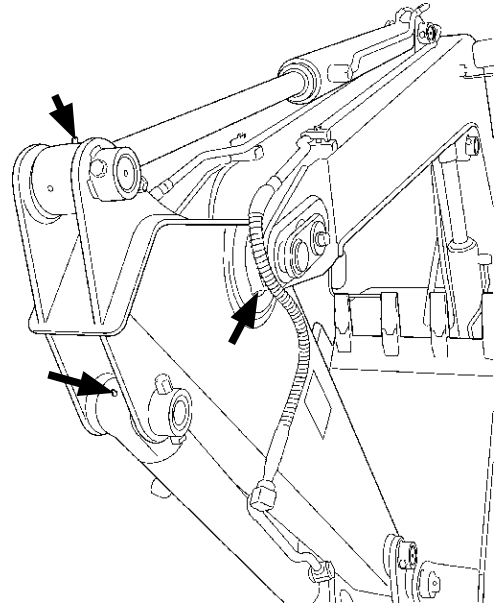
ZX85USB-3

M1CD-07-040

## MAINTENANCE

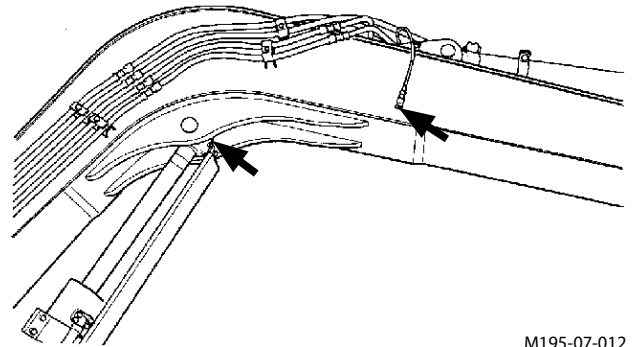
---

- Boom and Arm Joint Pin, Arm Cylinder Rod Pin and Bucket Cylinder Bottom Pin.



M1CG-07-007

- Boom Cylinder Rod Pins and Arm Cylinder Bottom Pin.  
(Centralized greasing system)



M195-07-012

## MAINTENANCE

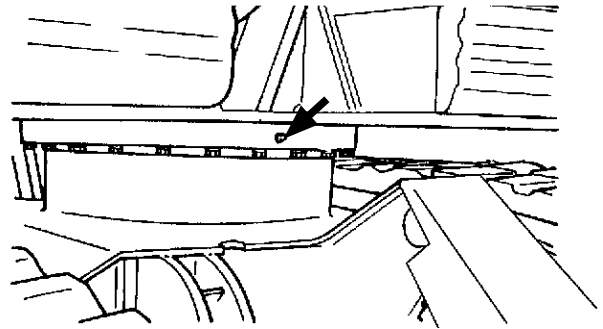
### 2 Swing Bearing --- every 500 hours



**CAUTION:** Lubricating both the swing bearing and gear and rotating the upperstructure must be done by one person. Before you lubricate the swing bearing, clear the area of all persons.

Each time you leave the cab

- Lower the bucket to the ground.
- Stop the engine.
- Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
- Use handrails.



M197-07-012

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.
4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
5. Turn the key switch OFF. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
7. With the upperstructure stationary, apply grease via the two grease fittings.
8. Start the engine. Raise the bucket several inches off the ground and rotate the upperstructure 45° (1/8 turn).
9. Lower the bucket to the ground.
10. Repeat the procedure three times, beginning with step 3.
11. Apply grease to the swing bearing until grease can be seen escaping from the swing bearing seals.  
Grease capacity: 0.20 L (0.21 US qt)
12. Take care not to supply excessive grease.

## MAINTENANCE

### 3 Swing Internal Gear --- every 500 hours

**CAUTION:** Adding or changing swing internal gear grease and rotating the upperstructure must be done by one person. Before you start, clear the area of all persons.

Each time you leave the cab

- Lower the bucket to the ground.
- Stop the engine.
- Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
- Use handrails.

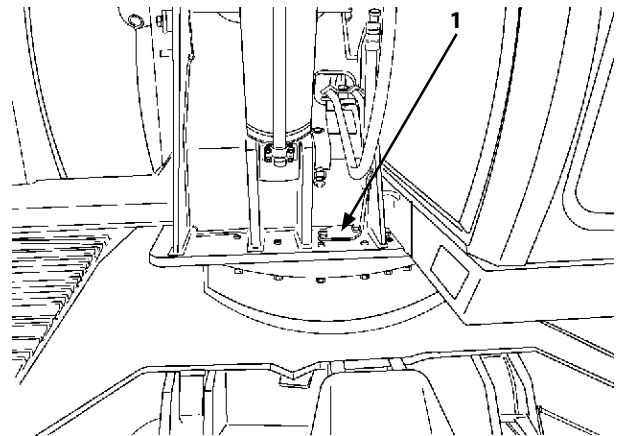
1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.
4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
5. Turn the key switch OFF. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
7. Open the tool box cover on the upperstructure and remove cover (1).
8. Grease must be to the top of all internal gear teeth of the swing bearing and be free of contamination. Add approximately 0.5 kg (1.1 lb) of grease, if required. If the grease is contaminated, remove grease and replace with clean grease.

**IMPORTANT:** If water or mud is found in the swing gear area, see **Operating in Water or Mud** in the "Driving the Machine" section.

9. Install cover (1).
10. If grease shows any sign of water or mud, replace all the grease on the internal gear.

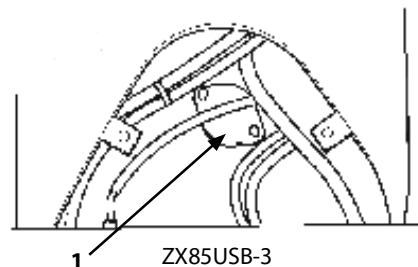
Remove cover from the bottom of the swing gear housing, located near the center joint.

Grease capacity: 4.4 L (1.2 US gal)



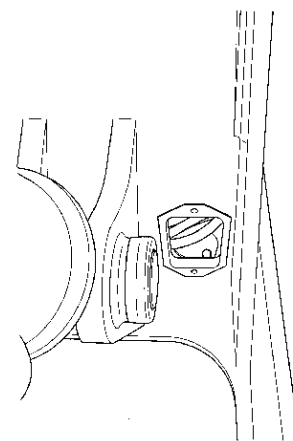
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1CD-01-002



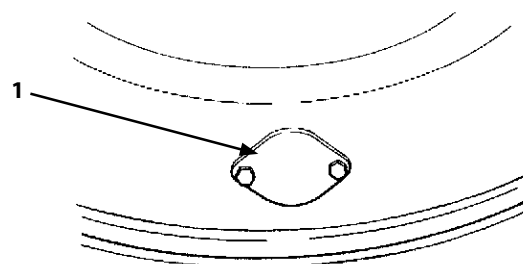
ZX85USB-3

M1CD-07-041



ZX75US-3

M1CG-07-001

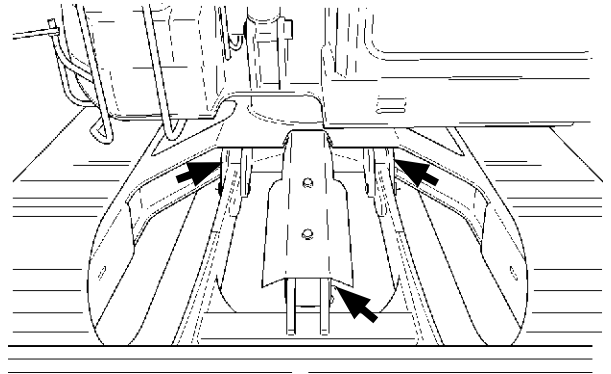


M157-07-161

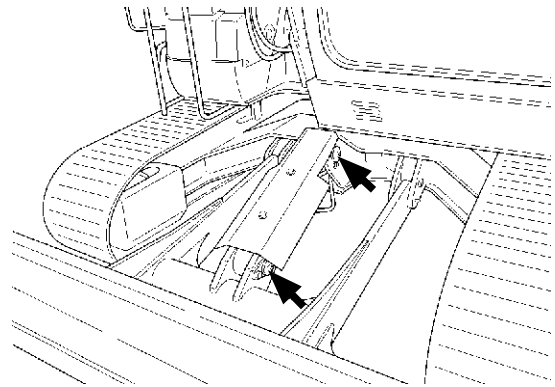
## MAINTENANCE

### 4 Maintenance Blade Joint Pins --- every 500 hours

- Blade joint pins
- Blade cylinder rod/bottom pins



M1CC-00-001



M1CC-07-021


# MAINTENANCE

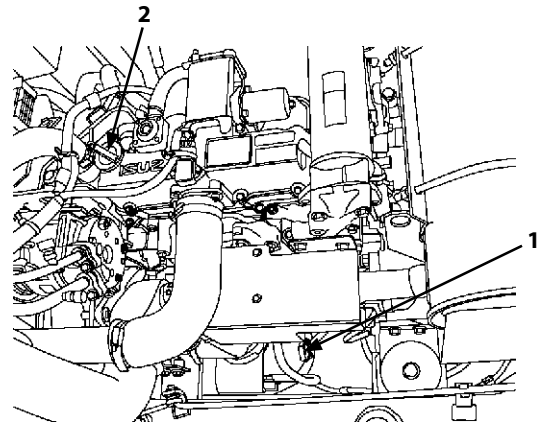
## B. ENGINE

### 1 Engine Oil Level --- check daily

**IMPORTANT:** For most accurate readings, check the oil level every day before starting the machine. Be sure the machine is on a level surface.

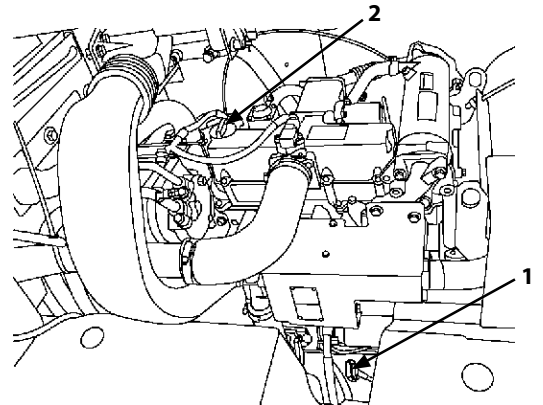
1. Remove dipstick (1). Wipe oil off with a clean cloth. Reinsert dipstick (1).
2. Remove dipstick (1) again. Read level. Oil level must be between the circle marks.
3. If necessary, add oil via oil filler cap (2). Be sure to use only recommended oil (see Recommended Engine Oil Chart).

 **NOTE:** Checking the oil level immediately after shut down will result in inaccurate readings. Be sure to allow the oil to settle for at least 10 minutes before checking.



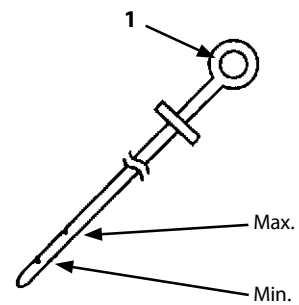
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-028



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-006



M178-07-011



## MAINTENANCE

### 2 Change Engine Oil --- every 500 hours

### 3 Replace Engine Oil Filter --- every 500 hours

1. Run the engine to warm oil.  
Do not run the engine until oil is hot.
2. Park the machine on a level surface.
3. Lower the bucket to the ground.
4. Turn the auto-idle switch off.
5. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
6. Turn the key switch OFF. Remove the key from the key switch.
7. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.

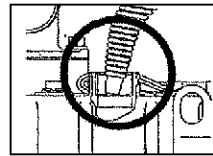
**⚠ CAUTION: Engine oil may be hot just after operation. Take extra care to avoid burns.**

**IMPORTANT: Take care not to spill any oil when re-filling engine oil. Wiper to remove spilled oil if any. Failure to do so may cause oil to ignite, possibly resulting in a fire.**

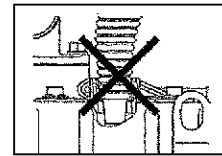
8. Prepare a container to receive the drain oil.  
Oil Pan Drain Oil Capacity: Approx. 20 L (5.3 US gal)  
Oil Filter Drain Oil Capacity: Approx. 0.2 L (0.2 US qt)

**📌 NOTE:** Actual drain oil from oil filter (3) will be approx. 50 mL. Arrange a container with a similar capacity as one placed under oil filter (3) to make draining oil easier.

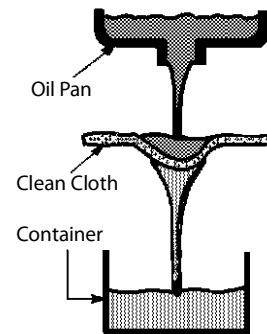
9. Remove drain plug (4). Allow oil to drain through a clean cloth into a 20 liter container.
10. After all oil has drained, inspect cloth for any debris such as small pieces of metal.
11. Install and tighten drain plug (4).



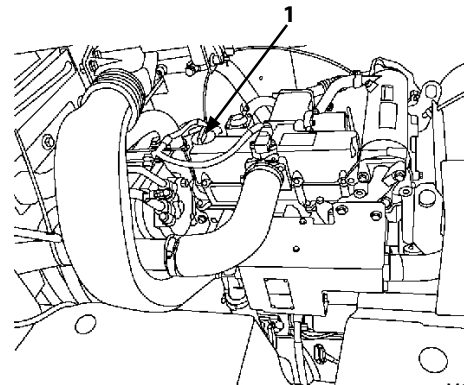
Pour slowly by making sure not to block the oil port.



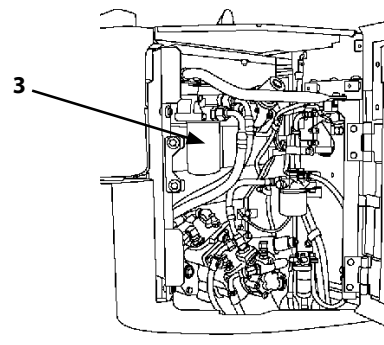
M1CD-07-047



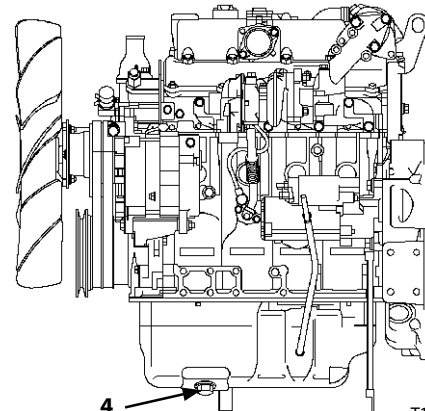
M104-07-010



M1P1-07-006



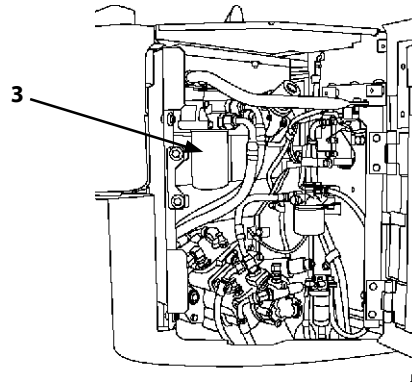
M1P1-07-004



T1P1-01-02-003

## MAINTENANCE

12. Remove the filter cartridges of engine oil filter (3) by turning it counterclockwise with the filter wrench.
13. Clean the filter gasket (O-ring) contact area on the engine.
14. Apply a thin film of clean oil to the gasket (O-ring) of new filter (3).
15. Install new filter (3). Turn the filter cartridge clockwise by hand until the gasket touches the contact area. Be sure not to damage the gasket when installing filter. (3)
16. Tighten engine oil filter (3) 2/3 to 1 turn more using the filter wrench.  
Be careful not to overtighten.

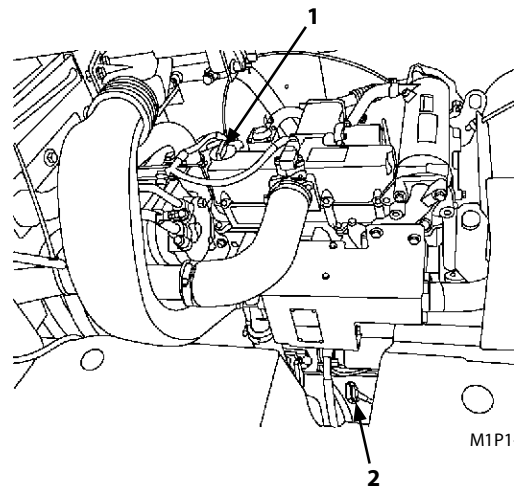


M1P1-07-004

17. Remove oil filler cap (1). Fill the engine with recommended oil. Check that oil level is between the circle marks on the dipstick after 15 minutes.

Engine oil capacity: 12.0 L (3.2 US gal)

18. Install oil filler cap (1).
19. Start the engine. Run the engine at slow idle for 5 minutes.
20. Check that the engine oil pressure indicator on the monitor panel goes out immediately. If not, stop the engine immediately and find the cause.
21. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
22. Check for any leakage at the drain plug.
23. Check oil level on dipstick (2).



M1P1-07-006

## MAINTENANCE

### C. TRANSMISSION

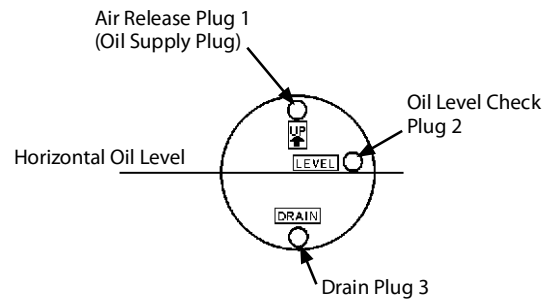
#### 1 Travel Reduction Gear

##### Check Oil Level --- every 250 hours

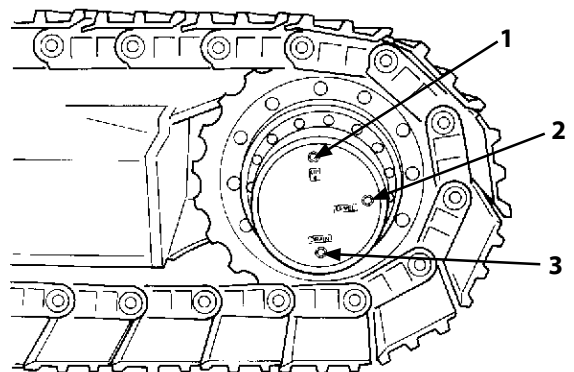
1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Rotate the travel motor until the imaginary line through plug (1) and plug (3) is vertical.
3. Lower the bucket to the ground.
4. Turn the auto-idle switch off.
5. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
6. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
7. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.

**⚠ WARNING: Keep body and face away from the air release plug. Gear oil is hot just after operation. Wait for gear oil to cool and then gradually loosen the air release plug to release pressure.**

8. After gear oil has cooled, slowly loosen air release plug (1) to release pressure.
9. Remove air release plug (1) and oil level check plug (2). Oil must be up to the bottom of hole.
10. If necessary, add oil until oil flows out of oil level check plug (2) hole. (See gear oil chart)
11. Wrap the plug threads with sealing-type tape. Install plugs (1) and (2). Tighten plugs (1) and (2) to 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 36 lbf·ft).
12. Check the gear oil level in the other travel reduction gear.



M107-07-096



M1CC-07-019

## MAINTENANCE

### Change Gear Oil --- every 2000 hours

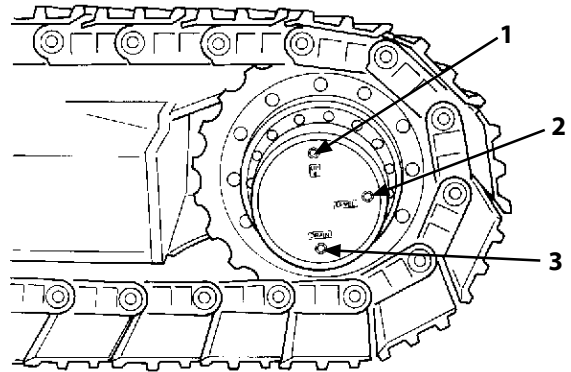
1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Rotate the travel motor until the imaginary line through plug (1) and plug (3) is vertical.
3. Lower the bucket to the ground.
4. Turn the auto-idle switch off.

**IMPORTANT: The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.**

5. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
6. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
7. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.

**⚠ WARNING: Keep body and face away from the air release plug. Gear oil is hot just after operation. Wait for gear oil to cool and then gradually loosen the air release plug to release pressure.**

8. After gear oil has cooled, slowly loosen air release plug (1) to release pressure, and temporarily re-tighten plug (1).
9. Remove drain plug (3) and plug (1), in that order, to drain oil.
10. Clean drain plug (3). Wrap the threads of drain plug (3) with sealing-type tape. Install plug (3). Tighten the plug to 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 36 lbf·ft).
11. Remove oil level check plug (2).
12. Add oil until oil flows out of the oil level check plug hole. (See gear oil chart)
13. Clean plugs (1) and (2). Wrap the threads of oil level check plug (2) and air release plug (1) with sealing-type tape. Reinstall the plugs. Tighten the plugs to 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 36 lbf·ft).
14. Repeat steps 8. to 13. for the other travel reduction gear.



M1CC-07-019

## MAINTENANCE

---

### D. HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

#### INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE OF HYDRAULIC EQUIPMENT



**CAUTION: During operation, the parts of the hydraulic system become very hot. Allow the machine to cool down before beginning inspection or maintenance.**

1. Be sure that the machine is parked on a level, firm surface before servicing hydraulic equipment.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground and stop the engine.
3. Begin servicing hydraulic components only after components, hydraulic oil and lubricants are completely cooled, and after releasing residual pressure.
  - 3.1 Bleed air from the hydraulic oil tank to release internal pressure.
  - 3.2 Allow the machine to cool down.

Note that servicing heated and pressurized hydraulic components may cause hot parts and/or oil to fly off or escape suddenly, possibly resulting in personal injury.
  - 3.3 Keep body parts and face away from plugs or screws when removing them.

Hydraulic components may be pressurized even when cooled.
  - 3.4 Never attempt to service or inspect the travel and swing motor circuits on slopes. They are highly pressurized due to self-weight.
4. When connecting hydraulic hoses and pipes, take special care to keep seal surfaces free from dirt and to avoid damaging them. Keep these precautions in mind:
  - 4.1 Wash hoses, pipes, and the tank interior with a washing liquid and thoroughly wipe it out before reconnecting them.
  - 4.2 Only use O-rings that are free of damage or defects. Be careful not to damage them during reassembly.
  - 4.3 Do not allow high pressure hoses to twist when connecting them. The life of twisted hoses will be shortened considerably.
  - 4.4 Carefully tighten low pressure hose clamps. Do not overtighten them.

## MAINTENANCE

---

5. When adding hydraulic oil, always use the same brand of oil; do not mix brands of oil. As the machine is filled with Super EX 46 HN when it is shipped from the factory, use it as a general rule. When selecting to use another brand of oil listed in the table "Brand names of recommended hydraulic oil", be sure to completely change the oil in the system.
6. Do not use hydraulic oils other than those listed in the table "Brand names of recommended hydraulic oil".
7. Never run the engine without oil in the hydraulic oil tank.

# MAINTENANCE

## BREAKER MAINTENANCE

### Change Hydraulic Oil and Replace Hydraulic Oil Tank Filter

Hydraulic breaker operation subjects the hydraulic system to become contaminated faster and to quickly deteriorate the hydraulic oil. For this reason, hydraulic oil must be changed and the hydraulic oil tank filter must be replaced more often than the machine equipped with a bucket. Failure to do so may result in damage to the breaker, hydraulic oil pump, and other

related hydraulic system components. Recommended changing intervals are shown below. For filter replacement and oil changing intervals are shown below. (For filter replacement and oil changing procedures, refer to the "Hydraulic System" in the "MAINTENANCE" Section.)

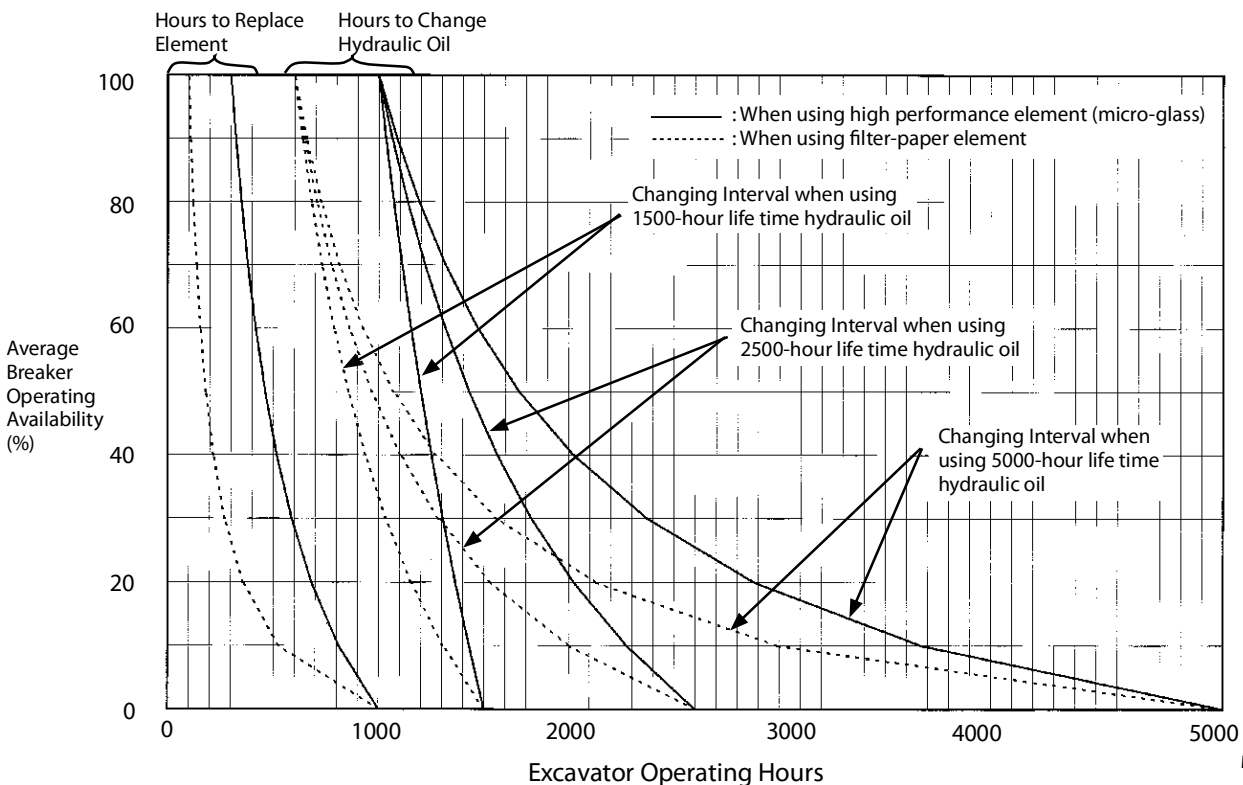
Changing intervals (Hours)

Attachment	Availability	*Hydraulic Oil	Hydraulic Oil Tank Filter Element	**Element Type
Bucket	100%	1500	1000	Standard Filter Paper High Performance Element
		2500		
		5000		
Hydraulic Breaker	100%	600	100	Standard Filter Paper
		1000	300	High Performance Element

\*: Changing intervals differ depending on the brand of hydraulic oil used. Refer to the Hydraulic System in the MAINTENANCE section.

\*\* : Use the high performance element (micro-glass) on excavators engaged in demolition work.

**Changing Intervals (Hours) of Hydraulic Oil and Full Flow Filter Element**



M1U1-05-006

**IMPORTANT:** Use a high performance element (micro-glass) on excavators engaged in demolition work. In case using a filter-paper element is unavoidable, change hydraulic oil and the filter element at the intervals as illustrated with dotted lines.

**NOTE:** Hydraulic oil tank filter restriction indicator is optional. If a filter-paper element is used, this indicator does not operate. (Refer to the Hydraulic System in the Maintenance section.)

## MAINTENANCE

### 1 Check Hydraulic Oil Level --- daily

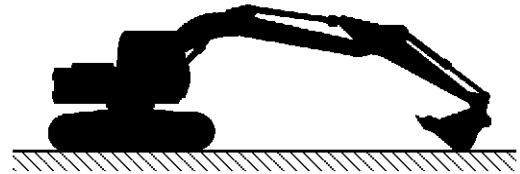
**IMPORTANT:** Never run the engine without oil in hydraulic oil tank.

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Position the machine with the arm cylinder fully retracted and the bucket cylinder fully extended.
3. Lower the bucket to the ground.
4. Turn the auto-idle switch off.
5. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
6. Turn the key switch OFF. Remove the key from the key switch.
7. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
8. Open the access door in front of the main pump. Check oil level with level gauge (1) on hydraulic oil tank. Oil must be between marks on gauge(1). If necessary, add oil.

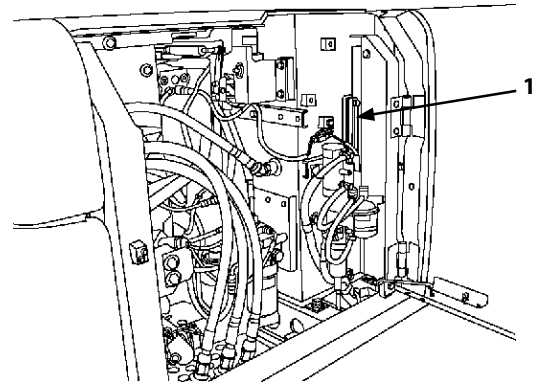
**CAUTION:** The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Push the pressure release button on the tank cap to release pressure, and carefully remove the cap.

To add oil:

9. Push the pressure release button on the air breather to release pressure. Remove the cover.
10. Add oil. Recheck oil level with level gauge (1).
11. Install the cover. Make sure the filter and rod assembly is in correct position.

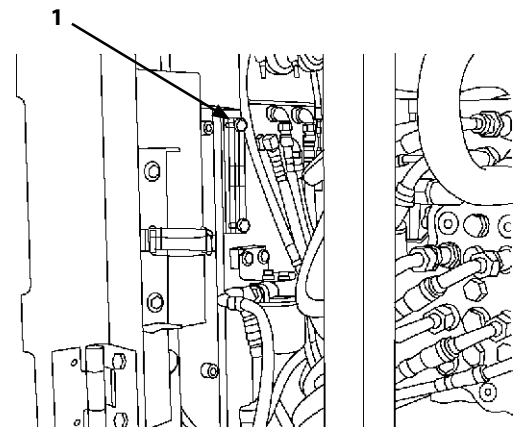


M1CC-07-002



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-014



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-009



## MAINTENANCE

### 2 Drain Hydraulic Oil Tank Sump --- every 250 hours

**IMPORTANT:** Never run the engine without oil in hydraulic oil tank.

1. Park the machine on a level surface with the upperstructure rotated 90° for easier access.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.
4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
5. Turn the key switch OFF. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.

**CAUTION:** The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Push pressure release button (1) on the air breather to release pressure.

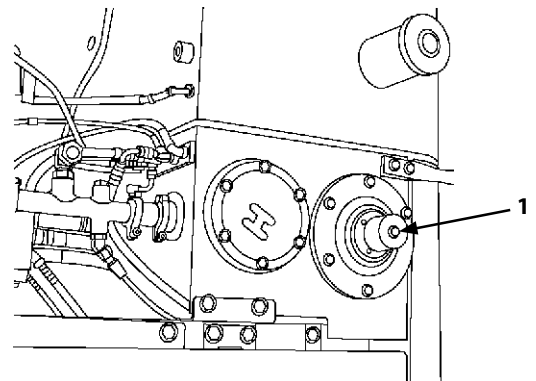
7. Push pressure release button (1) on the air breather to release pressure.

**CAUTION:** Do not loosen drain plug (2) until oil is cool. Hydraulic oil may be hot, potentially causing serious injury.

8. After oil is cool, loosen drain plug (2) to drain water and sediment. Do not remove plug (2) completely, only loosen it enough to drain water and sediment.
9. After draining water and sediment, retighten plug (2).

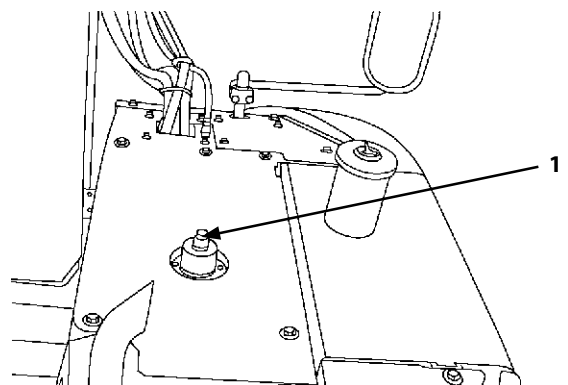


M1CC-07-002



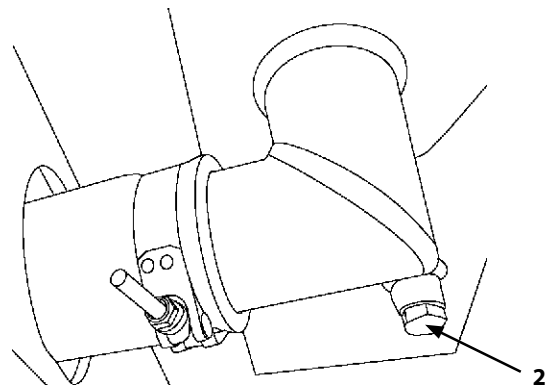
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-012



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-010



M1P1-07-017

## MAINTENANCE

### 3 Change Hydraulic Oil

### 4 Suction Filter Cleaning

--- every 5000 hours, 2500 hours,  
1500 hours or 1000 hours

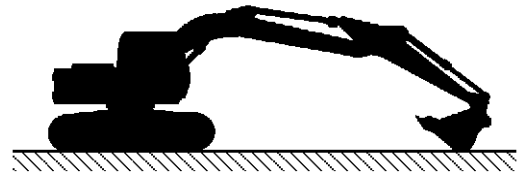
**CAUTION:** Hydraulic oil may be hot just after operation. Wait for oil to cool before starting work.

**IMPORTANT:** Hydraulic oil changing intervals differ according to kind of hydraulic oils used. (See Recommended Oil Chart in this group)

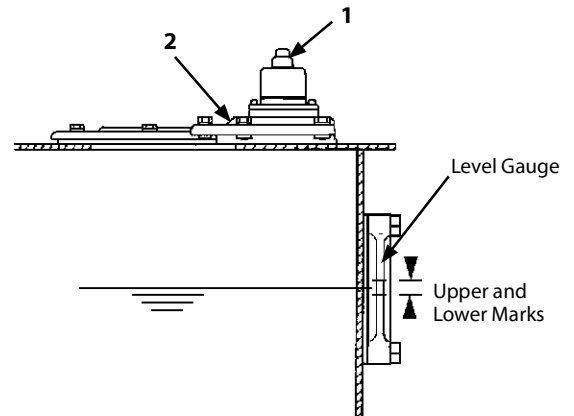
1. Park the machine on a level surface with the upperstructure rotated 90° for easier access.
2. Position the machine with the arm cylinder fully retracted and the bucket cylinder fully extended.
3. Lower the bucket to the ground.
4. Turn the auto-idle switch off.
5. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
6. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
7. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
8. Clean the top of the hydraulic oil tank to keep dirt out of the hydraulic system.

**CAUTION:** The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Push pressure release button (1) on the air breather before removing the air breather.

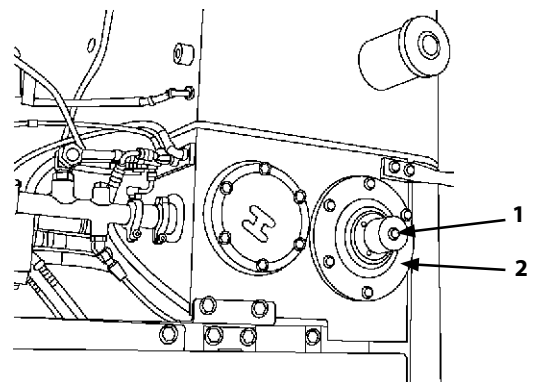
9. Push pressure release button (1) on the air breather.
10. ZX75US-3, 85USB-3:  
Remove the cover on the top of the hydraulic oil tank.
11. Remove cover (2).



M1CC-07-002

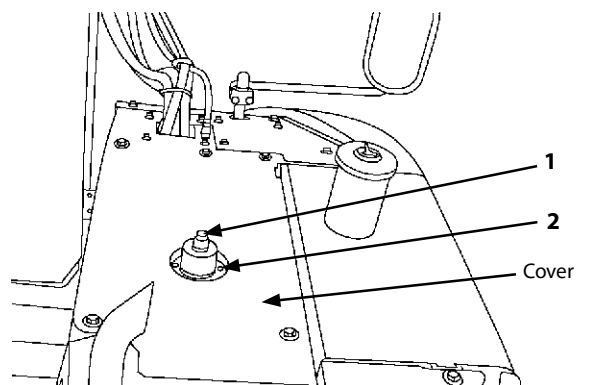


M1CD-07-012



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-012



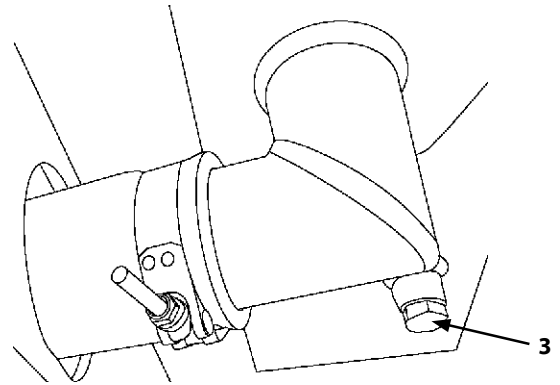
ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-010

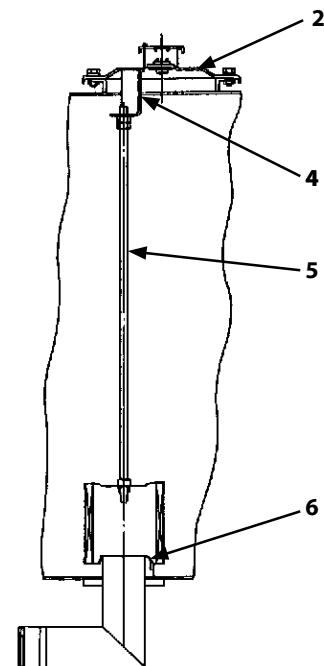
## MAINTENANCE

12. Remove oil using a suction pump. The hydraulic oil tank capacity, up to specified oil level, is approximately 100 liters (26.4 US gal).
13. Remove drain plug (3). Allow oil to drain.
14. Remove suction filter and rod assembly (5).
15. Clean the filter and tank interior. If the filter is to be replaced, install new filter on the rod as shown. Tighten nut to 15 to 20 N·m (1.5 to 2.0 kgf·m, 11.0 to 14.5 lbf·ft).
16. Install filter and rod assembly (5). Make sure the filter is positioned correctly on outlet (6).
17. Replace the hydraulic tank oil filter. (See "Maintenance Every 500 Hours" Section)
18. Clean, install and tighten drain plug (3).
19. Add oil until it is between the marks on the oil level gauge.
20. Before installing cover (2), check that the top end of rod assembly (5) is completely inserted into the hole on support (4) under cover (2). Then, secure cover (2) with bolts.

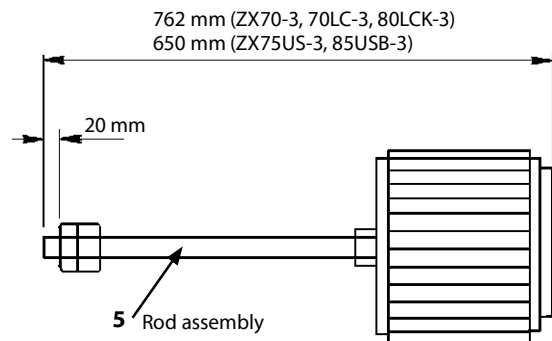
**IMPORTANT:** If the hydraulic pump is not filled with oil, it will be damaged when the engine is started.



M1P1-07-017



M197-07-083



M107-07-070

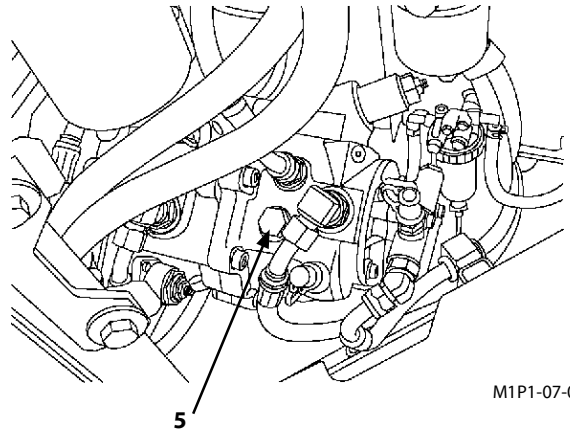
## MAINTENANCE

### Air Bleeding Procedures

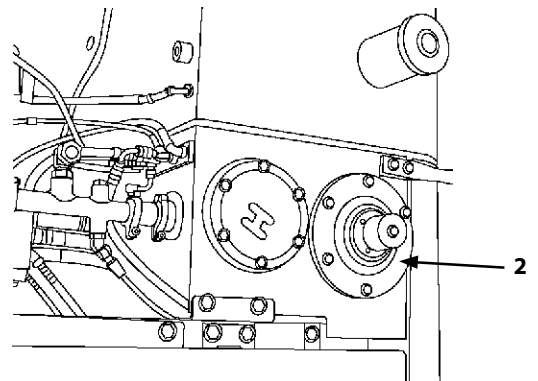
**IMPORTANT: If the hydraulic pump is not filled with oil, it will be damaged when the engine is started.**

The machine is equipped with two main pumps. Bleed air from these pumps after changing hydraulic oil.

1. Remove air bleed plug (5) on each pump.
2. Fill the pump with oil through air bleed plug (5) port on each pump until oil flows out of air bleed plug (5) hole.
3. Temporarily tighten air bleed plug (5) on each pump, start the engine and run at slow idle. Loosen one of air bleed plugs (5) slightly until oil flows from plug port to release trapped air completely. Tighten air bleed plug (5). Repeat this step for the rest of plugs (5).
4. Purge air from the hydraulic system by running the engine at slow idle and operating the control levers slowly and smoothly for 15 minutes.
5. Position the machine as illustrated in the oil level checking procedure.
6. Lower the bucket to the ground.
7. Turn the auto-idle switch off.
8. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
9. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
10. Check the hydraulic oil tank gauge. Remove cover (2) to add oil if necessary.

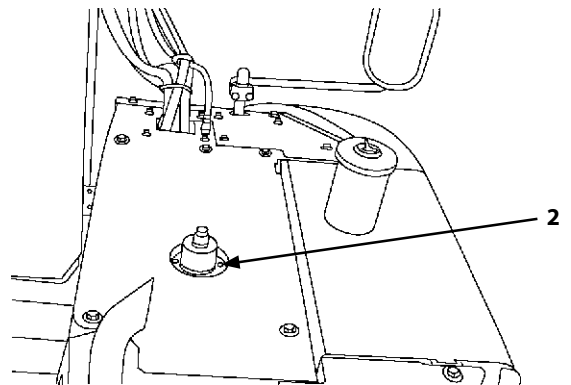


M1P1-07-011



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-012



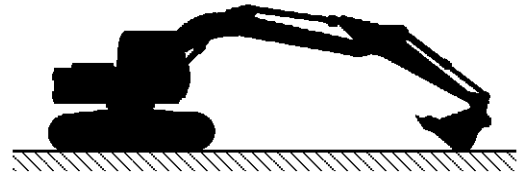
ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-010

## MAINTENANCE

### 5 Replace Hydraulic Oil Tank Filter --- every 1000 hours

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.
4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
5. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.



M1CC-07-002

**CAUTION:** The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Push the pressure release button on the air breather before removing the air breather.

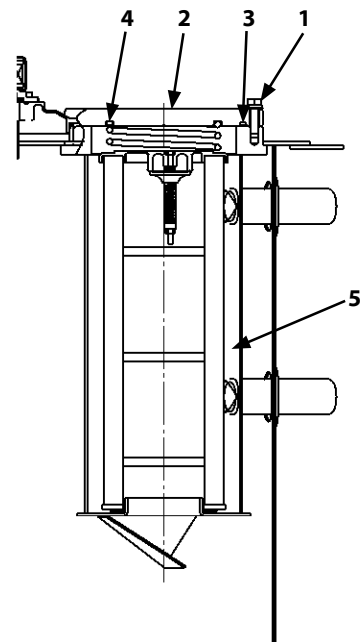
7. Push the pressure release button on the hydraulic oil tank to release pressure.

**NOTE:** There is spring (4) tension under cover (2). Hold down cover (2) when removing last two bolts (1).

8. Hold down filter cover (2) against light spring (4) load when removing last two bolts (1). Remove filter cover (2).

9. Remove spring (4) and element (5).

**NOTE:** Remove element (5) and inspect for metal particles and debris in the bottom of the filter can. Excessive amounts of brass and steel particles can indicate a failed hydraulic pump, motor, valve or an impending failure. A rubber type of material can indicate cylinder packing failure.



M175-07-035

10. Discard element (5) and O-ring (3).
11. Install a new element (5) and spring (4).
12. Install filter cover (2) with a new O-ring (3).
13. Install and tighten bolts (1) to 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 36 lbf·ft).

## MAINTENANCE

### 6 Replace Pilot Oil Filter --- every 1000 hours

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.

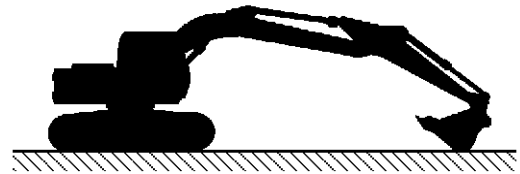
**IMPORTANT:** The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
5. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.

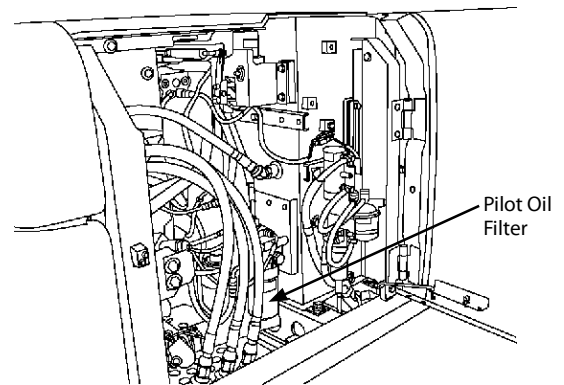
**CAUTION:** The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Push the pressure release button on the air breather before removing the air breather.

7. Remove the filter cartridges of pilot oil filter (2) by turning it counterclockwise with the filter wrench.
8. Clean the filter O-ring contact area on filter head (1).
9. Apply a thin film of clean oil to the gasket of new filter (2).
10. Install new filter (2). Turn the filter cartridge clockwise by hand until the O-ring touches the contact area. Be sure not to damage the O-ring when installing filter (2).

**IMPORTANT:** Do not re-use the filter cartridge.

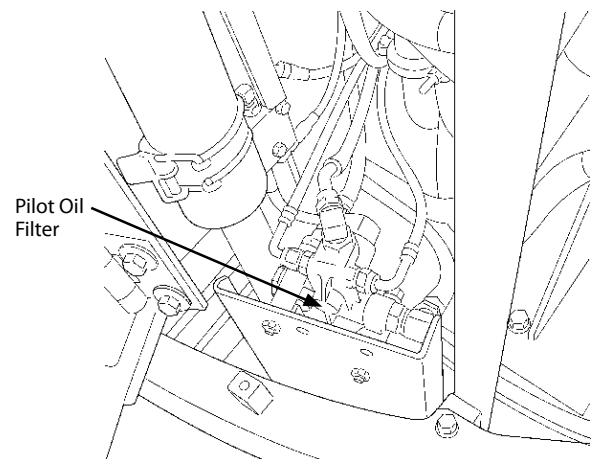


M1CC-07-002



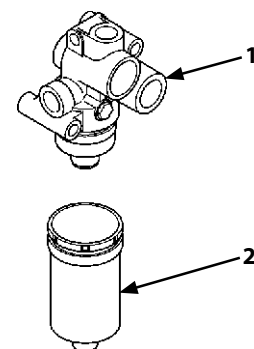
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-014



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1CG-07-010



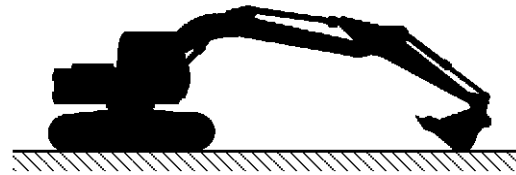
M1P1-07-067

## MAINTENANCE

### 7 Replace Swing Drain Filter Element --- every 5000 hours

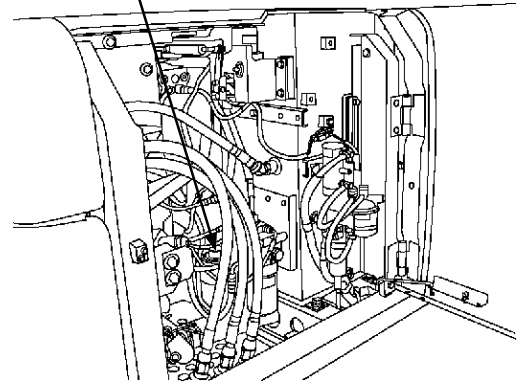
**CAUTION:** Hot hydraulic oil may spout immediately after operation, possibly causing severe burns. Be sure to wait for the oil and components to cool before starting any maintenance and inspection work.

1. Park the machine on solid and level ground with the bucket cylinder fully extended, the arm cylinder fully retracted, and the bucket and the blade (optional) lowered to the ground as illustrated to the right. Stop the engine.
2. Be sure to bleed air from the hydraulic oil tank by pressing the air vent valve on the top of the hydraulic oil tank before replacing the element.
3. Using a filter wrench, turn cartridge type element (swing drain filter) counterclockwise to remove the element.
4. Coat a new cartridge gasket with hydraulic oil. Turn the cartridge clockwise until the gasket comes in contact with the sealing surface.
5. Tighten the cartridge further by 1-1/4 turns using the filter wrench. Take care not to overly tighten the cartridge. Tightening Torque: 8.0 to 10.0 N·m (0.8 to 1 kgf·m)
6. Always beware not to allow water and/or dust to enter the filter.
7. After replacing the filter, bleed air from the pump and check the oil level in the hydraulic oil tank. (Refer to the description on "Bleed Air from Hydraulic System" in (3).) If the machine is operated with air mixed in the circuit, damage to the pump may result.
8. Replace the elements at the regular intervals to maintain the cleanliness of hydraulic oil and to extend the service life of the hydraulic components.



M1CC-07-002

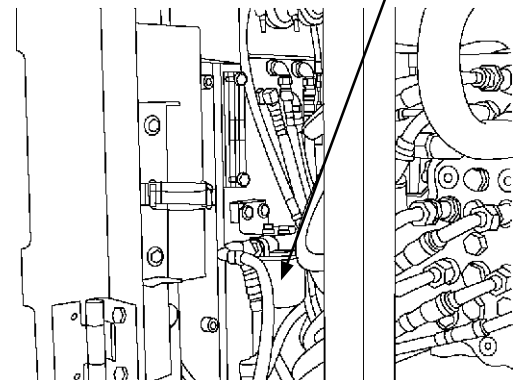
Swing Drain Filter



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-014

Swing Drain Filter



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-009

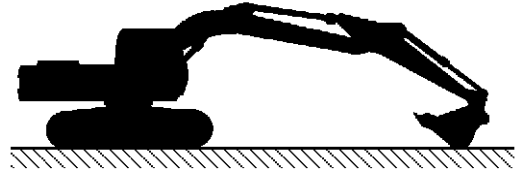
## MAINTENANCE

### 8 Replace Air Breather Element --- every 5000 hours

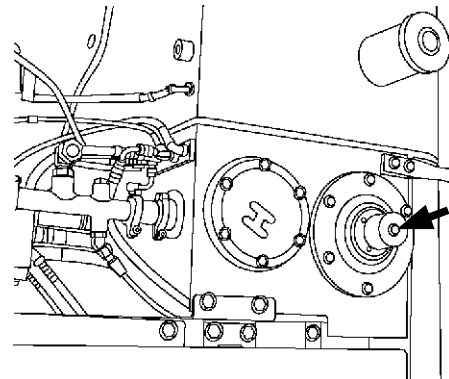
**CAUTION:** Hydraulic oil may be hot just after operation. Hot hydraulic oil may spout, possibly causing severe burns. Be sure to wait for oil to cool before starting work.

#### Replacement Procedures

1. Park the machine on solid and level ground. Fully extend the bucket cylinder, fully retract the arm cylinder, and lower the bucket to the ground as illustrated to the right. Stop the engine.
2. Before replacing element (3), be sure to bleed air pressure from the hydraulic oil tank by pressing the air bleed valve on the hydraulic oil tank.
3. Turn cover (2) clockwise about 1/4 turn. Turn cap (1) counterclockwise to remove it.
4. Turn cover (2) counterclockwise to remove it. Then, remove element (3).
5. Install new element (3). Tighten to install cover (2) until cover (2) comes in contact with element (3). Then, further tighten cover (2) 1/4 turn.
6. Securely tighten cap (1) clockwise by hand. While holding cap (1) by hand so that cap (1) does not rotate, securely tighten cover (2) by rotating counterclockwise 5 to 10 ° by hand.
7. Take care never to allow water and/or contaminant to stay between cover (2) and body (4) (air breathing port).
8. Replace element (3) periodically to keep hydraulic oil clean and to extend hydraulic components service life.

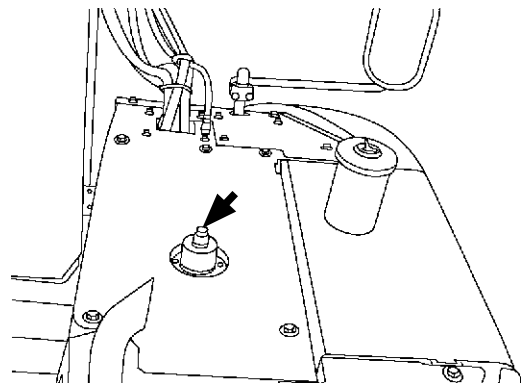


M104-07-021



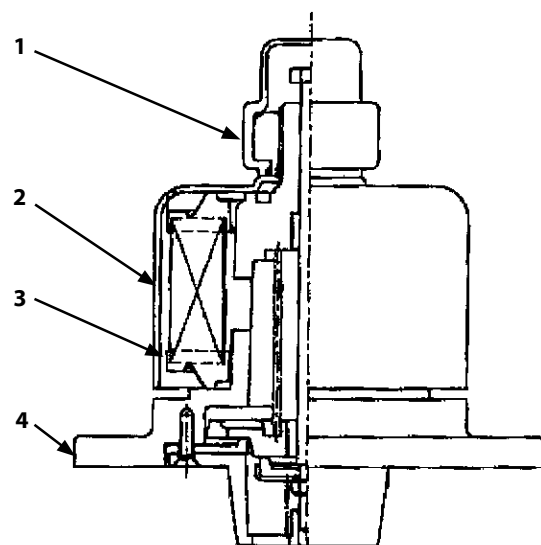
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-012



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-010



M1G6-07-001



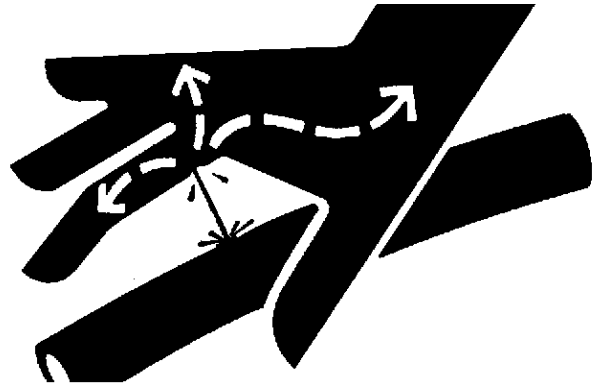
## MAINTENANCE

### 9 Check Hoses and Lines

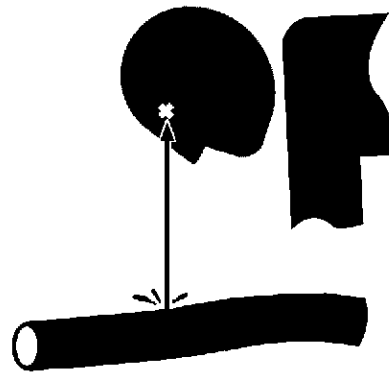
- daily
- every 250 hours

**⚠ CAUTION:** Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. To avoid this hazard, search for leaks with a piece of cardboard. Take care to protect hands and body from high-pressure fluids. If an accident occurs, see a doctor familiar with this type of injury immediately. Any fluid injected into the skin must be surgically removed within a few hours or gangrene may result.

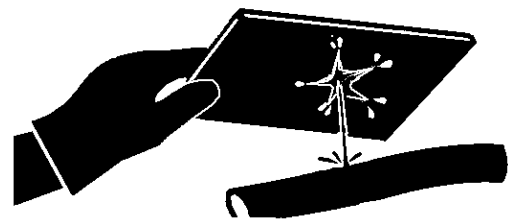
- ⚠ CAUTION:** Hydraulic oil and lubricant leaks can lead to fire that may result in serious injury. To avoid this hazard :
- Park the machine on a firm, level surface. Lower the bucket to the ground. Stop the engine. Remove key from the key switch. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
  - Check for missing or loose clamps, kinked hoses, lines or hoses that rub against each other, damaged oil cooler, and loose oil cooler flange bolts, for leaks. Check hoses, lines and oil cooler at the check points indicated below for leaks and other damage that may result in future leaks. If any abnormalities are found, replace or retighten them, as shown in Tables 1-3.
  - Tighten, repair or replace any missing, loose or damaged clamps, hoses, lines, oil cooler, and loose oil cooler flange bolts. Do not bend or strike high-pressure lines. Never install bent or damaged hoses or lines.



SA-031



SA-292

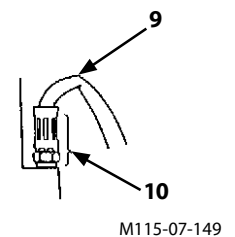
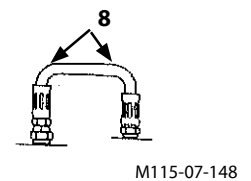
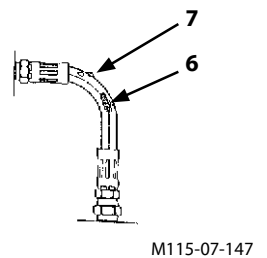
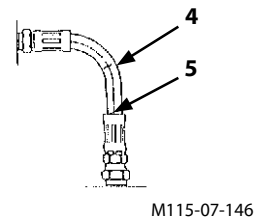
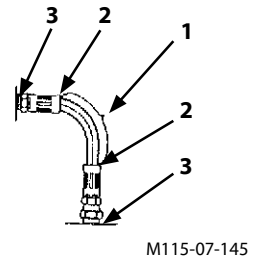
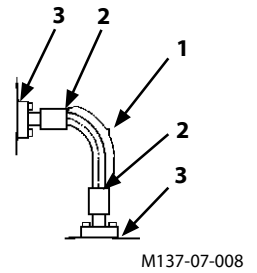


SA-044

# MAINTENANCE

Table 1. Hoses

Interval (hours)	Check Points	Abnormalities	Remedies
Daily	Hose covers	Leak (1)	Replace
	Hose ends	Leak (2)	Replace
	Fittings	Leak (3)	Retighten or replace hose or O-ring
Every 250 hours	Hose covers	Crack (4)	Replace
	Hose ends	Crack (5)	Replace
	Hose covers	Exposed reinforcement (6)	Replace
	Hose covers	Blister (7)	Replace
	Hose	Bend (8)	Replace
Hose	Collapse (9)	Replace (Use proper bend radius)	
Hose ends and fittings	Deformation or Corrosion (10)	Replace	



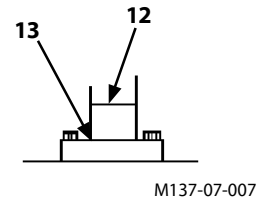
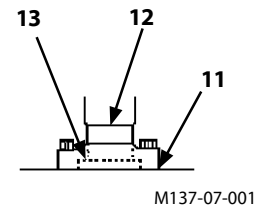
**NOTE:** Refer to the illustrations in Fig.1 for each check point location or for a description of the abnormality. Use genuine Hitachi parts.

Fig.1

# MAINTENANCE

Table 2. Lines

Interval (hours)	Check Points	Abnormalities	Remedies
Daily	Contact surfaces of flange joints	Leak (11)	Replace O-ring and/or retighten bolts
	Welded surfaces on joints	Leak (12)	Replace
Every 250 hours	Joint neck Welded surfaces on joints Clamps	Crack (13)	Replace
		Crack (12)	Replace
		Missing Deformation Loose	Replace Replace Retighten



**NOTE:** Refer to the illustrations in Fig.2 for each check point location or for a description of the abnormality. Use genuine Hitachi parts.

Fig.2

Table 3. Oil cooler

Interval (hours)	Check Points	Abnormalities	Remedies
Every 250 hours	Coupling and rubber hose Oil cooler	Leak (14)	Replace
		Leak (15)	Retighten or replace

**NOTE:** Refer to the illustrations in Fig.3 for each check point location.

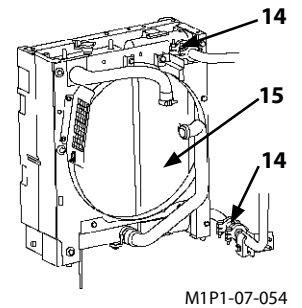


Fig.3

## MAINTENANCE

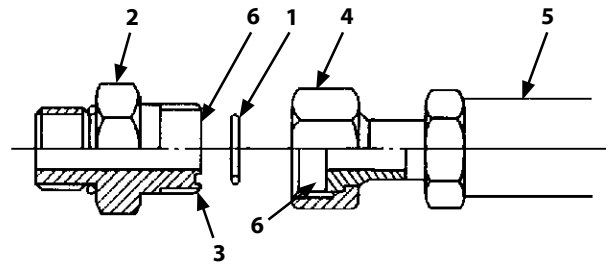
### SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS FOR HYDRAULIC FITTINGS

Two hydraulic fitting designs are used on this machine.

#### Flat Face O-ring Seal Fitting (ORS Fitting)

An O-ring is used on the sealing surfaces to prevent oil leakage.

1. Inspect fitting sealing surfaces (6). They must be free of dirt or defects.
2. Replace O-ring (1) with a new one when assembling fittings.
3. Lubricate O-ring (1) and install it into groove (3) using petroleum jelly to hold it in place.
4. Tighten fitting (2) by hand, pressing the fitting joint together to ensure O-ring (1) remains in place and is not damaged.
5. Tighten fitting (2) or nut (4) to the torque values shown. Do not allow hose (5) to twist when tightening fittings.
6. Check for leaks. If oil leaks from a loose connection, do not tighten fitting (2). Open the connection, replace O-ring (1) and check for correct O-ring position before tightening the connection.



M104-07-033

Torque specifications

±10%

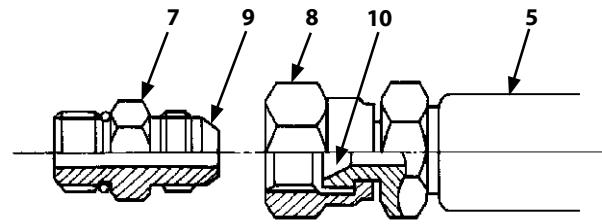
Width across flats (mm)	27	32	36	41,46
Fastening torque	N·m	95	140	180
	(kgf·m)	(9,5)	(14)	(18)
	(lbf·ft)	(69)	(101)	(130)
				(152)

## MAINTENANCE

### Metal Face Seal Fittings

Fittings are used on smaller hoses and consist of a metal flare (10) and a metal flare seat (9).

1. Inspect flare (10) and flare seat (9). They must be free of dirt or obvious defects.



M202-07-051

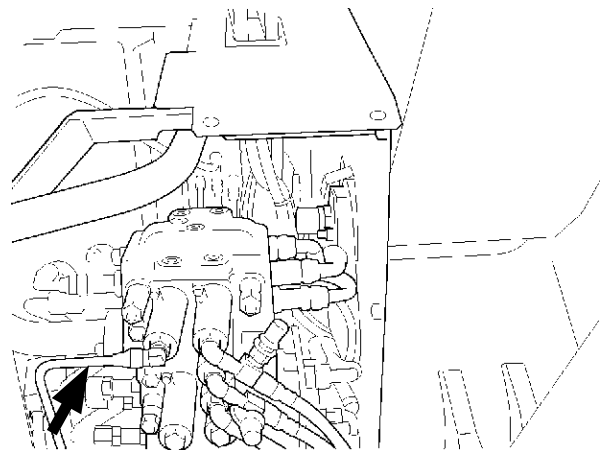
**IMPORTANT: Defects in the tube flare cannot be repaired. Overtightening a defective flare fitting will not stop a leak.**

2. Tighten fitting (7) by hand.
3. Tighten fitting (7) or nut (8) to the torque values shown. Do not allow hose (5) to twist when tightening fittings.

Width across flats (mm)		17	19	22	27
Fastening torque	N-m	25	30	40	95
	(kgf-m)	(2.5)	(3)	(4)	(9.5)
	(lbf-ft)	(18)	(22)	(29)	(69)

### Pilot Piping Fittings (For shuttle valve)

Width across flats (mm)		19
Fastening torque	N-m	35
	(kgf-m)	(3.5)
	(lbf-ft)	(25)



TICF-01-01-005

# MAINTENANCE

## E. FUEL SYSTEM

### Recommended Fuel

Use high quality DIESEL FUEL only (JIS K-2204) (ASTM 2-D). Kerosene must NOT be used.

### Refueling

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.

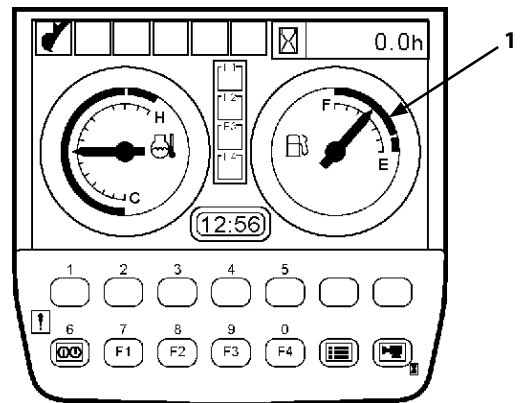
**IMPORTANT: The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.**

4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
5. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.

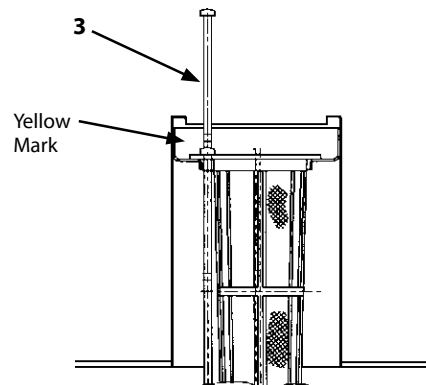
**CAUTION: Handle fuel carefully. Shut the engine off before fueling. Do not smoke while you fill the fuel tank or work on fuel system.**

7. Check fuel level gauge (3) or fuel gauge (1) of the monitor panel. Add fuel if necessary.

**IMPORTANT: Keep all dirt, dust, water and other foreign materials out of the fuel system.**



M1P1-01-015

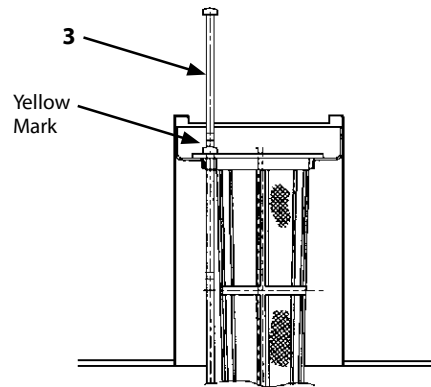


M157-07-060

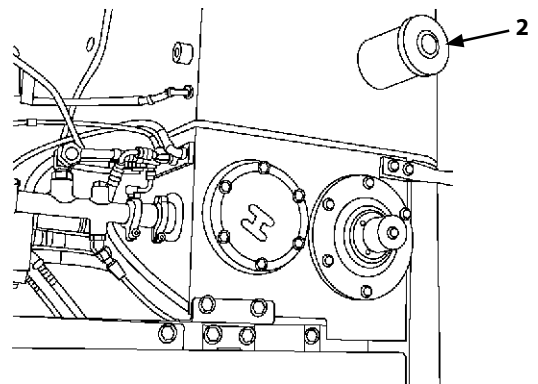
## MAINTENANCE

- To avoid condensation, fill the tank at the end of each day's operation. Take care not to spill fuel on the machine or ground. Fuel tank capacity is 135 liters (35.7 US gal). Do not fill the tank more than specified. Stop filling when a yellow mark on fuel level gauge (3) becomes visible. Be sure to position the fuel service nozzle so that any part of the nozzle does not obstruct rising of float-type fuel level gauge (3).
- Reinstall filler cap (2) on the filler tube. Be sure to lock filler cap (2) with the key to prevent cap (2) from being lost as well as to prevent vandalism.

**IMPORTANT: Take precautions for Fueling with Automatic Fueling Device (Optional). Avoid overfilling. Never fail to remove filler cap (2) when refueling with the automatic fueling device and be sure to stop fueling when the yellow mark on the float becomes visible.**

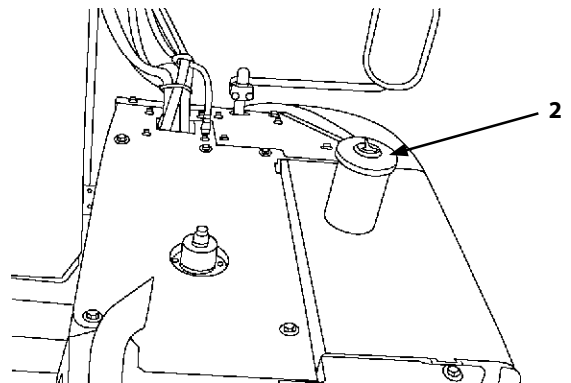


M157-07-060



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-012



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

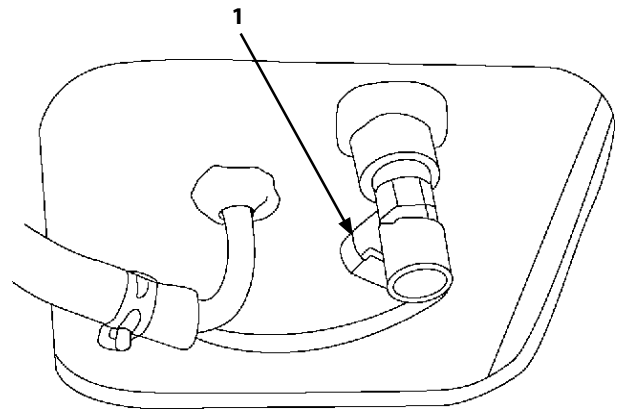
M1P1-07-010

## MAINTENANCE

---

### 1 Drain Fuel Tank Sump --- daily

1. Park the machine on a level surface with the upperstructure rotated 90 ° for easier access.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.
4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
5. Turn the key switch OFF. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
7. Open drain cock (1) for several seconds to drain water and sediment. Close drain cock (1).



M1P1-07-016



## MAINTENANCE

### 2 Check Water Separator --- every 50 hours

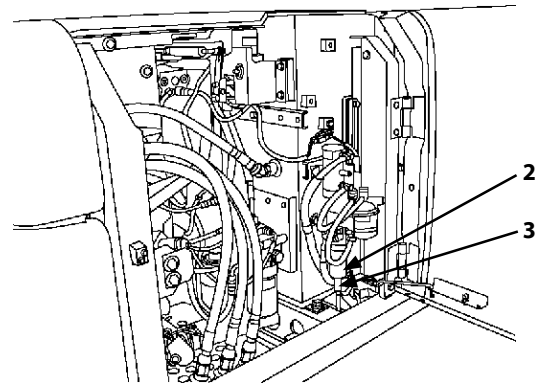
Water separator (2) is a device to separate water from the fuel. The float inside the case will be raised when water is present. After the float is raised up to the water drain level marked on the outer diameter of the case, be sure to drain the water.

#### Draining Procedures

1. Loosen cock (3) on the bottom of water separator (2) to drain the water deposited from the inside.
2. After drainage is complete, be sure to tighten cock (3).

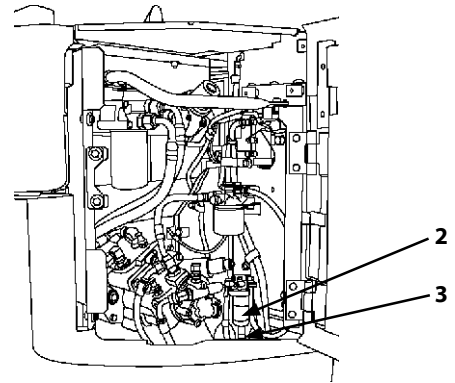
**IMPORTANT:** After draining water mixed in the fuel, bleed air from the fuel system. (Refer to the descriptions on the Bleed Air from Fuel System.)

In case the fuel containing more water than usual is used, drain water by checking water separator (2) at shorter intervals.



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-014



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-004

## MAINTENANCE

### Air Bleeding Procedures

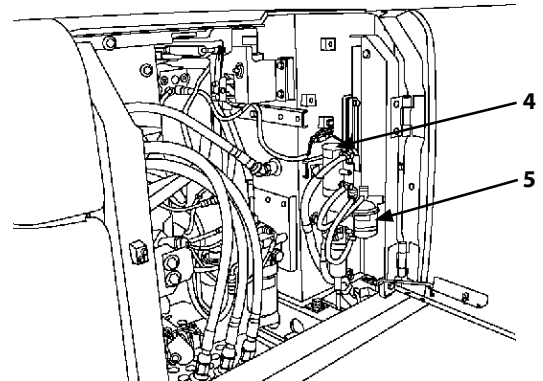
**IMPORTANT:** Air in the fuel system may make the engine hard to start or make it run irregularly. After draining water and sediment from the water separator, replacing fuel filter (5), cleaning the feed pump strainer or running the fuel tank dry, be sure to bleed the air from the fuel system.

This machine is equipped with fuel solenoid pump (4).

**CAUTION:** Fuel leaks may lead to fires.

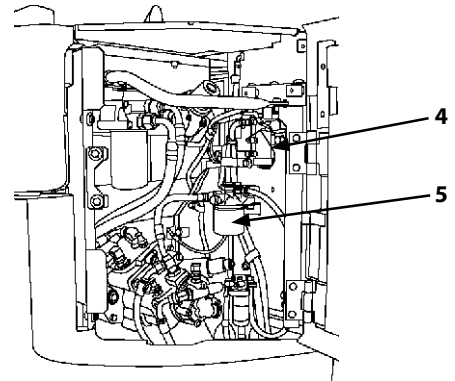
1. Turn the key switch to the ON position and wait for approximately 1 minute.
2. Start the engine. Check the fuel system for oil leaks.

**IMPORTANT:** Even if air is not thoroughly bled, do not hold the key switch in the ON position for more than 5 minutes. In case air is not thoroughly bled, first return the key switch to the OFF position. Then, after waiting for more than 30 seconds, turn the key switch ON again. Failure to do so may cause damage to the electrical pump and/or discharging the batteries.



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-014



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

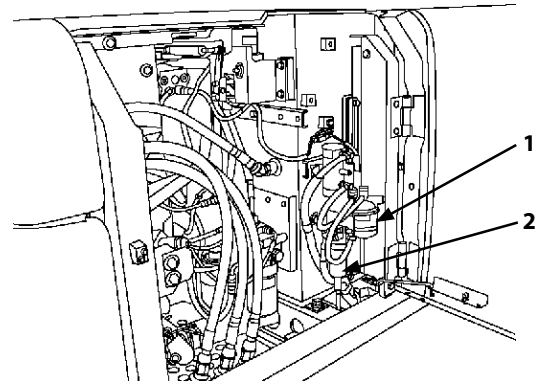
M1P1-07-004

## MAINTENANCE

### 3 Replace Fuel Filter Element --- every 500 hours

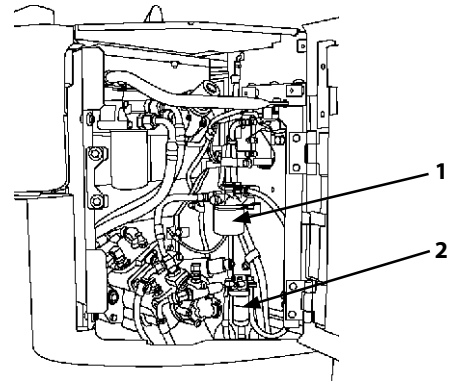
**IMPORTANT:** Be sure to use only genuine Hitachi elements for fuel filter element (1). Failure to do so may deteriorate the engine performance and/or shorten the engine service life. Please be noted that all engine failures caused by using other manufacturers' elements are excluded from Hitachi Warranty Policy.

1. Rotate the lever on the top of water separator (2) counterclockwise.
2. For safety and to protect the environment, always use proper containers when draining fuel. Do not pour fuel onto the ground, down a drain or into a stream, pond or lake. Dispose of waste fuel properly.
3. Remove fuel filter (1) using the filter wrench.
4. Apply a thin film of clean fuel to the gasket of new fuel filter (1).
5. Tighten fuel filter (1) by hand until the gasket makes contact with the sealing surface.
6. Using the filter wrench, tighten fuel filter (1) about 2/3 turn more. Do not overtighten fuel filter (1).
7. After replacing fuel filter (1), bleed air from the fuel system.



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-014



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-004

## MAINTENANCE

### 4 Clean Fuel Solenoid Pump Strainer --- every 500 hours

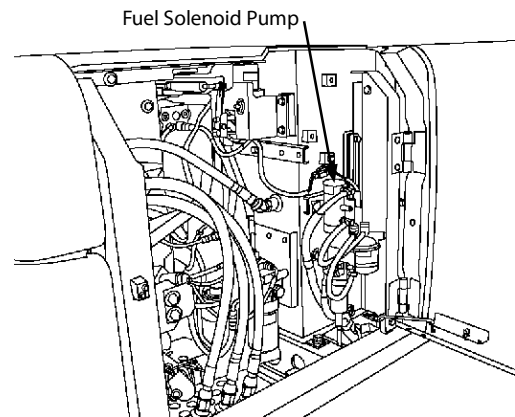
#### Cleaning

When the strainer is disassembled, be sure to replace the gasket. Install the cover and the magnet only after sufficiently cleaning them. After being assembled, closely check the air-tightness of the strainer.

#### Disassembling/Assembling

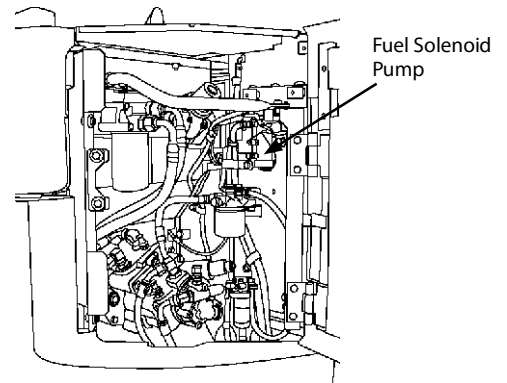
To remove cover (1), loosen with a spanner. After cover (1) is removed, gasket (2), strainer (3), and gasket (4) are easily removed in order. Wash removed strainer (3) with light oil. Install strainer (3) in the reverse order of disassembling. At that time, install gasket (2) into cover (1) first. Then, securely tighten cover (1) to pump (5) using a spanner.

 NOTE: Wrench size: 17 mm



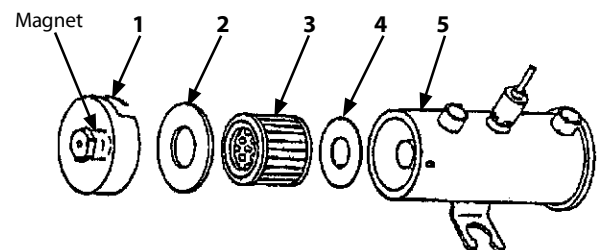
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-014

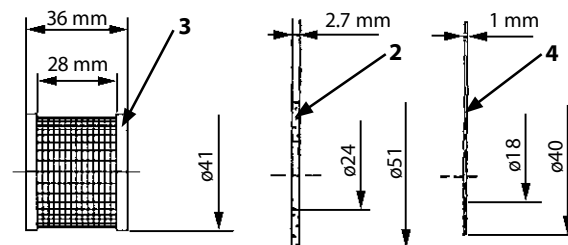


ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-004



M1GR-07-004



M1U1-07-006

## MAINTENANCE

### 5 Check Fuel Hoses

--- daily

--- every 250 hours

**⚠ CAUTION: Fuel leaks can lead to fires that may result in serious injury.**  
**To avoid this hazard :**

1. Park the machine on a firm, level surface. Lower the bucket to the ground. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
2. Check for kinked hoses, and hoses that rub against each other parts for leaks.  
 Check hoses at the check points indicated below for leaks and other damage that may result in future leaks. If any abnormalities are found, replace or retighten them, as shown in Table 4.
3. Repair or replace any loose or damaged hoses. Never install bent or damaged hoses.

Table 4. Hoses

Interval (hours)	Check Points	Abnormalities	Remedies
Daily	Hose ends	Leak (1)	Retighten or replace
	Soutache braid hose	Friction (2) Crack (2)	Replace Replace
Every 250 hours	Soutache braid hose	Crack (3)	Replace
	Hose ends	Crack (4)	Replace
	Hose	Bend (5)	Replace
	Hose	Collapse (6)	Replace (Use proper bend radius)
	Hose ends and fittings	Deformation or Corrosion (7)	Replace

**📎 NOTE:** Refer to the illustrations in Fig.1 for each check point location or for a description of the abnormality. Use genuine Hitachi parts.

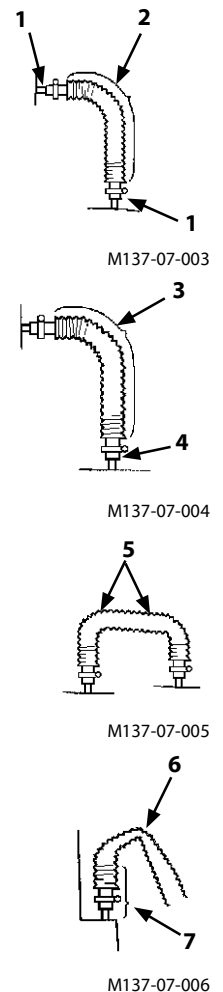


Fig. 1

## MAINTENANCE

### F. AIR CLEANER

- 1** Clean the Air Cleaner Outer Element  
--- every 250 hours or when the restriction indicator comes ON
- 2** Replace the Air Cleaner Outer and Inner Elements  
--- after cleaning 6 times or after one year

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.

**IMPORTANT:** The turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

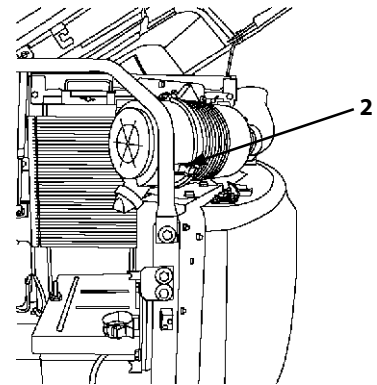
4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for five minutes.
5. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
7. Loosen clamps (2) to remove the cover.

**IMPORTANT:** Do not install element (1) and/or the cover forcibly when installing clamps (2). Failure to do so may result in deformation of clamps (2), element (1), and/or cover.

8. Remove outer element (1).
9. Tap outer element (1) with the palm of your hand, NOT ON A HARD SURFACE.

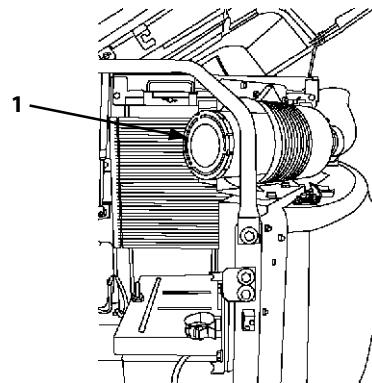
**CAUTION:** Use reduced compressed air pressure. (Less than 0.2 MPa, 2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>). Clear area of bystanders, guard against flying chips, and wear personal protection equipment including goggles or safety glasses.

10. Clean outer element (1) using compressed air. Direct the air to the inside of the filter element, blowing out.
11. Clean the filter interior before installing outer element (1).
12. Install outer element (1).
13. Install cover and tighten clamps (2).
14. Start the engine and run at slow idle.
15. Check the air filter restriction indicator on the monitor panel. If the air filter restriction indicator comes ON, stop the engine and replace outer element (1).



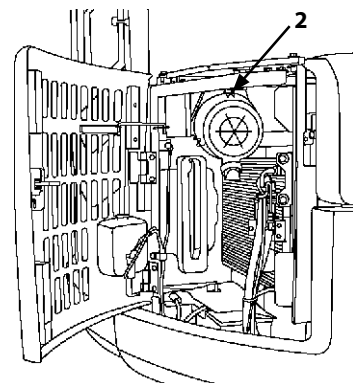
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-034



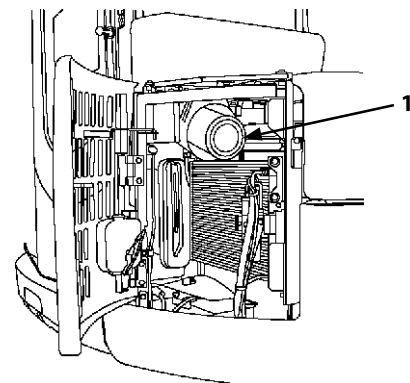
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-033



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-001



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

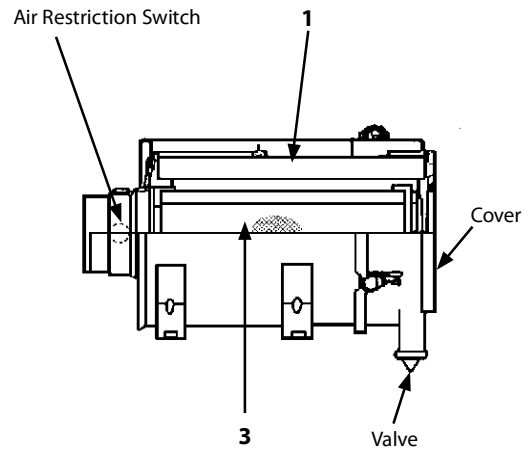
M1P1-07-002

## MAINTENANCE

---

16. When replacing the air cleaner filter element, replace both outer (1) and inner (3) elements together. Remove outer element (1). Clean the filter interior before removing inner element (3). Remove inner element (3). First install inner element (3) and then install outer element (1).

**IMPORTANT: Do not reuse inner element (3). Always replace the new one.**



M157-07-061

## MAINTENANCE

### G. COOLING SYSTEM

#### Coolant

Fill the radiator with soft, pure tap or bottled water.

#### Anti-rust agent

Add approximately 0.20 L (0.21 US qt) of anti-rust agent to the new coolant when the coolant is changed.

It is not necessary to add anti-rust agent when antifreeze is used.

#### Antifreeze

If the air temperature is expected to fall below 0 °C (32 °F), fill the cooling system with an antifreeze and soft water mix. As a general rule, the ratio of antifreeze should range between 30% and 60% as shown in the table below. If the ratio is below 30%, the system may develop rust, and if it is above 60%, the engine may overheat.

Antifreeze Mixing Table

Air temperature		Mixing ratio	Refill capacities			
			Antifreezes		Soft Water	
°C	°F	%	liters	US qt	liters	US qt
-1	30	30	3.0	3.2	7.0	7.4
-4	25	30	3.0	3.2	7.0	7.4
-7	19	30	3.0	3.2	7.0	7.4
-11	12	30	3.0	3.2	7.0	7.4
-15	5	35	3.5	3.7	6.5	6.9
-20	-4	40	4.0	4.2	6.0	6.3
-25	-13	45	4.5	4.8	5.5	5.8
-30	-22	50	5.0	5.3	5.0	5.3



#### CAUTION:

- Antifreeze is poisonous; if ingested, it can cause serious injury or death. Induce vomiting and get emergency medical attention immediately.
- When storing antifreeze, be sure to keep it in a clearly marked container with a tight lid. Always keep antifreeze out of the reach of children.
- If antifreeze is accidentally splashed into eyes, flush with water for 10 to 15 minutes and get emergency medical attention.
- When storing or disposing of antifreeze, be sure to comply with all local regulations.

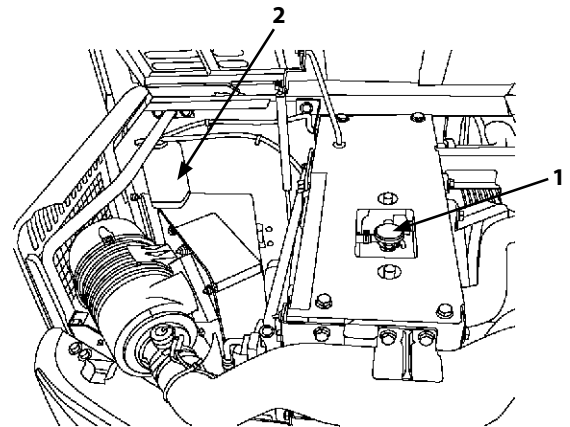


## MAINTENANCE

### 1 Check Coolant Level --- daily

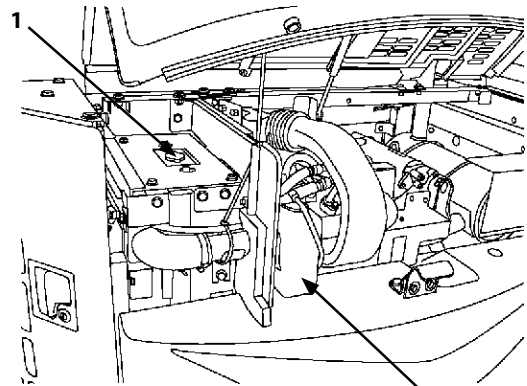
**CAUTION:** Do not loosen radiator filler cap (1) unless the system is cool. Loosen cap (1) slowly to the stop. Release all pressure before removing cap. (1)

With the engine cold, the coolant level must be between the FULL and LOW marks on coolant reservoir (2). If the coolant level is below the low mark, add coolant to coolant reservoir (2). If coolant reservoir (2) is empty, add coolant to the radiator and then to coolant reservoir (2).



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-035



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-007

## MAINTENANCE

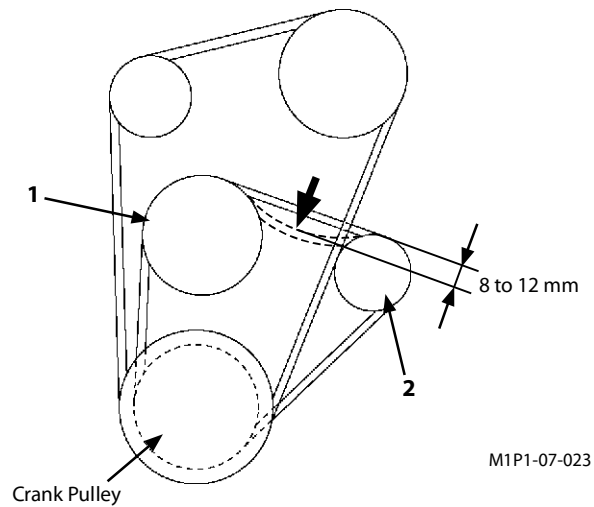
### 2 Check and Adjust Fan Belt Tension --- every 100 hours (first time after 50 hours)

**IMPORTANT:** Loose fan belt may result in insufficient battery charging, engine overheating as well as a rapid, abnormal belt wear. Belts that are too tight, however, can damage both bearings and belts.

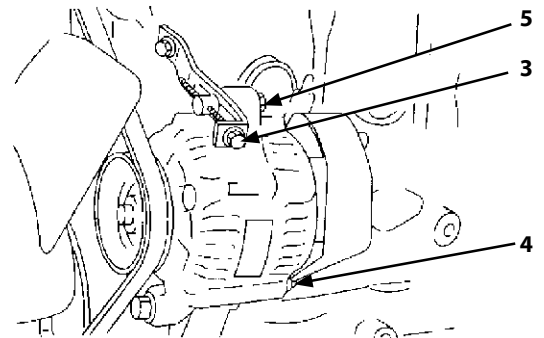
Visually check the belt for wear. Replace if necessary. Check fan belt tension by depressing the midpoint between fan pulley (1) and alternator pulley (2) with the thumb. Deflection must be 8 to 12 mm (0.32 to 0.47 in) with a depressing force of approximately 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf).

If tension is not within specifications, loosen nuts (4) and (5) for the adjusting plate and alternator bracket. Move the alternator by adjusting bolt (3) until tension is correct. Tighten nuts (4) and (5).

**IMPORTANT:** When a new belt is installed, be sure to re-adjust the tension after operating the engine for 3 to 5 minutes at slow idle speed to be sure that the new belt is seated correctly.



M1P1-07-023





T1P1-04-03-001

## MAINTENANCE

### 3 Change Coolant --- twice a year (in spring and autumn)

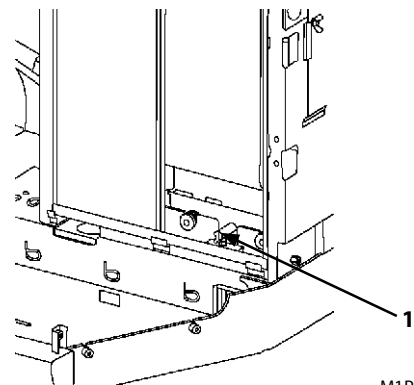
### 4 Clean Radiator Interior --- when changing coolant

 **NOTE:** Before leaving the Hitachi Factory, the cooling system is filled with a mixture of water and Genuine Hitachi Long-Life Coolant. As long as Genuine Hitachi Long-Life Coolant is used, the service intervals between changing the coolant is once every two years, or every 4000 hours, whichever comes first.

 **CAUTION:** Do not loosen the radiator cap until the system is cool. Loosen the cap slowly to the stop. Release all pressure before removing the cap.

**IMPORTANT:** Use fresh water or normal tap water as a coolant. Do not use strong acid or alkaline water. Use the coolant with genuine Hitachi Long-Life Coolant (LLC) mixed by 30 to 50 %.

1. Remove the radiator front screen. Remove the radiator cap. Open drain cock (1) on the radiator and engine block to allow the coolant to drain completely.
2. Close drain cock (1). Fill the radiator with tap water and a radiator cleaner agent. Start the engine and run at a speed slightly higher than slow idle; when the needle of the temperature gauge reaches the green zone, run the engine for about ten more minutes.
3. Stop the engine and open drain cock (1). Flush out the cooling system with tap water, until draining water is clear. This helps remove rust and sediment.
4. Close drain cock (1). Fill the radiator with tap water and an anti-rust agent or antifreeze at the specified mixing ratio. When adding coolant, do so slowly to avoid mixing air bubbles in the system.
5. Run the engine to sufficiently bleed the air from the cooling system.
6. After adding coolant, operate the engine for several minutes. Check the coolant level again, and add coolant if necessary.



M1P1-07-053

## MAINTENANCE

**5 Clean Radiator, Oil Cooler and Inter Cooler Core Outside --- every 500 hours**

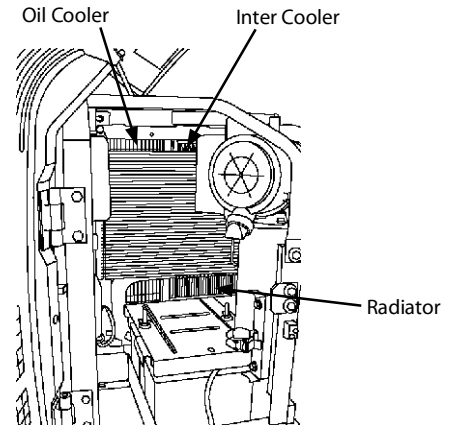
**6 Clean Oil Cooler, Radiator and Inter Cooler Front Screen --- every 500 hours**

**7 Clean Air Conditioner Condenser --- every 500 hours**

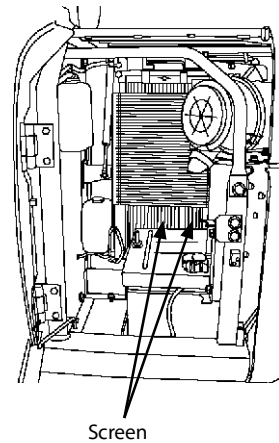
**CAUTION:** Use reduced compressed air pressure (Less than 0.2 MPa, 2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 29 psi) for cleaning purposes. Clear the area of bystanders, guard against flying chips, and wear personal protection equipment including eye protection.

**IMPORTANT:** When operating the machine in a dusty environment, check the screen every day for dirt and clogging. If clogged, remove, clean and reinstall the screen.

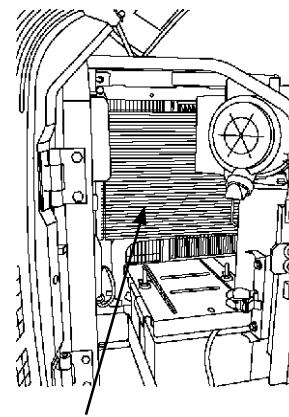
1. Open the radiator access door and hood.
2. Clean the air conditioner condenser.
3. Remove the oil cooler front screen and clean it.
4. Clean both the radiator and oil cooler using compressed air (Less than 0.2 MPa, 2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 29 psi) or water.



M1P1-07-036



M1P1-07-037



M1P1-07-036

# MAINTENANCE

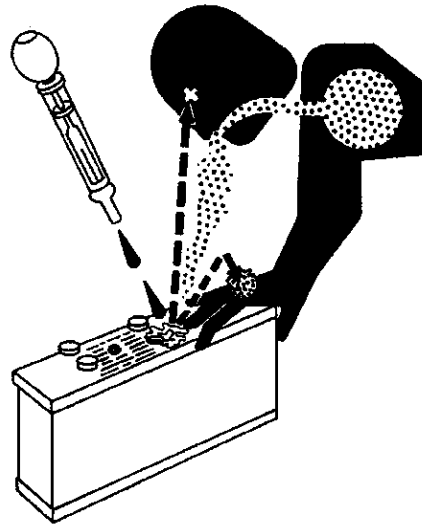
## H. ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

**IMPORTANT:** Improper radio communication equipment and associated parts, and/or improper installation of radio communication equipment effects the machine's electronic parts, causing involuntary movement of the machine.

Also, improper installation of electrical equipment's may cause machine failure and/or a fire on the machine.

Be sure to consult your authorized dealer when installing a radio communication equipment or additional electrical parts, or when replacing electrical parts.

Never attempt to disassemble or modify the electrical/electronic components. If replacement or modification of such components is required, contact your authorized dealer.



SA-036

## BATTERIES

**WARNING:** Battery gas can explode. Keep sparks and flames away from batteries. Use a flashlight to check the battery electrolyte level.

Do not continue to use or charge the battery when electrolyte level is lower than specified. Explosion of the battery may result.

Sulfuric acid in battery electrolyte is poisonous. It is strong enough to burn skin, eat holes in clothing, and cause blindness if splashed into the eyes.

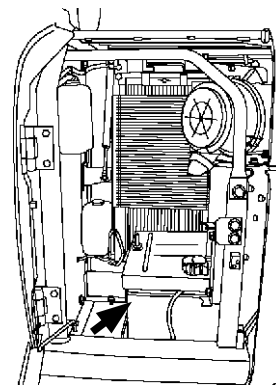
Avoid hazard by:

1. Filling batteries in a well-ventilated area.
2. Wearing eye protection and rubber gloves.
3. Avoiding breathing fumes when electrolyte is added.
4. Avoiding spilling or dripping electrolyte.
5. Using proper booster battery starting procedures.

If you spill acid on yourself:

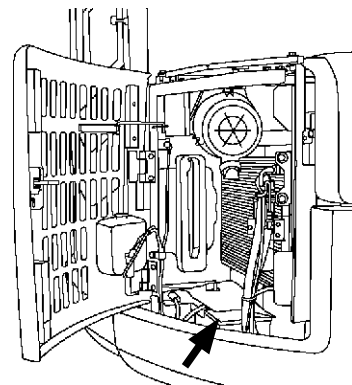
1. Flush your skin with water.
2. Apply baking soda or lime to help neutralize the acid.
3. If splashed in eyes, flush with water for 10 to 15 minutes. Get medical attention immediately.

Batteries Location



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-037



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-001

## MAINTENANCE

---


**If acid is swallowed:**

- 1. Drink large amounts of water or milk.**
- 2. Then drink milk of magnesia, beaten eggs, or vegetable oil.**
- 3. Get medical attention immediately.**

**IMPORTANT:** Add water to batteries in freezing weather before you begin operating your machine for the day, or else charge the batteries.

**IMPORTANT:** If the battery is used with the electrolyte level lower than the specified lower level, the battery may deteriorate quickly.

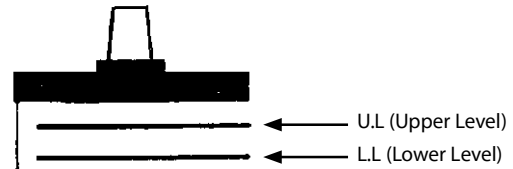
**IMPORTANT:** Do not refill electrolyte more than the specified upper level. Electrolyte may spill, damaging the painted surfaces and/or corroding other machine parts.

 **NOTE:** *In case electrolyte is refilled more than the specified upper level line or beyond the bottom end of the sleeve, remove the excess electrolyte until the electrolyte level is down to the bottom end of the sleeve using a pipette. After neutralizing the removed electrolyte with sodium bicarbonate, flush it with plenty of water, otherwise, consult the battery manufacturer.*

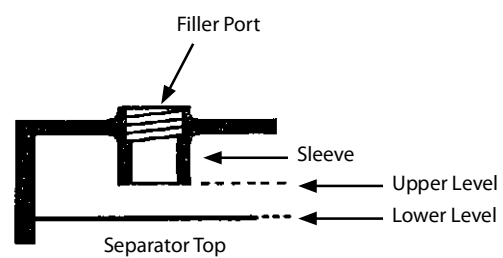
## MAINTENANCE

### Electrolyte Level Check --- every one month

1. Check the electrolyte level at least once a month.
2. Park the machine on level ground and stop the engine.
3. Check the electrolyte level.
  - 3.1 When checking the level from the battery side:  
Clean around the level check lines with a wet towel.  
Do not use a dry towel. Static electricity may be developed, causing the battery gas to explode. Check if the electrolyte level is between U.L (Upper Level) and L.L (Lower Level). In case the electrolyte level is lower than the middle level between the U.L and L.L, immediately refill distilled water or commercial battery fluid. Be sure to refill with distilled water before recharging (operating the machine). After refilling, securely tighten the filler plug.
  - 3.2 When impossible to check the level from the battery side or no level check mark is indicated on the side:  
After removing the filler plug from the top of the battery. Check the electrolyte level by viewing through the filler port. It is difficult to judge the accurate electrolyte level in this case. Therefore, when the electrolyte level is flush with the U.L, the level is judged to be proper. Then, referring to the right illustrations, check the level. When the electrolyte level is lower than the bottom end of the sleeve, refill with distilled water or commercial battery fluid up to the bottom end of the sleeve. Be sure to refill with distilled water before recharging (operating the machine). After refilling, securely tighten the filler plug.
  - 3.3 When an indicator is available to check the level, follow its check result.
4. Always keep around the battery terminals clean to prevent battery discharge. Check terminals for loose and/or rust. Coat terminals with grease or petroleum jelly to prevent corrosion build up.



M146-07-109



M146-07-110

Proper



Since the electrolyte surface touches the bottom end of the sleeve, the electrolyte surface is raised due to surface tension so that the electrode ends are seen curved.

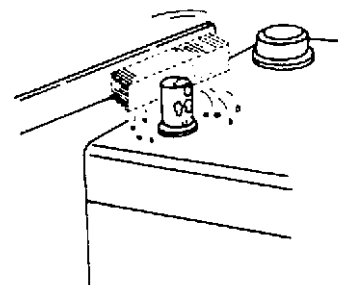
M146-07-111

Lower



When the electrolyte surface is lower than the bottom end of the sleeve, the electrode ends are seen straight.

M146-07-112



M409-07-072

## MAINTENANCE

Check electrolyte specific gravity --- every one month

**⚠ WARNING: Battery gas can explode. Keep sparks and flames away from batteries. Use a flashlight to check the battery electrolyte level.**

Sulfuric acid in battery electrolyte is poisonous. It is strong enough to burn skin, eat holes in clothing, and cause blindness if splashed into the eyes.

Never check the battery charge by placing a metal object across the posts. Use a voltmeter or hydrometer.

Always remove the grounded (–) battery clamp first and replace it last.

Avoid hazard by:

1. Filling batteries in a well-ventilated area.
2. Wearing eye protection and rubber gloves.
3. Avoiding breathing fumes when electrolyte is added.
4. Avoiding spilling or dripping electrolyte.
5. Using proper booster battery starting procedures.

If you spill acid on yourself:

1. Flush your skin with water.
2. Apply baking soda or lime to help neutralize the acid.
3. If splashed in eyes, flush with water for 10 to 15 minutes. Get medical attention immediately.

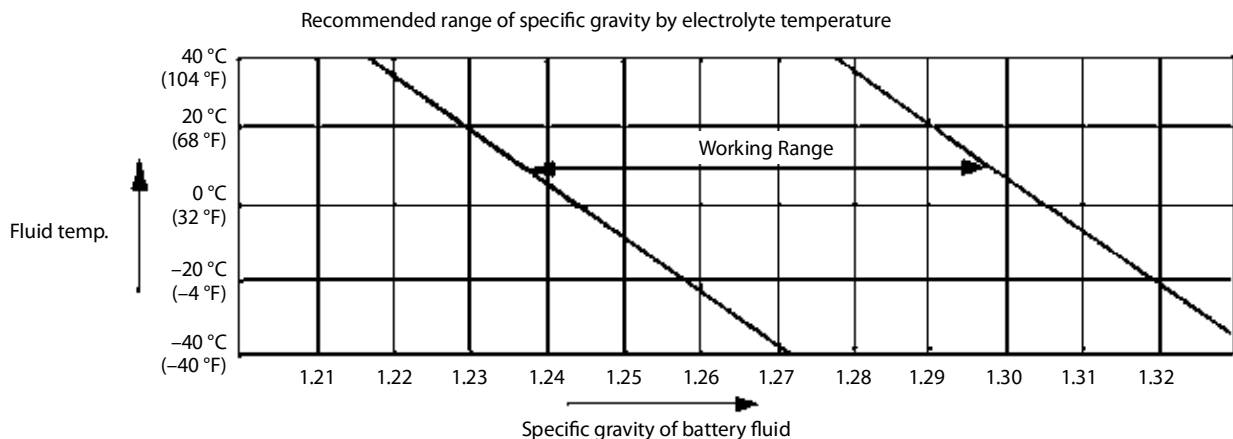
If acid is swallowed:

1. Drink large amounts of water or milk.
2. Then drink milk of magnesia, beaten eggs, or vegetable oil.
3. Get medical attention immediately.

**IMPORTANT:** Check the specific gravity of the electrolyte after it is cooled, not immediately after operation.

Check the electrolyte specific gravity in each battery cell.

The lowest limit of the specific gravity for the electrolyte varies depending on electrolyte temperature. The specific gravity should be kept within the range shown below. Charge the battery if the specific gravity is below the limit.



M104-07-054

## REPLACE BATTERIES

Your machine has two 12-volt batteries with negative (–) ground.

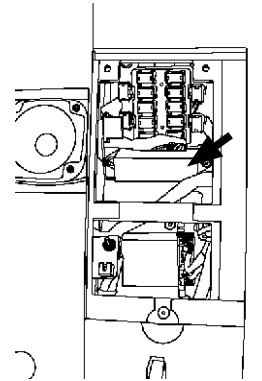
If one battery in a 24-volt system has failed but the other is still good, replace the failed battery with one of the same type. For example, replace a failed maintenance-free battery with a new maintenance-free battery. Different types of batteries may have different rates of charge. This difference could overload one of the batteries and cause it to fail.



# MAINTENANCE

## Remove and Installing Battery

**CAUTION:** When removing the battery disconnect the negative (-) terminal (ground) first, while taking care not to cause a short circuit. When installing the battery, connect the positive (+) terminal before connecting the negative (-) terminal.



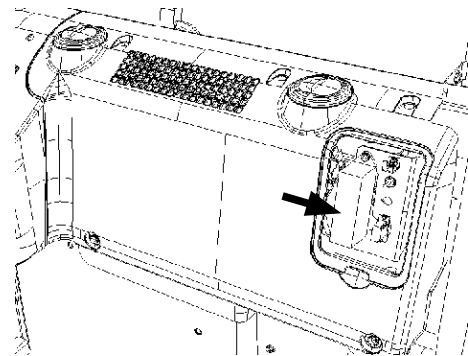
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3 M1P1-07-025

## REPLACING FUSES

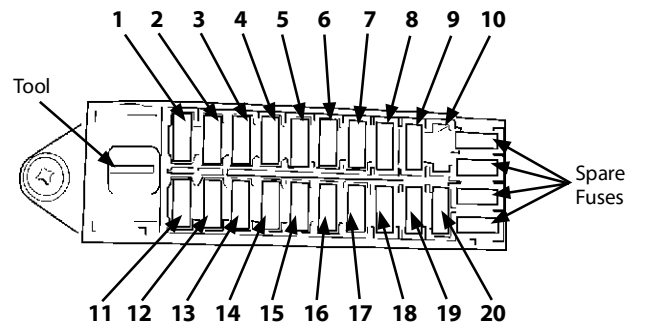
If any electrical equipment fails to operate, first check the fuses. Fuse box is located behind the operator's seat. A fuse location/specification decal is attached to the fuse box cover. Remove the fuse box cover by lifting it upward. Spare fuses are located on the underside of the cover.

**IMPORTANT:** Be sure to install fuses with correct amperage ratings to prevent electrical system damage due to overload.

- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 10- CONTROLLER<br>5A    | 20- OPTION3 (BATT)<br>5A  |
| 9- BACKUP<br>10A        | 19- SW. BOX<br>5A         |
| 8- ECF<br>5A            | 18- POWER ON<br>5A        |
| 7- EC MOTOR<br>10A      | 17- AIRCON.<br>5A         |
| 6- OPTION2 (ALT)<br>10A | 16- GLOW EGR<br>5A        |
| 5- OPTION1 (ALT)<br>5A  | 15- AUX.<br>10A           |
| 4- SOLENOID<br>10A      | 14- FUEL PUMP<br>5A       |
| 3- HEATER<br>20A        | 13- LIGHTER<br>10A        |
| 2- WIPER<br>10A         | 12- ROOM LAMP/RADIO<br>5A |
| 1- LAMP<br>20A          | 11- HORN<br>10A           |



ZX85USB-3 M1P1-07-062



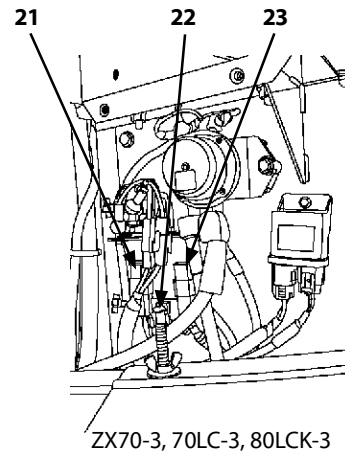
M1P1-07-061

## MAINTENANCE

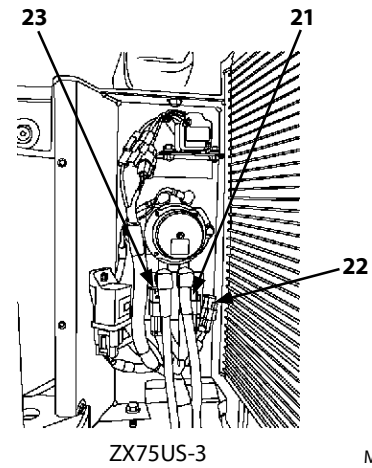
- Fusible Link (Main Fuse)

In case the starter would not rotate even if the key switch is turned to the START position, fusible link may be the cause of the trouble. Remove the cover next to the engine coolant reservoir to check the fuse. Replace it if blown.

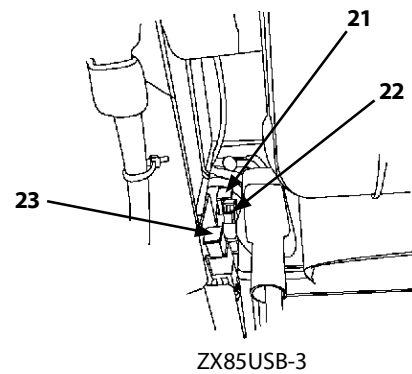
21- Red	45A
22- Brown	25A
22- Black	65A



M1P1-07-038



M1P1-07-024

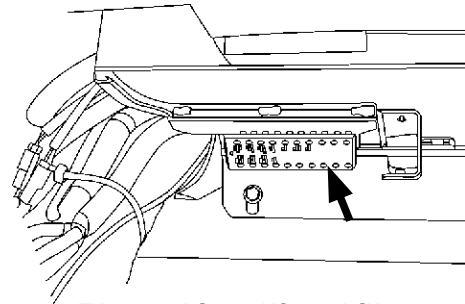


M1P1-07-043

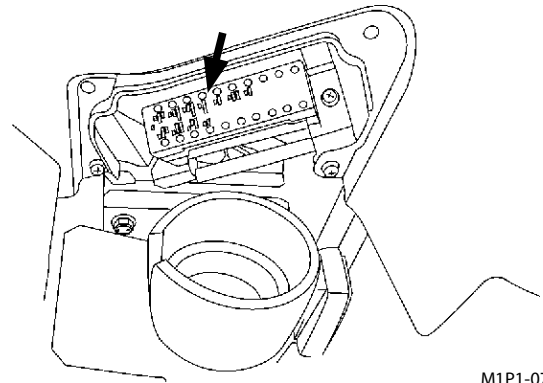
# MAINTENANCE

## ADDITIONAL FUSE BOX (Optional)

- |                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 30- SPARE                 | 40- SPARE                    |
| 29- SPARE                 | 39- SPARE                    |
| 28- SPARE                 | 38- SPARE                    |
| 27- AUX. 3<br>5A          | 37- SPARE                    |
| 26- QUICK HITCH<br>5A     | 36- SPARE                    |
| 25- IMOBI.<br>5A          | 35- SPARE                    |
| 24- 12V UNIT<br>10A       | 34- AUX. 2<br>10A            |
| 23- CAB LAMP REAR<br>10A  | 33- WARNING LAMP<br>10A      |
| 22- CAB LAMP FRONT<br>10A | 32- CAB LAMP FRONT +2<br>10A |
| 21- SEAT HEATER<br>10A    | 31- SEAT COMPR<br>10A        |

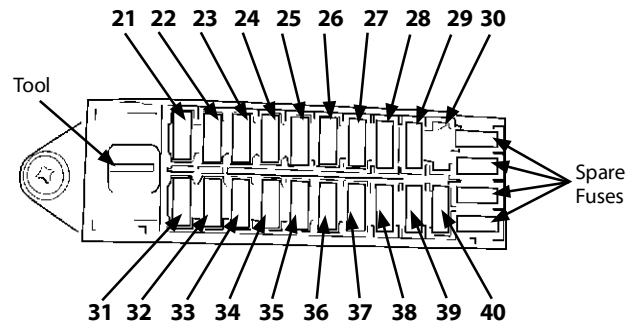


ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3 M1P1-07-059



ZX85USB-3

M1P1-07-060



M1P1-07-061

# MAINTENANCE

## I. MISCELLANEOUS

### 1 Check Bucket Teeth --- daily

#### Check the bucket teeth for wear and looseness

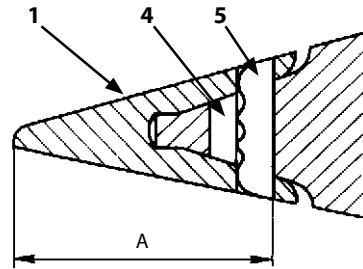
Replace teeth (1) if tooth wear exceeds the designated service limit shown below.

Dimension A in mm (in)	
New	Limit of Use
156 (6.1)	80 (3.1)

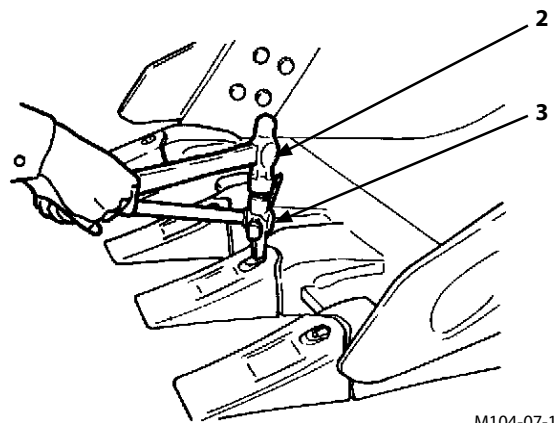
#### Replacing procedure

**CAUTION:** Guard against injury from flying pieces of metal. Wear goggles or safety glasses, and safety equipment appropriate to the job.

1. Use hammer (2) and drift (3) to drive out locking pin (5). Be careful not to damage rubber pin lock (4) while removing locking pin (5).
2. Remove tooth (1). Inspect locking pin (5) and rubber pin lock (4) for damage, replace if necessary. Short locking pins (5) and damaged rubber pin locks (4) must be replaced with new ones.



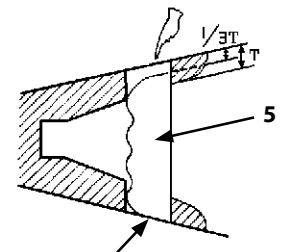
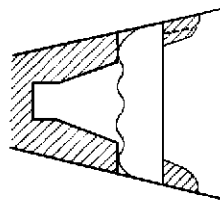
M104-07-056



M104-07-116

**RIGHT**

**WRONG**



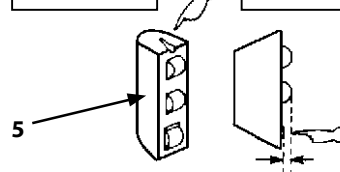
Flush one end of the locking pin to evaluate. In this instance, the locking pin is too short.

M104-07-118

M104-07-058

**WRONG**

**WRONG**

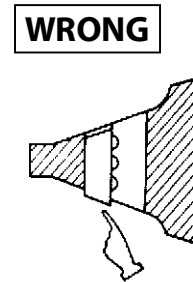
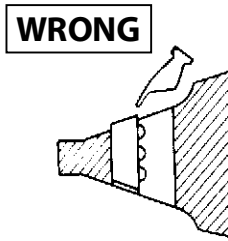
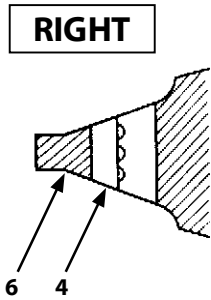


M104-07-059

## MAINTENANCE

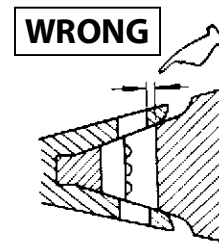
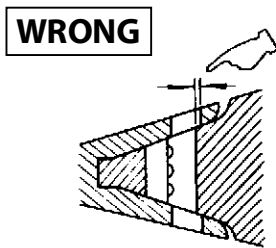
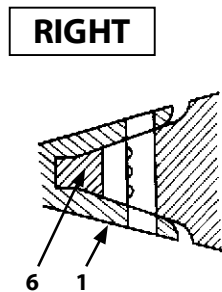
3. Clean shank (6) surface.

4. Install rubber pin lock (4) into shank (6) hole as shown.



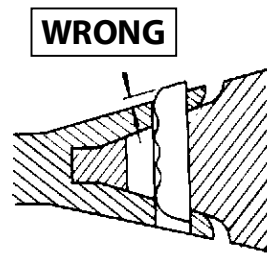
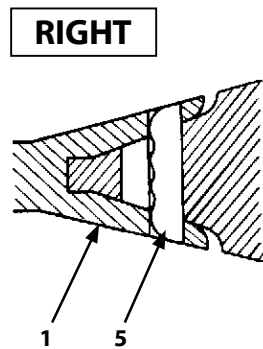
M104-07-060

5. Position new tooth (1) over shank (6).



M104-07-061

6. Drive locking pin (5) fully into the hole as shown.



M104-07-062

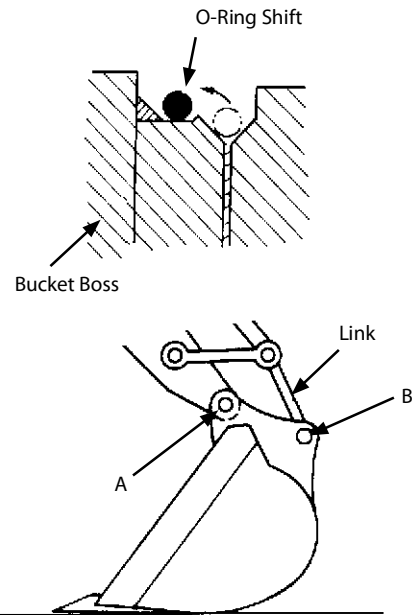
**IMPORTANT:** Check the bucket teeth periodically to ensure that wear does not exceed the designed service limit.

## MAINTENANCE

### 2 Change Bucket

**CAUTION:** When driving the connecting pins in or out, guard against injury from flying pieces of metal or debris; wear goggles or safety glasses, and safety equipment appropriate to the job.

1. Park the machine on a level surface. Lower the bucket to the ground and position it with the flat surface resting on the ground. Be sure the bucket will not roll when the pins are removed.
2. Slide the O-rings out of the way, as shown.
3. Remove bucket pins A and B to separate the arm and bucket. Clean the pins and pin bores. Apply sufficient grease to the pins and pin bores.
4. Align the arm and alternate bucket. Be sure the bucket will not roll.
5. Install bucket pins A and B.
6. Install the locking pins and snap rings on pins A and B.
7. Adjust bucket linkage clearance for pin A. See adjusting bucket linkage clearance procedure.
8. Apply grease to pin joints A and B.
9. Start the engine and run at slow idle. Slowly operate the bucket in both directions to check for any interference in bucket movement. Do not operate a machine that has any movement interference. Correct interference problem.



M104-07-063

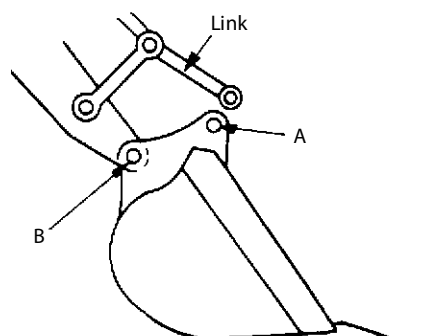
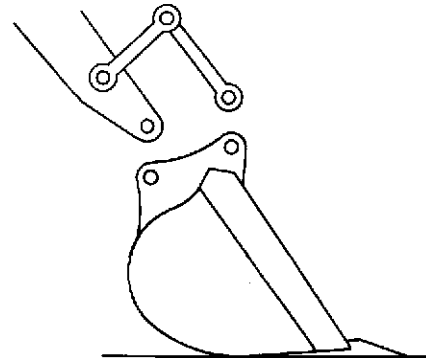
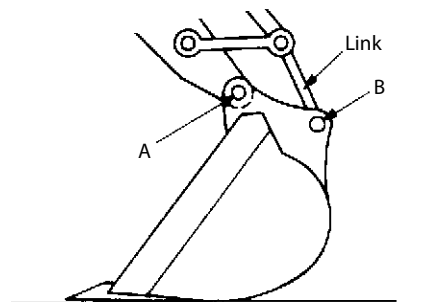
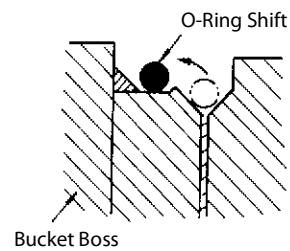
## MAINTENANCE

### 3 Convert Bucket Connection Into Face Shovel

**CAUTION:** When driving the connecting pins in or out, guard against injury from flying pieces of metal or debris; wear goggles or safety glasses, and safety equipment appropriate to the job.

**IMPORTANT:** Provide ample space for turning the bucket 180°. Before starting converting work, keep bystanders clear of the machine. When using a signal person, coordinate hand signals before starting.

1. Park the machine on a level surface. Lower the bucket to the ground and position it with the flat surface resting on the ground. Be sure the bucket will not roll when the pins are removed.
2. Slide the O-rings out of the way, as shown.
3. Remove bucket pins A and B to separate the arm and bucket. Clean the pins and pin bores. Apply sufficient grease to the pins and pin bores.
4. Turn the bucket 180°. Be sure the bucket will not roll.
5. Align the arm and bucket. Install bucket pins A and B, then install the locking pins and snap rings on pins A and B.
6. Apply grease to pin joints A and B.
7. Start the engine and run at slow idle. Slowly operate the bucket in both directions and check for any interference in bucket movement. Do not operate a machine that has any movement interference. Correct interference problem.




M104-07-064

## MAINTENANCE


### 4 Adjust the Bucket Linkage

The machine is provided with a bucket adjustment system to take up play in the linkage. When play in the linkage increases, remove and install shims as follows:


1. Park the machine on a level surface. Lower the bucket to the ground with the flat side down so that the bucket will not roll.
2. Run the engine at slow idle. With the bucket on the ground, slowly swing counterclockwise slightly until the top of the left bucket boss contacts the arm.
3. Stop the engine. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.

 **NOTE:** Bolt (1) does not need to be removed to remove shims (2). Shims (2) are of a split type that can be easily pushed off with a screwdriver after bolts (1) have been loosened.

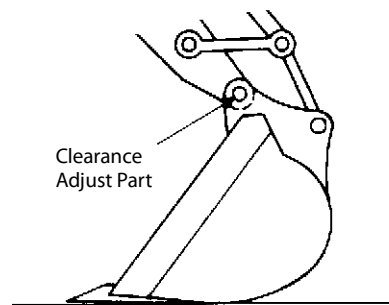
4. Slightly loosen three (M10) bolts (1) using a 8 mm wrench. Remove all shims (2) from clearance (c) between plate (3) and bucket.
5. Push and hold bolts (1) to remove all clearance (a) between arm and boss (4). Holding boss (4) against arm increases clearance (b). Measure distance (b) using a feeler gauge. This distance should not be adjusted below 0.5 mm (0.02 in).
6. Install as many shims (2) into clearance (b) as possible.

 **NOTE:** Remaining shims (2) must be installed in clearance (c) to prevent arm end face or bolt damage.

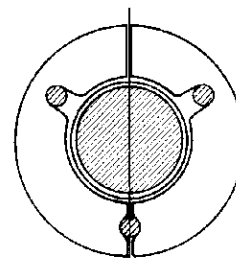
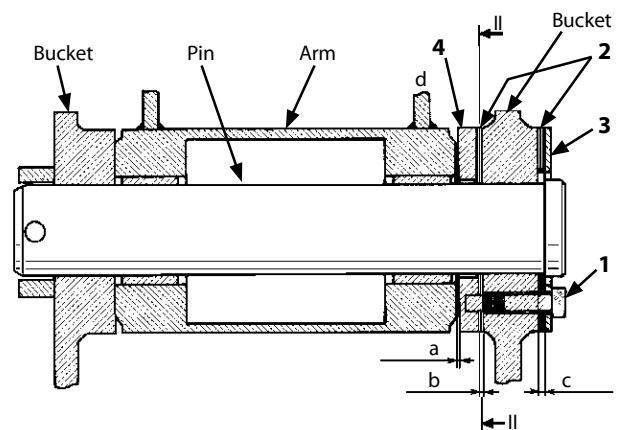
7. Install remaining shims (2) into clearance (c) and tighten bolts (1) to 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 37 lbf·ft).

 **NOTE:** The total number of shims (2) used is A.  
A : 12 (6 pairs)

8. Replace boss (4) if measurement (d) is 5 mm (0.2 in) or less.



M503-07-056



SECTION II

M1CD-07-037

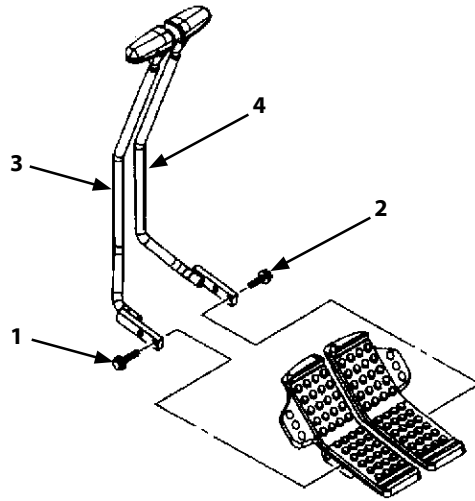


## MAINTENANCE

### 5 Remove the Travel Levers

The travel levers may be removed if desired.

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.
4. Turn the key switch OFF. Remove the key from the key switch.
5. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
6. Remove bolts (1) and (2) to remove levers (3) and (4) from brackets.



M178-07-077

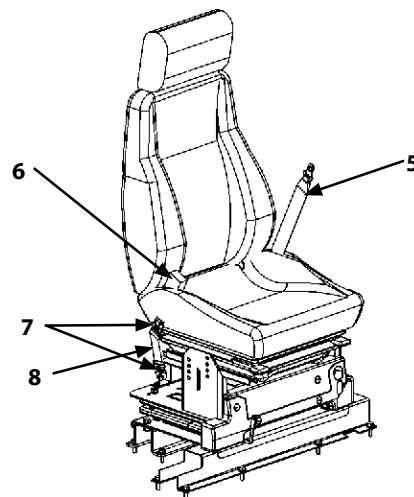
**NOTE:** Wrench size 17 mm  
Tightening torque 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 37 lbf·ft)

### 6 Check and Replace Seat Belt Check --- daily Replace --- every 3 years

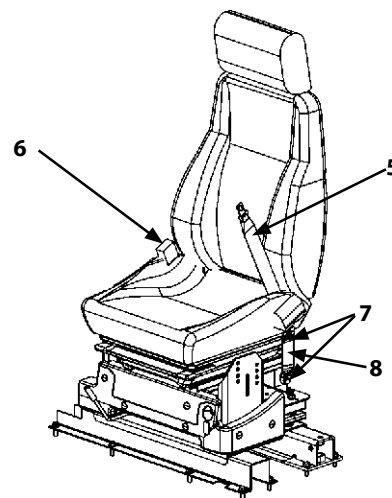
Always maintain seat belt (5) in a functional condition and replace when necessary to ensure proper performance.

Prior to operating the machine, thoroughly examine belt (5), buckle (6) and attaching hardware (7) and tether belt (8). If any item is damaged or materially worn, replace seat belt (5) or component before operating the machine.

We recommend that seat belt (5) be replaced every three years regardless of its apparent condition.



M1U1-07-008

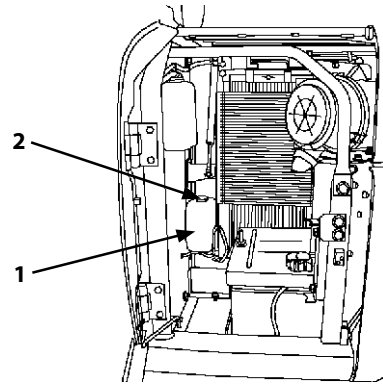


M1U1-07-009

## MAINTENANCE

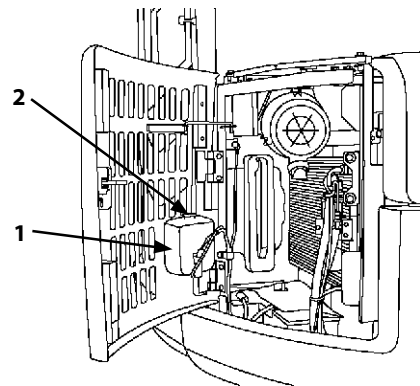
### 7 Check Windshield Washer Fluid Level --- as required.

Check fluid in windshield washer tank (1).  
If the fluid level is low, remove cap (2) and add fluid via the opening.  
During winter season, use all season windshield washer which will not freeze.



ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-037



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-001

## MAINTENANCE


### 8 Check Track Sag --- every 50 hours

Swing the upperstructure 90° and lower the bucket to raise the track off the ground as shown.

Keep the angle between the boom and arm 90 to 110 ° and position the bucket's round side on the ground. Place blocks under the machine frame to support the machine. Rotate the raised track in reverse two full rotations and then forward two full rotations.

Measure distance (A) at the middle of the track frame from the bottom of the track frame to the back face of the track shoe.

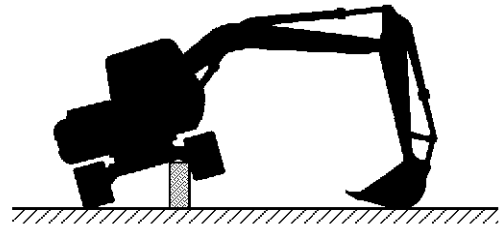
Track sag specifications --- 210 to 235 mm  
(8.3 to 9.3 in)

 **NOTE:** Check track sag after thoroughly removing soil stuck on the track area by washing.

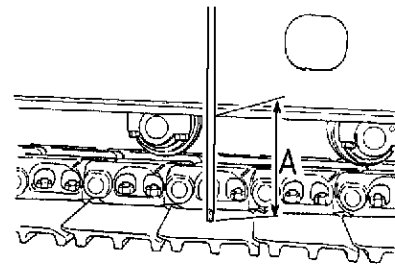
#### Adjust Track Sag

##### Precautions for Adjusting Track Sag

1. If track sag is not within specifications, loosen or tighten the track following the procedures shown on the next page.
2. When adjusting track sag, lower the bucket to the ground to raise one track off the ground. Repeat this procedure to raise the other track. Each time, be sure to place blocks under the machine frame to support the machine.
3. After adjusting track sag of both tracks, move the machine back and forth several times.
4. Check track sag again. If track sag is not within specifications, repeat adjustment until correct sag is obtained.



M1CC-07-014



M102-07-045

## MAINTENANCE

### Loosen the Track

**CAUTION:** Do not loosen valve (1) quickly or loosen it too much as high-pressure grease in the adjusting cylinder may spout out. Loosen carefully, keeping body parts and face away from valve (1). Never loosen grease fitting (2).

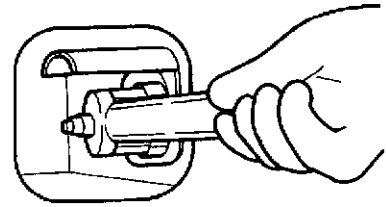
**IMPORTANT:** When gravel or mud is packed between sprockets and track links, remove it before loosening.

1. To loosen the track, slowly turn valve (1) counterclockwise using long socket 19; grease will escape from the grease outlet.
2. Between 1 to 1.5 turns of valve (1) is sufficient to loosen the track.
3. If grease does not drain smoothly, slowly rotate the raised track.
4. When proper track sag is obtained, turn valve (1) clockwise and tighten to 150 N·m (15 kgf·m, 108 lbf·ft).

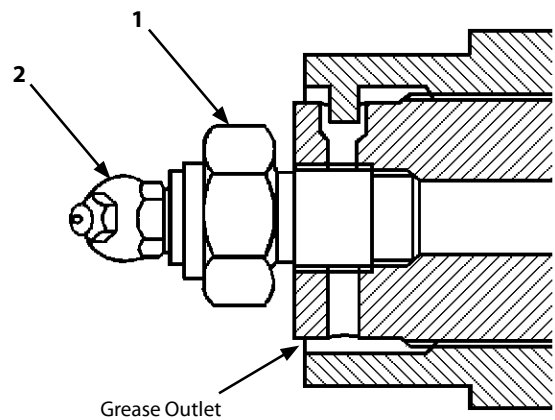
### Tighten the Track

**CAUTION:** It is abnormal if the track remains tight after turning valve (1) counterclockwise or if the track is still loose after charging grease to fitting (2). In such cases, NEVER ATTEMPT TO DISASSEMBLE the track or track adjuster, because of dangerous high-pressure grease inside the track adjuster. See your authorized dealer immediately.

To tighten the track, connect a grease gun to grease fitting (2) and add grease until the sag is within specifications.



M107-07-075



M104-07-119

## MAINTENANCE

### 9 Clean and Replace Air Conditioner Filter Clean Filter

**Circulating Air Filter --- every 500 hours**

**Fresh Air Filter --- every 500 hours**

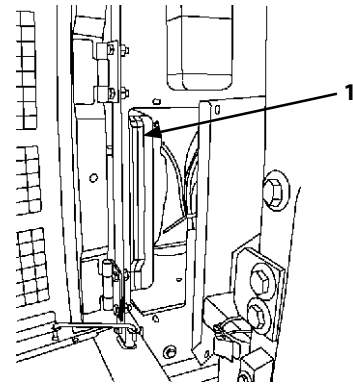
### Replace Filter

**Circulating Air Filter --- After cleaning 6 times or so**

**Fresh Air Filter --- After cleaning 6 times or so**

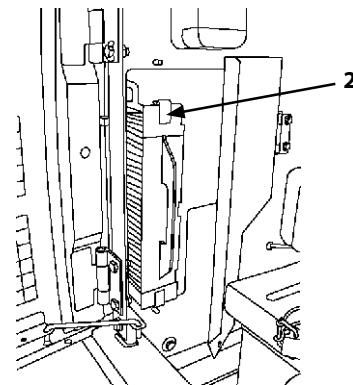
### Removing Fresh Air Filter

1. From the cab outside, pull the upper section of filter cover (1) located at the rear of the cab to remove the cover.
2. Pull the grip on fresh air filter (2) through the opening for filter cover (1) to remove fresh air filter (2).



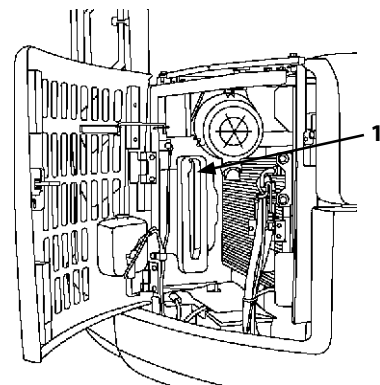
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-039



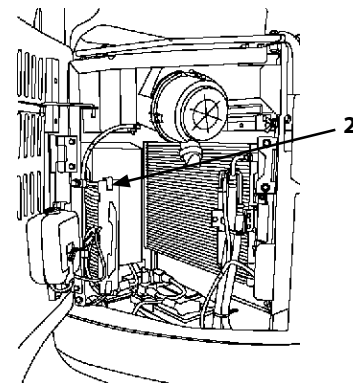
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-040



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-001



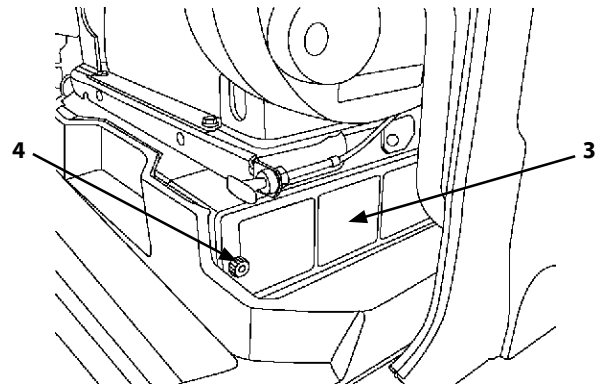
ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-026

## MAINTENANCE

### Removing Circulating Air Filter (Outside) (ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3)

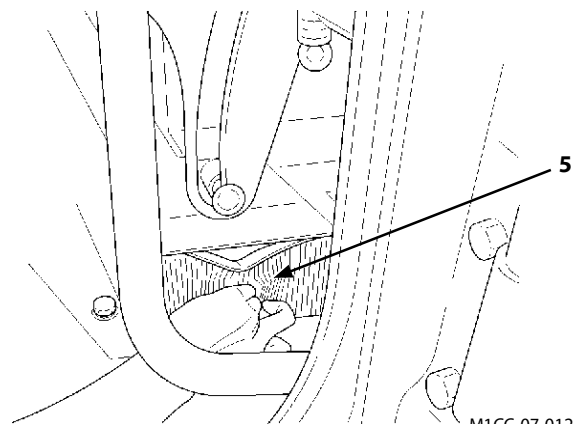
1. Circulating air filter (outside) (5) is located beside the seat stand.
2. Remove screw (6). While pulling toward the cab front, unlatch air filter (outside) (5) from the seat stand to remove air filter (outside) (5).



M1P1-07-027

### Removing Circulating Air Filter (Inside) (ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3)

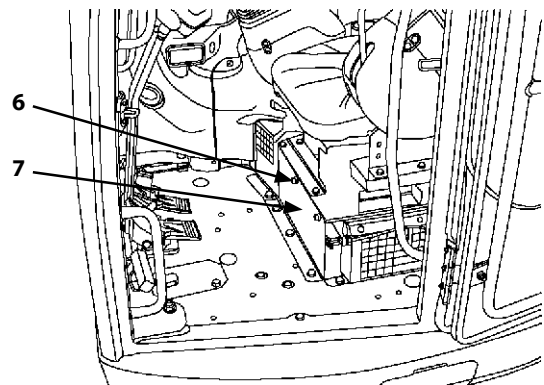
1. Hold the center of circulating air filter (inside) (7) (front half section in two pieces) to remove it through opening for circulating air filter (outside) (5).
2. Slide circulating air filter (inside) (7) (rear half section in two pieces) toward the cab front. Remove it in the same method as the front section.



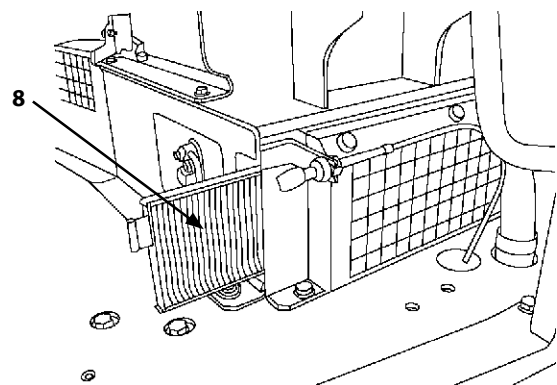
M1CC-07-012

### Removing Circulating Air Filter (ZX85USB-3)

1. Remove cover (7) after removing screw (6).
2. Pull circulating air filter (8) out.  
Hold the center of air filter (8) to remove air filter (8).



M1P1-07-022



M1P1-07-041

## MAINTENANCE

**CAUTION:** Use reduced compressed air pressure (less than 0.2 MPa, 2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) for cleaning purposes. Clear the area of bystanders, guard against flying chips, and wear personal protection equipment including eye protection.

### Cleaning

Clean both the external and internal filters by blowing compressed air or washing with water.

When washing the filters with water, follow the procedures below:

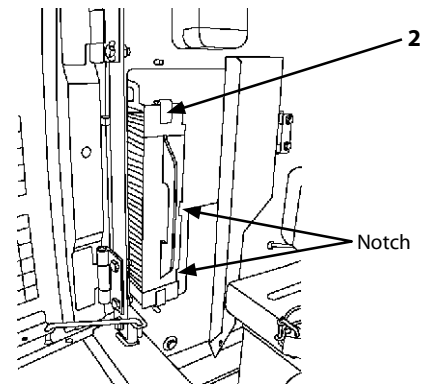
1. Wash with tap water.
2. Soak the filters in neutral detergent-mixed water for approx. 5 minutes.
3. Wash the filters with water again.
4. Dry the filters.

### Installation

#### (ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3)

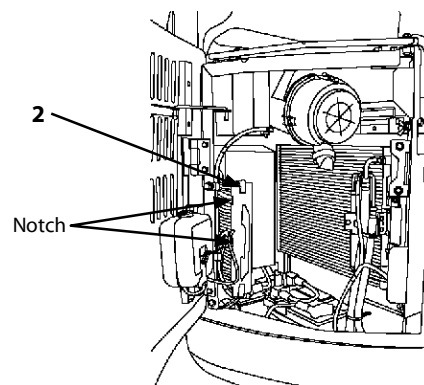
When installing the cleaned circulating and/or fresh air filter or new filters, follow the reverse order of the Removing Filter procedures described on the front page.

- Fresh Air Filter (2)  
Set fresh air filter (2) so that the notched side faces toward the cab right side (ZX75US-3: left side). After setting, install the filter cover so that it aligns with the duct.
- Circulating Air Filter (Inside) (5)  
Install filter (rear section in two pieces) (5) into the groove and slide it toward the cab rear side. Then, install filter (front section in two pieces) (5) into the groove.
- Latch circulating air filter (outside) (3) into the seat stand. Slide it toward the cab rear side and secure it with screw (4).



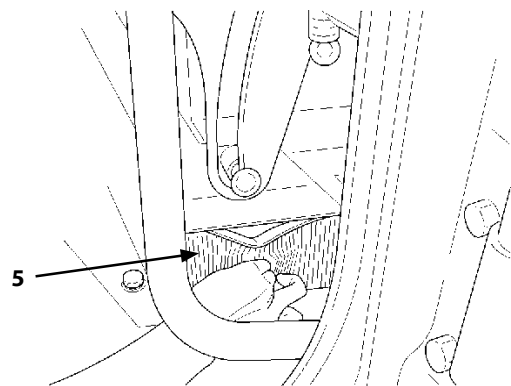
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-040

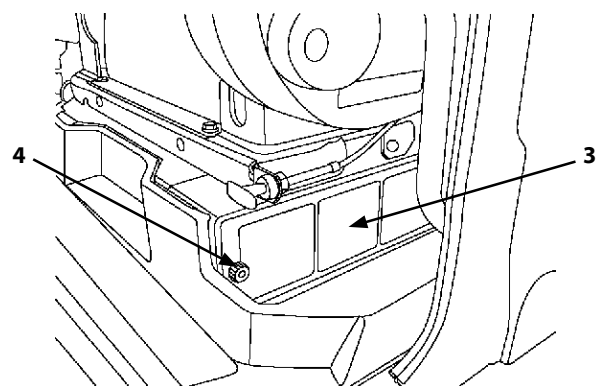


ZX75US-3

M1P1-07-026



M1CC-07-012



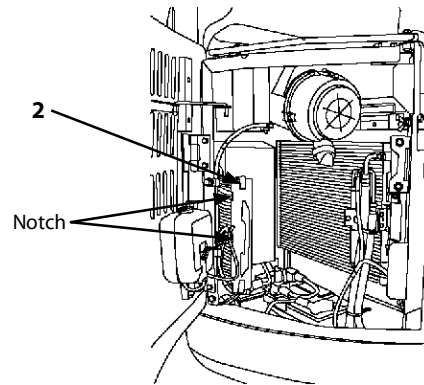
M1P1-07-027

## MAINTENANCE

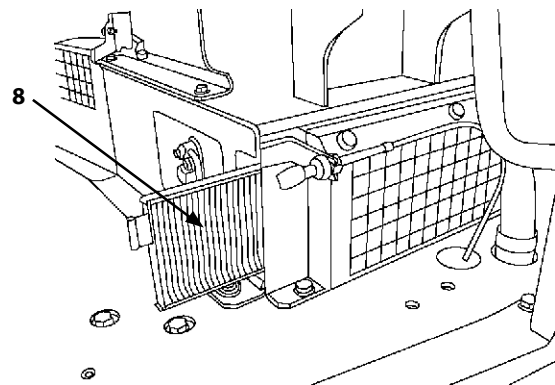
### Installation (ZX85USB-3)

When installing the cleaned circulating and/or fresh air filter or new filters, follow the reverse order of the Removing Filter procedures described on the front page.

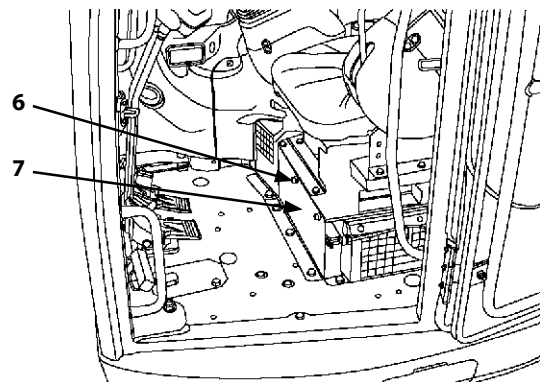
- Fresh Air Filter (2)  
Set fresh air filter (2) so that the notched side faces toward the cab left side. After setting, install the filter cover so that it aligns with the duct.
- Circulating Air Filter (8)  
Install filter (rear section in two pieces) (8) into the groove and slide it toward the cab rear side. Then, install filter (front section in two pieces) (8) into the groove.
- Latch circulating air filter (8) into the seat stand. Slide cover (7) toward the cab rear side and secure cover (7) with screw (6).



M1P1-07-026



M1P1-07-041



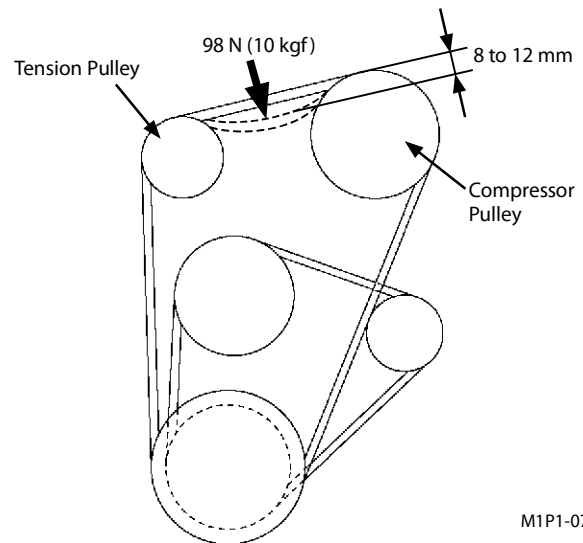
M1P1-07-022



## MAINTENANCE

### 10 Check the Air Conditioner --- daily

1. Check pipe connections for refrigerant gas leakage.  
If oil seepage is found around pipe connections, it indicates possible gas leakage.
2. Check the condenser.  
If the condenser fins become clogged with dirt or insects, the cooling effect will be decreased. Be sure to keep it clean at all times. (Refer to "Clean Radiator Core" in Maintenance Section.)
3. Check the compressor  
After operating the air conditioner for 5 to 10 minutes, touch the high-pressure side and low-pressure side pipes with your hand. If normal, the high-pressure side pipe will be hot, and the low-pressure side cold.
4. Check mounting bolts for looseness.  
Confirm that the compressor mounting bolts and other mounting/fastening bolts are securely tightened.
5. Inspect belt, check and adjust tension.  
Visually check the compressor and fan belts for wear.  
Check and adjust belt tension, referring to the illustration (right).



M1P1-07-023

If cool air does not come out, or any other abnormalities are found in air conditioner system, see your authorized dealer for inspection.

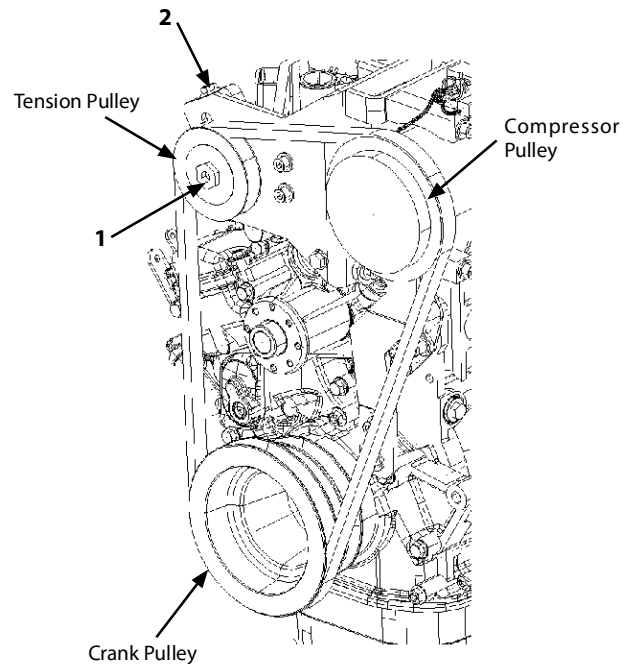
## MAINTENANCE

### Adjust Compressor Belt Tension

Visually check the belt for wear. Replace if necessary. Check compressor belt tension by depressing the midpoint between compressor pulley and crank pulley with the thumb. Deflection must be 8 to 12 mm (0.32 to 0.47 in) with a depressing force of approximately 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf).

If tension is not within specifications, loosen bolt (1). Move the tension pulley by adjusting bolt (2) until tension is correct. Tighten bolt (1).

**IMPORTANT:** When a new belt is installed, be sure to re-adjust the tension after operating the engine for 3 to 5 minutes at slow idle speed to be sure that the new belt is seated correctly.

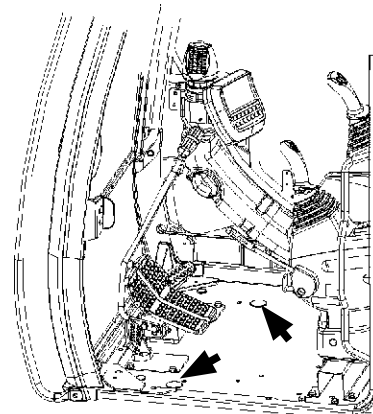


M1P1-07-068

### 11 Clean Cab Floor --- as required

**IMPORTANT:** When cleaning the cab floor with tap water, spray the floor only. Take care not to splash the surrounding area. Do not increase water spray speed by restricting the hose end, and do not use high pressure steam for cleaning. Be sure to completely remove any moisture from the surrounding area.

1. Park the machine on solid and level surface. Lower the bucket to the ground. Before cleaning, stop the engine.
2. Sweep the cab floor clean using a brush, and brush dust from the cab floor while spraying water.
3. When cleaning the floor mat, sweep dust (water) along the grooves on the floor mat.
4. When cleaning after removing the floor mat, sweep dust (water) through two cleaning holes.



M1U1-07-052

## MAINTENANCE

---

- 12** **Check Injection Nozzle**  
--- every 500 hours

See your authorized dealer.

- 13** **Retighten Cylinder Head Bolt**  
--- as required

See your authorized dealer.

- 14** **Inspect and Adjust Valve Clearance**  
--- every 1000 hours

See your authorized dealer.

- 15** **Check Fuel Injection Timing**  
--- as required

See your authorized dealer.

- 16** **Check Starter and Alternator**  
--- every 1000 hours

See your authorized dealer.

- 17** **Check and Replace EGR Device**  
--- as required

See your authorized dealer.

- 18** **Measure Engine Compression Pressure**  
--- every 1000 hours

See your authorized dealer.

## MAINTENANCE

### 19 Check Tightening Torque of Bolts and Nuts --- every 250 hours (first time after 50 hours)










Check tightness after the first 50 hours then every 250 hours. Tighten to torque shown if any are loose. Bolts and nuts should be replaced with those of the same or higher grade. For tightening nuts and bolts other than specified in the table below, refer to the Tightening Torque Chart at the end of this section.

**IMPORTANT: Check and tighten bolts and nuts using a torque wrench.**

No.	Descriptions	Bolt Dia	Q'ty	Wrench Size	Torque			
		mm		mm	N-m	(kgf-m)	(lbf-ft)	
1	Engine cushion rubber mounting bolt	14	2	22	180	(18)	(133)	
		16	2	24	270	(27)	(200)	
2	Engine bracket mounting bolt	10	8	17	50	(5)	(37)	
		12	8	19	90	(9)	(66)	
3	Hydraulic oil tank mounting bolt	16	4	24	270	(27)	(200)	
4	Fuel tank mounting bolt	16	4	24	210	(21)	(155)	
5	ORS fittings for hydraulic hoses and piping			17	20	(2)	(15)	
				19	30	(3)	(22)	
				22	40	(4)	(29)	
				27	95	(9.5)	(69)	
				32	140	(14)	(101)	
				36	180	(18)	(129)	
		41	210	(21)	(151)			
6	Pump mounting bolt	18	2	27	300	(30)	(220)	
7	Control valve mounting bolt	14	3	22	180	(18)	(133)	
8	Control valve bracket mounting bolt	ZX70-3, 70LC-3	12	4	19	90	(9)	(66)
		ZX75US-3, 85USB-3	14	4	22	140	(14)	(103)
9	Swing device mounting bolt	16	10	24	210	(21)	(155)	
10	Swing motor mounting bolt	14	8	12	180	(18)	(129)	
11	Battery mounting nut	10	4	17	20	(2.0)	(15.0)	
12	Cab mounting nut	16	4	24	210	(21)	(155)	
13	Swing bearing mounting bolt to upperstructure	16	24	24	210	(21)	(155)	
	Swing bearing mounting bolt to undercarriage	16	24	24	270	(27)	(200)	
14	Travel device mounting bolt	16	20	24	300	(30)	(220)	
	Travel reduction device cover mounting bolt	14	8	22	140	(14)	(103)	
15	Sprocket mounting bolt	16	24	24	270	(27)	(200)	
16	Upper roller mounting bolt	14	2	22	140	(14)	(103)	
17	Lower roller mounting bolt	14	40	22	250	(25)	(180)	
18	ZX70-3	14	304	22	250	(25)	(180)	
	ZX70LC-3, 75USB-3, 85USB-3	14	320	22	250	(25)	(180)	
19	Cover mounting bolt	6		10	10	(1)	(7.4)	
		18		13	20	(2)	(15)	
		10		17	50	(5)	(37)	
		12		19	90	(9)	(66)	
20	Flexible master coupling of low pressure piping	8	4	13	11 to 13	(1.1 to 1.3)	(7.6 to 9.1)	
21	Coupling of low pressure piping		4	9.5	4.5	(0.45)	(3.3)	
	T-bolt clamp of low pressure piping	Suction hose		2	11	10	(1.0)	(7.4)
		In-take air duct		1	9.5	7.4	(0.74)	(5.4)
		Radiator hose		1	9.5	7.4	(0.74)	(5.4)
22	Side-cutter mounting bolt	20	6	30	550	(55)	(400)	

## MAINTENANCE

Tightening Torque Chart

Bolt Dia.	Wrench Size	Hexagon Wrench Size	   <small>M552-07-091</small>			   <small>M552-07-090</small> Socket Bolt			   <small>M157-07-225</small>		
			N·m	(kgf·m)	(lbf·ft)	N·m	(kgf·m)	(lbf·ft)	N·m	(kgf·m)	(lbf·ft)
M8	13	6	30	(3.0)	(22)	20	(2.0)	(15)	10	(1.0)	(7.4)
M10	17	8	65	(6.5)	(48)	50	(5.0)	(37)	20	(2.0)	(15)
M12	19	10	110	(11)	(81)	90	(9)	(66)	35	(3.5)	(26)
M14	22	12	180	(18)	(135)	140	(14)	(103)	55	(5.5)	(41)
M16	24	14	270	(27)	(200)	210	(21)	(155)	80	(8.0)	(59)
M18	27	14	400	(40)	(295)	300	(30)	(220)	120	(12)	(89)
M20	30	17	550	(55)	(410)	400	(40)	(295)	170	(17)	(125)
M22	32	17	750	(75)	(550)	550	(55)	(410)	220	(22)	(160)
M24	36	19	950	(95)	(700)	700	(70)	(520)	280	(28)	(205)
M27	41	19	1400	(140)	(1030)	1050	(105)	(770)	400	(40)	(295)
M30	46	22	1950	(195)	(1440)	1450	(145)	(1070)	550	(55)	(410)
M33	50	24	2600	(260)	(1920)	1950	(195)	(1440)	750	(75)	(550)
M36	55	27	3200	(320)	(2360)	2450	(245)	(1810)	950	(95)	(700)

**⚠ CAUTION:** If fixing bolts for counterweight are loosened, consult your nearest authorized dealer.

**IMPORTANT:** Make sure bolt and nut threads are clean before installing.  
 Apply lubricant (e. g. white zinc B solved into spindle oil) to bolts and nuts to stabilize their friction coefficient.

**✎ NOTE:** Tightening torque required is shown in N·m.  
 For example, when tightening a bolt or nut with a wrench of 1 m length, turning the end of it with a force of 120 N, the torque produced will be:

$$1\text{ m} \times 120\text{ N} = 120\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$$

To produce the same torque with a wrench of 0.25 m:

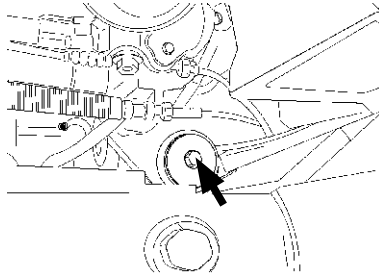
$$0.25\text{ m} \times \boxed{\phantom{000}}\text{ N} = 120\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$$

Necessary force will be:

$$120\text{ N}\cdot\text{m} \div 0.25\text{ m} = 480\text{ N}$$

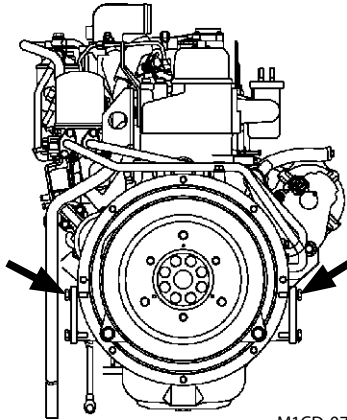
## MAINTENANCE

1. Retighten the engine insulation rubber mounting bolts.



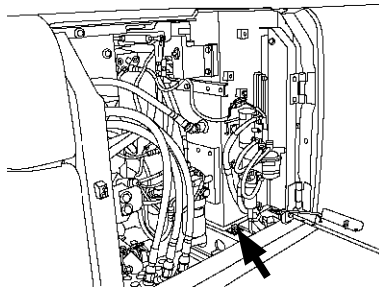
M1CD-07-030

2. Retighten the engine bracket mounting bolts.

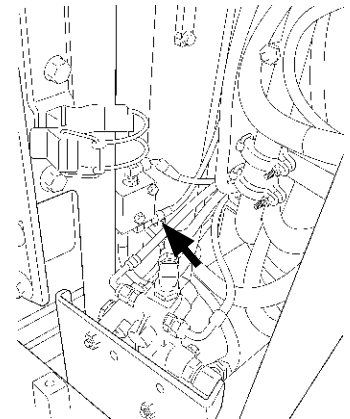


M1CD-07-031

3. Retighten the hydraulic oil tank mounting bolts.

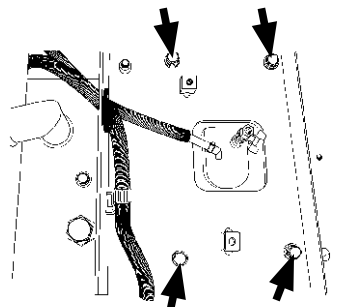


M1P1-07-014  
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

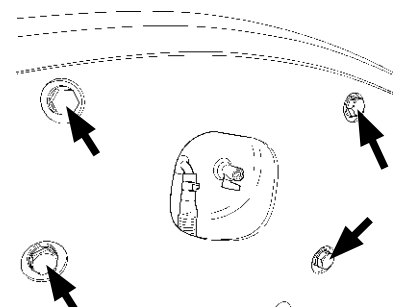


M1CG-07-025  
ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

4. Retighten the fuel tank mounting bolts.



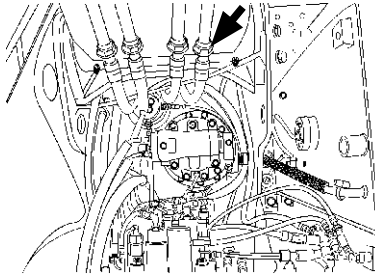
M1CD-07-018  
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3



M1CG-07-013  
ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

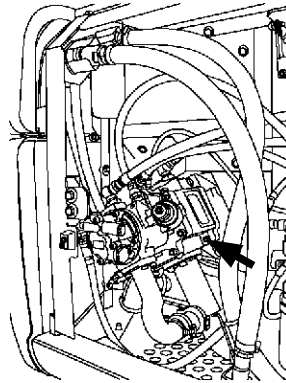
## MAINTENANCE

5. Retighten the ORS fittings for hydraulic hoses and pipings.



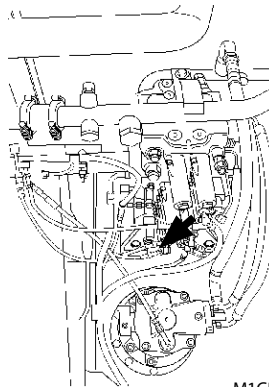
M1CD-07-004

6. Retighten the pump mounting bolts.



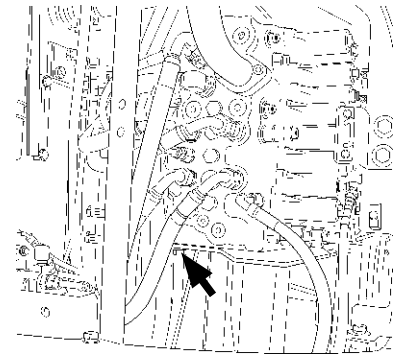
M1P1-07-032

7. Retighten the control valve mounting bolts.



M1CD-07-032

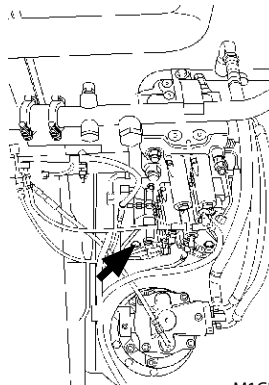
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3



M1CG-07-026

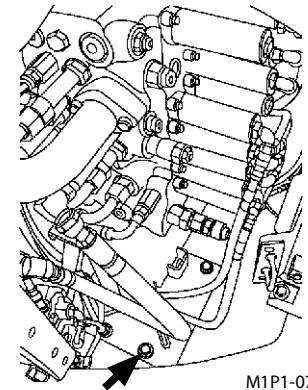
ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

8. Retighten the control valve bracket mounting bolts.



M1CD-07-032

ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

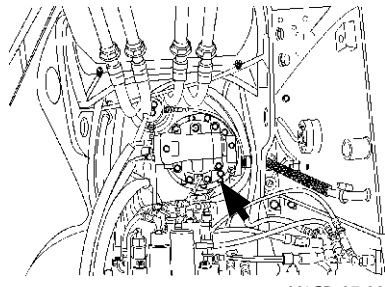


M1P1-07-056

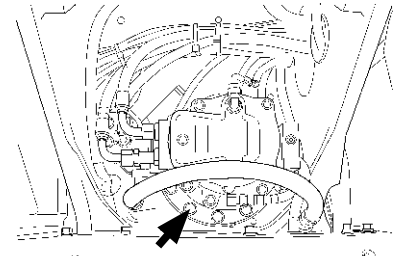
ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

## MAINTENANCE

9. Retighten the swing device mounting bolts.

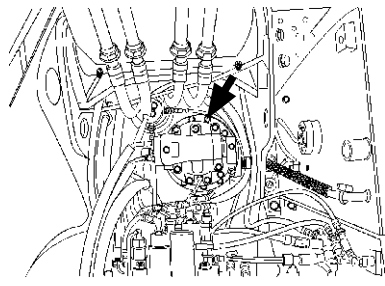


M1CD-07-004  
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

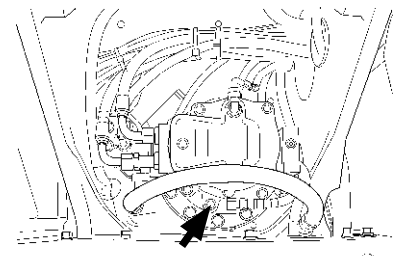


M1CG-07-029  
ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

10. Retighten the swing motor mounting bolts.

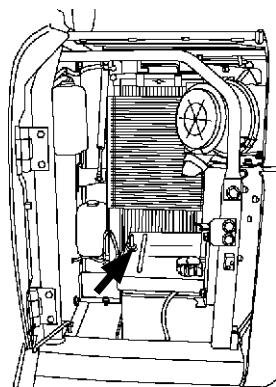


M1CD-07-004  
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

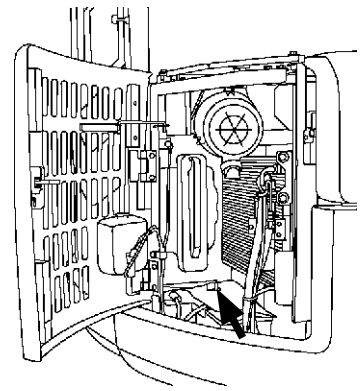


M1CG-07-029  
ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

11. Retighten the battery mounting nuts.

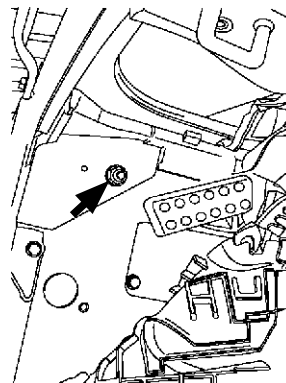


M1P1-07-037  
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

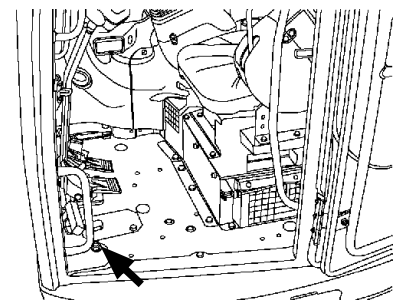


M1P1-07-001  
ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

12. Retighten the cab mounting nuts.



M1U1-07-026  
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3



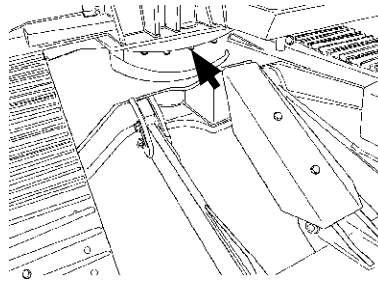
M1P1-07-022  
ZX85USB-3



## MAINTENANCE

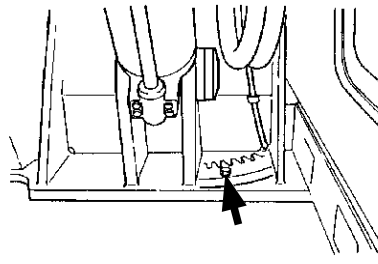
---

13. Retighten the swing bearing mounting bolts to the upperstructure.



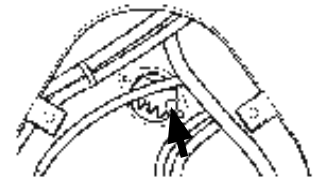
M1CD-07-007

- Retighten the swing bearing mounting bolts to the undercarriage.



M1CD-07-035

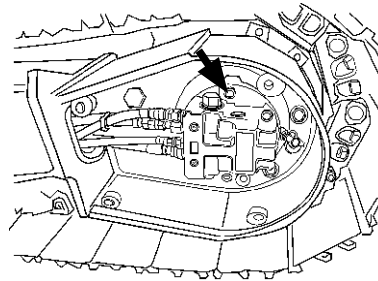
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3, 80LCK-3



M1CD-07-043

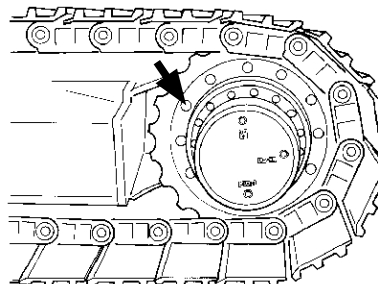
ZX85USB-3

14. Retighten the travel device mounting bolts.



M1CD-01-005

15. Retighten the sprocket mounting bolts.

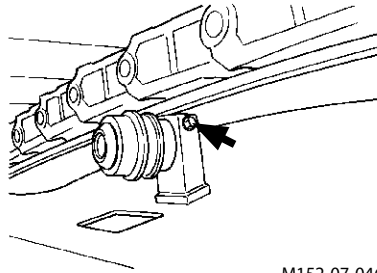


M1CC-07-019

## MAINTENANCE

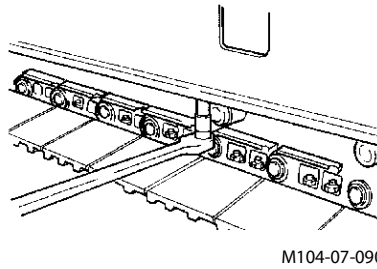
---

16. Retighten the upper roller mounting bolts.



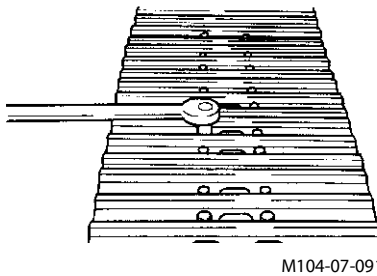
M152-07-046

17. Retighten the lower roller mounting bolts.



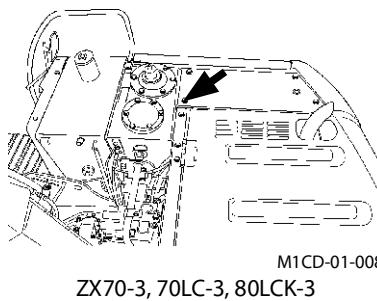
M104-07-090

18. Retighten the shoe mounting bolts.



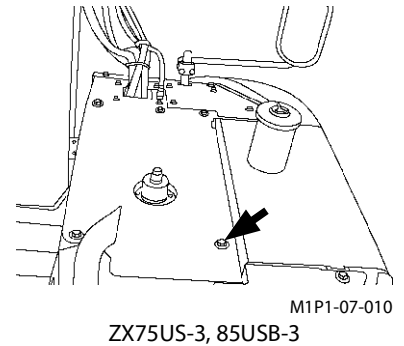
M104-07-091

19. Retighten the cover mounting bolts.



M1CD-01-008

ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

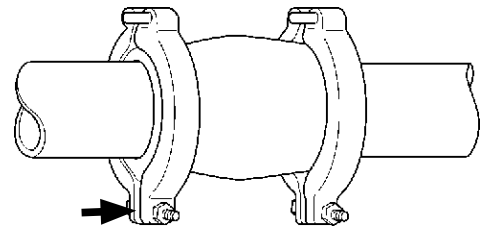


M1P1-07-010

ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

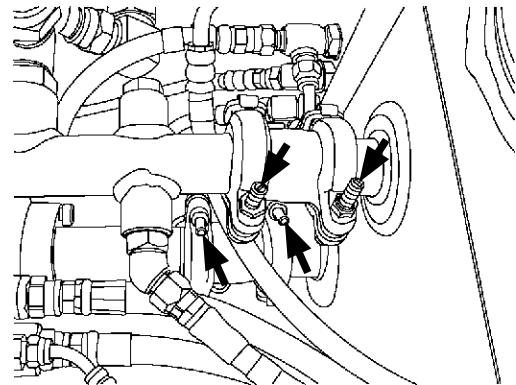
# MAINTENANCE

## 20. Retighten flexible master couplings



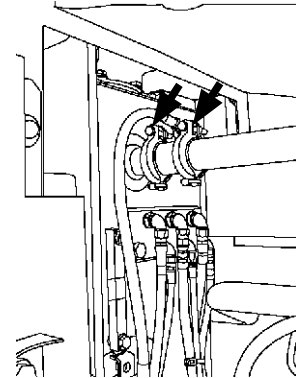
Flexible Master Coupling

M1G6-07-008



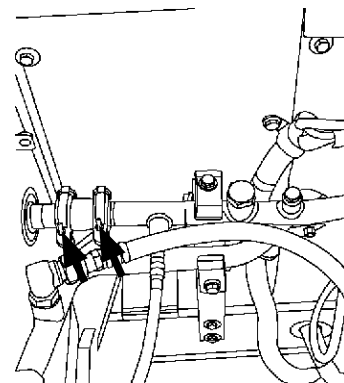
ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 80LCK-3

M1P1-07-050



ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-051



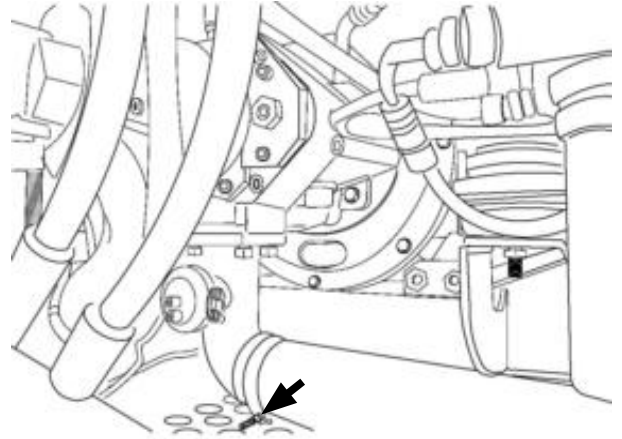
ZX75US-3, 85USB-3

M1P1-07-052

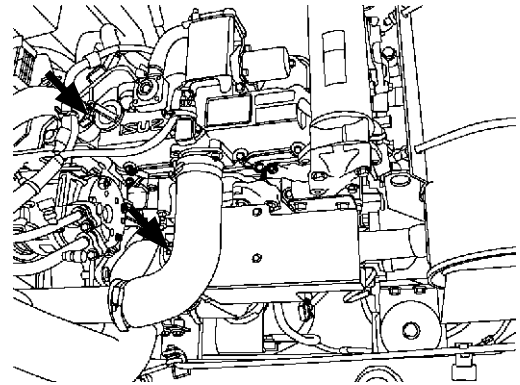
## MAINTENANCE

---

### 21. Retighten coupling and T-bolt clamps

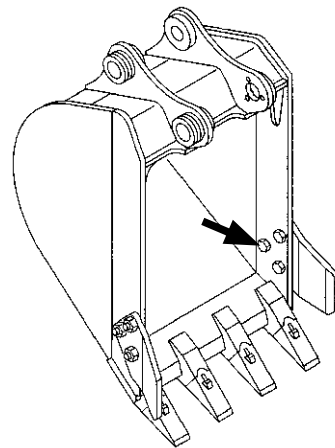


M1CD-07-033



M1P1-07-028

### 22. Retighten side-cutter mounting bolts



M196-09-024



## MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

### MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Operating Conditions	Precautions for Maintenance
Muddy Soil, Rainy or Snowy Weather	<p>Before Operation: Check the tightness of plugs and all drain cocks.</p> <p>After Operation: Clean the machine and check for cracks, damaged, loose or missing bolts and nuts. Lubricate all necessary parts without delay.</p>
Near the Ocean	<p>Before Operation: Check tightness of plugs and all drain cocks.</p> <p>After Operation: Thoroughly clean the machine with fresh water to wash off salt. Service electrical equipment often to prevent corrosion.</p>
Dusty Atmosphere	<p>Air Cleaner: Clean the element regularly at shorter service intervals.</p> <p>Radiator: Clean the oil cooler screen to prevent clogging of the radiator core.</p> <p>Fuel System: Clean the filter element and strainer regularly at shorter service intervals.</p> <p>Electrical Equipment: Clean them regularly, in particular, the commutator surface of the alternator and starter.</p>
Rocky Ground	<p>Tracks: Carefully operate while checking for cracks, damage and loose bolts and nuts. Loosen the tracks a little more than usual.</p> <p>Front Attachment: Standard attachment may be damaged when digging rocky ground. Reinforce the bucket before using it, or use a heavy duty bucket.</p>
Freezing Weather	<p>Fuel: Use high quality fuel suitable for low temperature.</p> <p>Lubricant: Use high quality low viscosity hydraulic oil and engine oil.</p> <p>Engine Coolant: Be sure to use antifreeze.</p> <p>Battery: Fully charge the batteries regularly at shorter service intervals. If not fully charged, electrolyte may freeze.</p> <p>Tracks: Keep the track clean. Park the machine on a hard surface to prevent the tracks from freezing to the ground.</p>
Falling Stones	<p>Cab: Provide a cab guard to protect the machine from falling stones when necessary.</p>



## STORAGE

---

### STORING THE MACHINE

1. Inspect the machine. Repair worn or damaged parts. Install new parts if necessary.
2. Clean the primary air cleaner element.
3. Retract all hydraulic cylinders, if possible. If not, coat exposed cylinder rods with grease.
4. Lubricate all grease points.
5. Park the tracks on long stable blocks.
6. Wash the machine.
7. Remove the batteries and store them in a dry protected place after charging fully. If not removed, disconnect the negative battery cable from the (-) terminal.
8. Add an antirust agent to the coolant. In cold weather, add an antifreeze, or drain the coolant completely. Be sure to attach a "No Water in Radiator" tag on a clearly visible location if the system is drained.
9. Loosen the alternator belt and fan belt.
10. Paint necessary areas to prevent rust.
11. Store the machine in a dry, protected place. If stored outside, cover with a waterproof cover.
12. If the machine is stored for a long time, operate hydraulic functions for travel, swing and digging two to three times for lubrication, at least once a month. Be sure to check the coolant level and lubrication conditions before operating.

### **Precautions for Disconnecting or Connecting**

#### **Batteries**

In case the batteries are kept disconnected for more than one month or when the batteries are reconnected, contact your nearest Hitachi dealer. Resetting of the ICF (Information Controller) may be required.



## STORAGE

---

### REMOVING THE MACHINE FROM STORAGE



**CAUTION:** Start the engine **ONLY** in a well-ventilated place.

1. Remove grease from the cylinder rods if coated.
2. Adjust alternator and fan belt tension.
3. Fill the fuel tank. Bleed air from the fuel system. Check all fluid levels.
4. Start the engine.  
Run the engine at half speed for several minutes before full load operation.
5. Cycle all hydraulic functions several times.
6. Carefully check all systems before operating the machine at full load.



**NOTE:** When the machine has been stored for a long time, be sure to perform the following steps as well:

- (a) Check condition of all hoses and connections.
- (b) Warm up the engine.
- (c) Stop the engine.
- (d) Install new fuel filters. Replace the engine oil filter and fill the engine with oil.

**IMPORTANT:** If the machine has not been used for a long time, oil films on sliding surfaces may have broken down. Cycling hydraulic functions for travel, swing and digging two to three times is necessary to lubricate the sliding surfaces.

## TROUBLESHOOTING

### IMPOSSIBLE TO START THE ENGINE

	Problem	Cause	Solution
<b>Engine will not start</b>	<b>Starter does not rotate or is not powerful</b>	Discharged battery Disconnected, loose, or corroded battery terminals Lowered pilot control shut-off lever. Disconnected, loose, or corroded starter ground line terminals. Faulty pilot control shut-off lever electrical system Too high engine oil viscosity Faulty starter and/or electrical system	Charge or replace battery. After repairing the corroded area, securely tighten the connectors. Pull pilot control shut-off lever up. After repairing the corroded area, securely tighten the connectors. See your authorized dealer. Change engine oil with appropriate viscosity. See your authorized dealer.
	<b>Starter rotates</b>	No fuel Air in the fuel system Clogged fuel filter Frozen fuel Injection pump linkage adjustment Faulty injection pump Faulty engine control system The engine stop knob is pulled. Faulty EC motor Faulty preheat system	After checking that no fuel is leaking, refill fuel. Bleed air. After draining water, replace the element. Warm the fuel pump with hot water or wait until the atmospheric temperature rises. See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer. Push the engine stop knob to start the engine. See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer.
	<b>Even though the engine is started, the engine stalls soon</b>	Too slow idle speed Clogged fuel filter Faulty engine control system Clogged air cleaner Faulty injection pump	See your authorized dealer. After draining water, replace the element. See your authorized dealer. Clean or replace the element. See your authorized dealer.
	<b>Engine runs irregularly</b>	Faulty fuel system Water or air in the fuel system Faulty engine control system	See your authorized dealer. Drain water or bleed air. See your authorized dealer.

## TROUBLESHOOTING

### ENGINE

Problem	Cause	Solution
<b>Engine Not Developing Full Power</b>	Air filters plugged	Replace filter elements.
	Fuel line restricted	Repair or replace fuel line.
	Contaminated fuel	Drain fuel tank and clean outlet screen. Refill.
	Fuel filters plugged	Change filters.
	Plugged vent in fuel tank cap	Clean or install new cap.
	Injection nozzles dirty or malfunctioning	See your authorized dealer.
	Injection pump linkage adjustment	See your authorized dealer.
	Wrong fuel	Use correct fuel.
	Wrong oil	Use correct oil.
	Turbocharger failure	See your authorized dealer.
	Injection pump out of timing	See your authorized dealer.
	Exhaust restriction	Remove muffler and run engine.
	Engine is too hot or cold	See below.
	Engine failure	See your authorized dealer.
Valve clearance	Check and adjust valves.	
Intake or exhaust system leakage	See your authorized dealer.	
<b>Engine Overheats</b>	Low coolant level	Add coolant.
	Thermostat	See your authorized dealer.
	Engine overloaded	Check hydraulic relief valves.
	Radiator cap faulty	Install new cap.
	Radiator core or oil cooler core plugged	Clean radiator and oil cooler core.
	Radiator screen plugged	Clean screen.
	Injection pump out of timing	See your authorized dealer.
	Fan damaged	Replace fan.
	Air cleaner plugged	Clean air cleaner.
	Alternator and fan belt loose	Tighten or install new belt.
	Pulley grooves worn	Replace pulleys.
	Cooling system passages dirty	Flush cooling system.
	Temperature gauge or sending unit	See your authorized dealer.

## TROUBLESHOOTING

### ENGINE

Problem	Cause	Solution
<b>Coolant Temperature Too Low</b>	Thermostat	See your authorized dealer.
	Temperature gauge or sending unit	See your authorized dealer.
<b>Low Engine Oil Pressure</b>	Engine oil pump or pump drive	See your authorized dealer.
	Low oil level	Add oil.
	Engine oil pressure regulation valve	See your authorized dealer.
	Plugged oil pump intake screen	See your authorized dealer.
	Plugged oil filter	Install a new oil filter.
	Oil leaks	Check for leaks.
	Oil diluted with fuel or coolant	See your authorized dealer.
	Engine oil temperature too high	Check cooling system.
<b>Engine Uses Too Much Oil</b>	Wrong oil	Drain oil. Use correct oil.
	Oil leaks	Check engine oil drain plug.
	Engine oil temperature too high	Check cooling system.
	Plugged air cleaner	Clean element or install new element.
	Internal engine component wear	See your authorized dealer.
<b>Engine Uses Too Much Fuel</b>	Plugged or dirty air intake system	Clean air intake system.
	Wrong fuel	Use correct fuel.
	Fuel injection nozzles	See your authorized dealer.
	Injection pump out of timing	See your authorized dealer.
<b>Excessive Black or Gray Exhaust Smoke</b>	Wrong fuel	Drain tank. Use correct fuel.
	Plugged or dirty air intake or exhaust system	Clean air intake and exhaust system.
	Injection pump out of timing	See your authorized dealer.
	Injection nozzles dirty or faulty	See your authorized dealer.
	Basic engine failures	See your authorized dealer.

## TROUBLESHOOTING

### ENGINE

Problem	Cause	Solution
<b>Nothing Works</b>	Battery	Recharge or replace.
<b>Nothing Works (Except clock)</b>	Battery relay	Replace relay.
<b>Batteries Undercharged</b>	Loose or corroded connections Alternator belt loose Alternator not charging Fuse Key switch failure	Clean and tighten or replace batteries. Tighten or install new belt. See your authorized dealer. Replace fuse. Replace key switch.
<b>Starting Motor Will Not Turn</b>	Battery undercharged or dead Battery cables making poor connections Fusible link Key switch Start relay Starter solenoid Starter Starter pinion jammed in flywheel gear Major engine failure	Recharge or replace battery. Clean connections. Replace fusible link. See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer. Repair or replace start motor. Repair or replace starter. See your authorized dealer.
<b>Starter Solenoid Chatters</b>	Poor connections at batteries or starter Low battery charge Starter solenoid "hold-in" windings open	Clean connections. Recharge or replace batteries. See your authorized dealer.
<b>Starter Motor Turns but Will Not Crank Engine</b>	Starter pinion gear not engaging flywheel ring gear Pinion shift mechanism jammed or malfunctioning Pinion gear teeth broken Flywheel gear teeth broken	See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer.
<b>Engine Cranks Slowly</b>	Battery cables damaged or broken internally Battery or starter cable connections loose or corroded	Inspect and replace cables. Clean and tighten connections.

## TROUBLESHOOTING

### ENGINE

Problem	Cause	Solution
<b>Exhaust Gas is White</b>	<p>Wrong fuel</p> <p>Cold engine</p> <p>Thermostat faulty or too “cool”</p> <p>Injection pump out of time</p> <p>Coolant leakage into engine cylinder</p>	<p>Drain tank. Use correct fuel.</p> <p>Run engine until warm.</p> <p>See your authorized dealer.</p> <p>See your authorized dealer.</p> <p>See your authorized dealer.</p>
<b>Turbocharger Excessively Noisy or Vibrates</b>	<p>Bearings not lubricated</p> <p>Worn bearings</p> <p>Air leak in engine, intake or exhaust manifold</p> <p>Improper clearance between turbine wheel and turbine housing</p> <p>Broken blades on turbine</p>	<p>Insufficient oil pressure. Check for restricted turbocharger oil line.</p> <p>See your authorized dealer.</p> <p>Inspect, repair.</p> <p>See your authorized dealer.</p> <p>Remove exhaust elbow and air inlet hose and inspect.</p>
<b>Oil Dripping from Turbocharger Adapter</b>	<p>Damaged or worn bearings and/or worn seals</p> <p>Excessive crankcase pressure</p> <p>Turbocharger oil return line carbon build up where line passes exhaust manifold</p>	<p>See your authorized dealer. Inspect and clean air cleaner. Check for proper engine service intervals or dirt enter into engine.</p> <p>Check vent tube to ensure tube is not plugged. Clean.</p> <p>Remove line. Inspect, clean.</p>
<b>Excessive Drag in Turbocharger Rotating Members</b>	<p>Carbon build-up behind turbine wheel caused by combustion deposits</p> <p>Dirt build-up behind compressor wheel caused by air intake leaks</p> <p>Bearing seizure or dirty or worn bearings, caused by excessive temperature, unbalanced wheel, dirty oil, oil starvation, or insufficient lubrication</p>	<p>Inspect, clean.</p> <p>Inspect, clean.</p> <p>See your authorized dealer.</p>

## TROUBLESHOOTING

### ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

Problem	Cause	Solution
<b>Engine Cranks Slowly</b>	Battery discharged or will not hold a charge	Replace battery.
	Starter "dragging"	See your authorized dealer.
	Low battery voltage	Recharge or replace battery.
<b>Starter Motor Continues to Run After Engine Starts</b>	Start relay stuck	See your authorized dealer.
	Starter solenoid stuck	See your authorized dealer.
	Starter not disengaging	See your authorized dealer.
	Key switch	See your authorized dealer.
<b>Alternator Indicator Light On-Engine Running</b>	Loose or glazed alternator belt	Check belt. Replace if glazed, tighten if loose.
	Engine speed slow	Adjust speed to specification.
	Excessive electrical load from added accessories	Remove accessories or install higher output alternator.
	Loose or corroded electrical connections on battery, ground strap, starter, or alternator	Inspect, clean, or tighten electrical connections.
	Battery voltage low	Change or replace battery.
	Alternator or regulator	See your authorized dealer.
	Indicator circuit	See your authorized dealer.
<b>Noisy Alternator</b>	Worn drive belt	Replace belt.
	Worn pulleys	Replace pulleys and belt.
	Pulley misaligned	Adjust alternator mount.
	Alternator bearing	Loosen alternator belts. Turn pulley by hand. If any roughness is felt, repair alternator.
<b>No Monitor Panel Indicators Work</b>	Fuse	Replace fuse.
	Wiring harness	See your authorized dealer.
<b>Individual Light in Monitor Panel is Not Working</b>	Bulb	Replace bulb.
	Fuse	Replace fuse.
	Wiring harness	See your authorized dealer.

## TROUBLESHOOTING

### ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Cause</b>	<b>Solution</b>
<b>No Indicators in Gauge Panel Operate</b>	Circuit board Wiring harness Fuse	See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer. Replace fuse.
<b>Indicator Light in Gauge Panel is Inoperative</b>	Fuse Sender Wiring harness failure	Replace fuse. Do sender check. See your authorized dealer.
<b>Coolant Temperature Gauge Does Not Work</b>	Fuse Gauge Gauge sender Wiring harness	Replace fuse. See your authorized dealer. Do coolant temperature gauge sender check. See your authorized dealer.
<b>Indicator Lights Do Not Operate Auto-idle</b>	Fuse Auto-idle switch	Replace fuse. See your authorized dealer.
<b>Fuel Gauge Does Not Work</b>	Fuse Gauge Wiring harness	Replace fuse. See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer.



## TROUBLESHOOTING

### MODE SELECTION

Problem	Cause	Solution
<b>Fast/Slow Travel Speed Does Not Function</b>	Travel mode switch	See your authorized dealer.
	Main controller (MC)	See your authorized dealer.
	Solenoid valve unit	See your authorized dealer.
	Damaged travel motors	See your authorized dealer.
<b>Auto-Idle Does Not Work</b>	Fuse	Replace fuse.
	Auto-idle switch	See your authorized dealer.
	Electrical connector	See your authorized dealer.
	Wire harness	See your authorized dealer.
	ECF	See your authorized dealer.
	EC motor	See your authorized dealer.
	Pressure sensor (Travel, Front)	See your authorized dealer.
Main controller (MC)	See your authorized dealer.	
<b>Front Attachment and Travel Speed are Not Smooth</b>	Fuse	Replace fuse.
	Electrical connector	See your authorized dealer.
	Wire harness	See your authorized dealer.
	Main controller (MC)	See your authorized dealer.
	Solenoid valve unit	See your authorized dealer.
	ECF	See your authorized dealer.
	EC motor	See your authorized dealer.
N sensor (engine speed sensor)	See your authorized dealer.	

## TROUBLESHOOTING

---

### CONTROL LEVERS

Problem	Cause	Solution
<b>Moves Hard</b>	Corroded joint	See your authorized dealer.
	Worn out pusher	See your authorized dealer.
<b>Does Nothing</b>	Worn out pusher	See your authorized dealer.
	Pilot valve	See your authorized dealer.
<b>Does Not Return to Neutral</b>	Pilot valve	See your authorized dealer.
<b>Too Much Play</b>	Worn out pivot joint	See your authorized dealer.
<b>Lever is Not Vertical In Neutral</b>	Pilot valve	See your authorized dealer.

## TROUBLESHOOTING

### HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

Problem	Cause	Solution
<b>Hydraulic Functions are Slow</b>	Low oil level Cold oil Wrong oil Engine speed too slow Pilot circuit Worn pump Restricted pump suction line	Fill reservoir to full mark. Push hydraulic warm up switch. Drain tank. Use correct oil. Increase speed or see your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer.
<b>Hydraulic Oil Overheats</b>	Wrong oil Air leak in pump suction line Oil lines restricted Low oil level Plugged filters Worn pump Plugged radiator or oil cooler Oil cooler bypass Relief valve Contaminated oil Travel motors Improperly adjusted hydraulic components	Use correct oil. See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer. Fill reservoir to full mark. Install new filters. See your authorized dealer. Clean and straighten fins. See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer. Drain oil and refill. See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer.
<b>Oil Foams</b>	Air leak in line from reservoir to pump Kinks or dents in oil lines Wrong oil Water in oil High or low oil level	Repair leak or see your authorized dealer. Check lines. Use correct oil. Change oil. Correct level.
<b>Low or No Oil Pressure</b>	Wrong oil Improperly adjusted hydraulic components No oil in system Worn cylinder packing Relief valve	Use correct oil. See your authorized dealer. Fill with correct oil. See your authorized dealer. See your authorized dealer.

## TROUBLESHOOTING

### HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

Problem	Cause	Solution
<b>No Hydraulic Functions (Noise from pumps)</b>	Hydraulic pump	See your authorized dealer.
	Decreased set-pressure of main relief valve in control valve	See your authorized dealer.
	Lack of hydraulic oil	Add oil.
	Damaged suction line or hose	See your authorized dealer.
	Clogged suction filter	Clean.
	Sucked air from oil suction port	Tighten.
<b>Hydraulic Cylinders Operate but Cannot Lift Load</b>	Hydraulic pump worn	See your authorized dealer.
	Main relief valve pressure low	See your authorized dealer.
	Hydraulic oil level low	Add oil.
	Suction screen plugged	Clean strainer and system.
	Pump suction line leaking	Inspect suction line.
	Pressure sensors	See your authorized dealer.
Solenoid valve	See your authorized dealer.	
<b>One Control Lever Does Not Work</b>	Relief valve pressure low	See your authorized dealer.
	Tube or hose damaged	Repair or replace.
	Hydraulic fittings loose	Tighten.
	Damaged O-rings in fittings	Install new O-ring.
	Hydraulic Pump	See your authorized dealer.
	Pilot valve	See your authorized dealer.
	Pilot lines	Repair or replace.
<b>One Cylinder Does Not Work</b>	Control valve spool damaged or contaminated with dirt	See your authorized dealer.
	Hydraulic lines damaged	Repair or replace.
	Fittings loose	Tighten.
	O-ring in fitting damaged	Install new O-ring.
	Pilot valve	See your authorized dealer.
	Pilot lines	Repair or replace.

## TROUBLESHOOTING

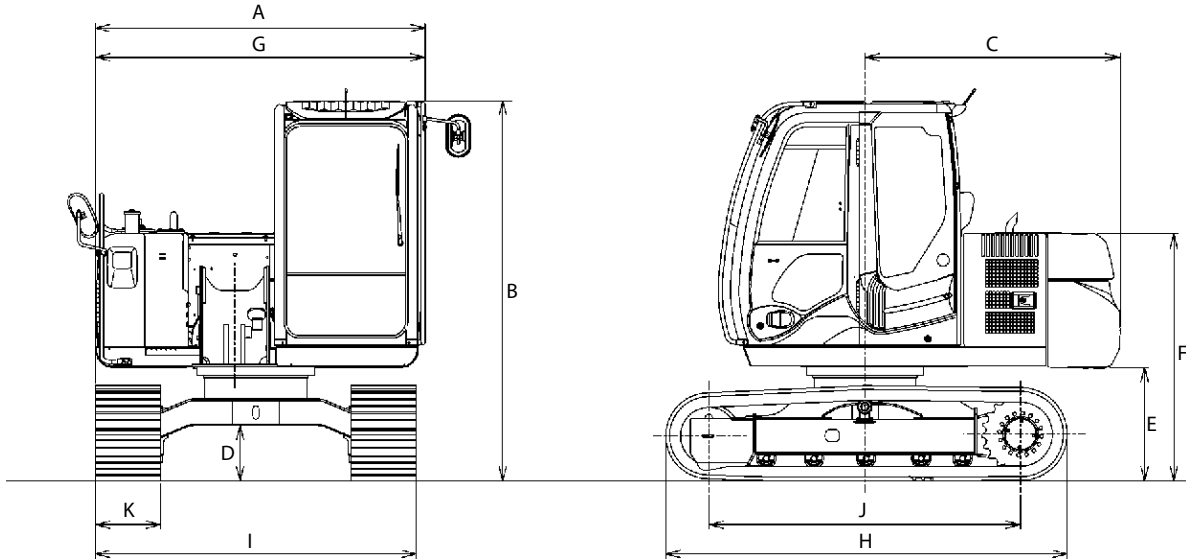
### HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

Problem	Cause	Solution
<b>One Cylinder Does Not Work or Has Little Power</b>	Piston seals leaking	See your authorized dealer.
	Cylinder rod damaged	See your authorized dealer.
	Pilot lines	Repair or replace.
	Pilot valve	See your authorized dealer.
	Failed wiring harness	See your authorized dealer.
<b>Both Travel Motors Do Not Work</b>	Center joint failure	See your authorized dealer.
<b>One Travel Motor Does Not Work</b>	Travel motor	See your authorized dealer.
	Parking brake not releasing	See your authorized dealer.
	Pilot valve	See your authorized dealer.
	Pilot lines	Repair or replace.
<b>Travel is Not Smooth</b>	Track adjustment	Adjust tension.
	Front idler or rollers damaged	See your authorized dealer.
	Track frame bent	See your authorized dealer.
	Rocks or mud "jammed" in track frame	Remove and repair.
	Travel brake not releasing	See your authorized dealer.
<b>Swing Does Not Work</b>	Swing brake release valve	See your authorized dealer.
	Swing motor	See your authorized dealer.
	Pilot valve	See your authorized dealer.
<b>Swing is Not Smooth</b>	Swing gear	See your authorized dealer.
	Swing bearing	See your authorized dealer.
	Lack of grease	Apply grease.
	Combination valve	See your authorized dealer.
<b>Engine Stops When Travel or/ and Control Lever Moved</b>	Failure of connector contact	Repair or replace.
	Failed wiring harness	See your authorized dealer.
	Failed Main controller	See your authorized dealer.

## SPECIFICATIONS

### SPECIFICATIONS

#### ZX70-3, 70LC-3



M1P1-12-001

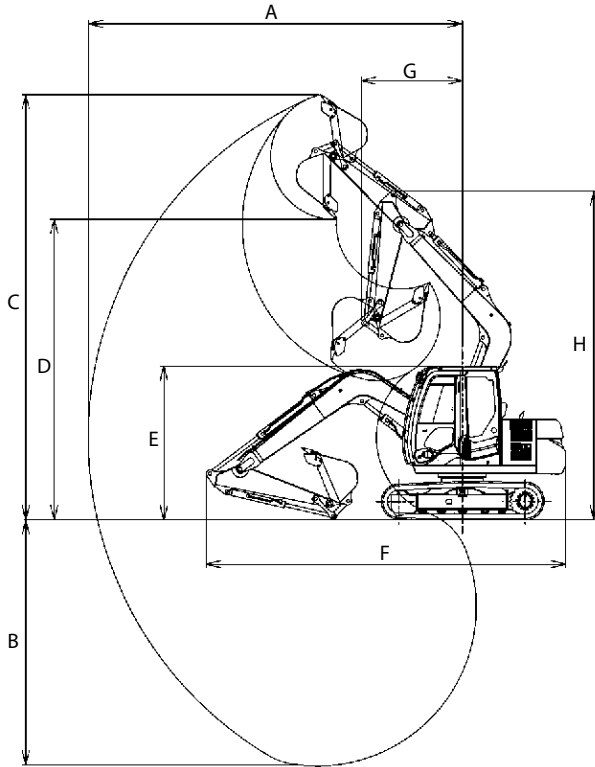
Model	ZX70-3	ZX70LC-3
Front-End Attachment	1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm	
Standard Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	PCSA 0.28 m <sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd <sup>3</sup> ), CECE 0.24 m <sup>3</sup>	PCSA 0.33 m <sup>3</sup> (0.43 yd <sup>3</sup> ), CECE 0.29 m <sup>3</sup>
Operating Weight	6470 kg (14300 lb)	6570 kg (14500 lb)
Base Machine Weight	5080 kg (11200 lb)	5160 kg (11400 lb)
Engine	Isuzu AU-4LE2X 40.5 kW/2000 min <sup>-1</sup> (55 PS/2000 rpm)	
A: Overall Width	2260 mm (7 ft 5 in)	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
B: Cab Height	2600 mm (8 ft 6 in)	
C: Rear End Swing Radius	1750 mm (5 ft 9 in)	
D: Minimum Ground Clearance	* 360 mm (1 ft 2 in)	
E: Counterweight Clearance	* 760 mm (2 ft 6 in)	
F: Engine Cover Height	* 1680 mm (5 ft 6 in)	
G: Overall Width of Upperstructure	2260 mm (7 ft 5 in)	
H: Undercarriage Length	2765 mm (9 ft 1 in)	2920 mm (9 ft 7 in)
I: Undercarriage Width	2200 mm (7 ft 3 in)	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
J: Sprocket Center to Idle Center	2140 mm (7 ft 0 in)	2290 mm (7 ft 6 in)
K: Track Shoe Width	450 mm (18 in)	
Ground Pressure	30 kPa (0.31 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.4 psi)	28 kPa (0.29 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.1 psi)
Swing Speed	10.5 min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm)	
Travel Speed	5.3/3.4 km/h (3.3/2.1 mph)	
Gradeability	35 degree (70 %)	

NOTE: \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

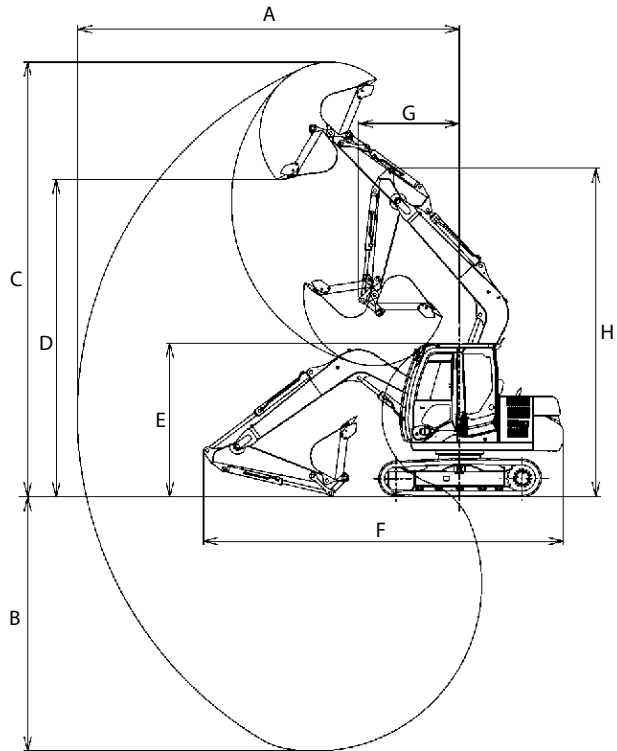
## SPECIFICATIONS

### WORKING RANGES

ZX70-3, 70LC-3



Backhoe



Face Shovel (Reversed hoe bucket)

M1P1-12-002

Item	Category	1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm				2.12 m (7 ft 0 in) Arm			
		Backhoe		Shovel		Backhoe		Shovel	
		mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in
A: Maximum Digging Reach		6320	20'9"	6460	21'2"	6810	22'4"	6950	22'10"
B: Maximum Digging Depth		4170	13'8"	4310	14'2"	4670	15'4"	4810	15'9"
C: Maximum Cutting Height		7150	23'6"	7320	24'0"	7550	24'9"	7710	25'4"
D: Maximum Dumping Height		5060	16'7"	5340	17'6"	5450	17'11"	5770	18'11"
E: Overall Height		2600	8'6"	2600	8'6"	2700	8'10"	2700	8'10"
						(without Bucket)	(without Bucket)	(without Bucket)	(without Bucket)
						2880	9'5"	2880	9'5"
						(with Bucket)	(with Bucket)	(with Bucket)	(with Bucket)
F: Overall Length		6080	19'11"	6080	19'11"	6120	20'1"	6120	20'1"
G: Minimum Swing Radius		1720	5'8"	1720	5'8"	2080	6'10"	2080	6'10"
H: Minimum Swing Radius Height		5530	18'2"	5530	18'2"	5550	18'3"	5550	18'3"


NOTE: "E: Overall Height" includes the height of shoe lug; Other dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

## SPECIFICATIONS

### SHOE TYPES AND APPLICATIONS


#### ZX70-3

Shoe Width	450 mm (18") Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser Shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Pad Shoe
Application	For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight	kg (lb) 6470 (14300)	6630 (14600)	6630 (14600)	6520 (14400)	6790 (15000)
Base Machine Weight	kg (lb) 5080 (11200)	5250 (11600)	5240 (11600)	5130 (11300)	5400 (11900)
Cab Height	mm (ft-in) 2600 (8'6")	2600 (8'6")	2610 (8'7")	2630 (8'8")	2630 (8'8")
Minimum Ground Clearance	mm (ft-in) * 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length	mm (ft-in) 2765 (9'1")	2765 (9'1")	2780 (9'1")	2820 (9'3")	2825 (9'3")
Undercarriage Width	mm (ft-in) 2200 (7'3")	2350 (7'9")	2200 (7'3")	2200 (7'3")	2200 (7'3")
Ground Pressure	30 kPa (0.31 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.4 psi)	23 kPa (0.23 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3.3 psi)	30 kPa (0.31 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.4 psi)	29 kPa (0.30 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.2 psi)	31 kPa (0.32 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.5 psi)

-  NOTE: • The specifications for the front-end attachment is for 1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) arm with PCSA 0.28 m<sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd<sup>3</sup>) bucket.
- 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.
  - \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

#### ZX70LC-3

Shoe Width	450 mm (18") Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser Shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Pad Shoe
Application	For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight	kg (lb) 6570 (14500)	6740 (14900)	6740 (14900)	6620 (14600)	6900 (15200)
Base Machine Weight	kg (lb) 5160 (11400)	5340 (11800)	5330 (11800)	5210 (11500)	5500 (12100)
Cab Height	mm (ft-in) 2600 (8'6")	2600 (8'6")	2610 (8'7")	2630 (8'8")	2630 (8'8")
Minimum Ground Clearance	mm (ft-in) * 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length	mm (ft-in) 2920 (9'7")	2920 (9'7")	2935 (9'8")	2975 (9'9")	2980 (9'9")
Undercarriage Width	mm (ft-in) 2320 (7'7")	2470 (8'1")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")
Ground Pressure	28 kPa (0.29 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.1 psi)	22 kPa (0.22 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3.2 psi)	29 kPa (0.30 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.2 psi)	28 kPa (0.29 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.1 psi)	29 kPa (0.30 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.2 psi)

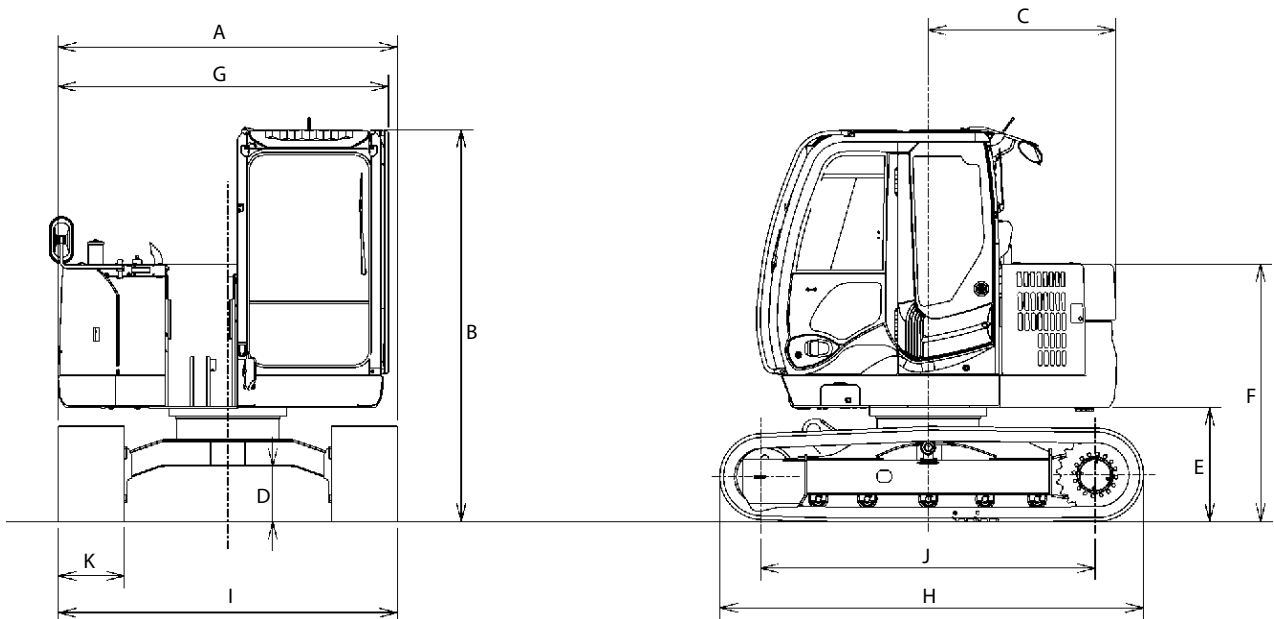
-  NOTE: • The specifications for the front-end attachment is for 1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) arm with PCSA 0.33 m<sup>3</sup> (0.43 yd<sup>3</sup>) bucket.
- 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.
  - \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.



## SPECIFICATIONS

### SPECIFICATIONS

#### ZX75US-3



M1P1-12-011

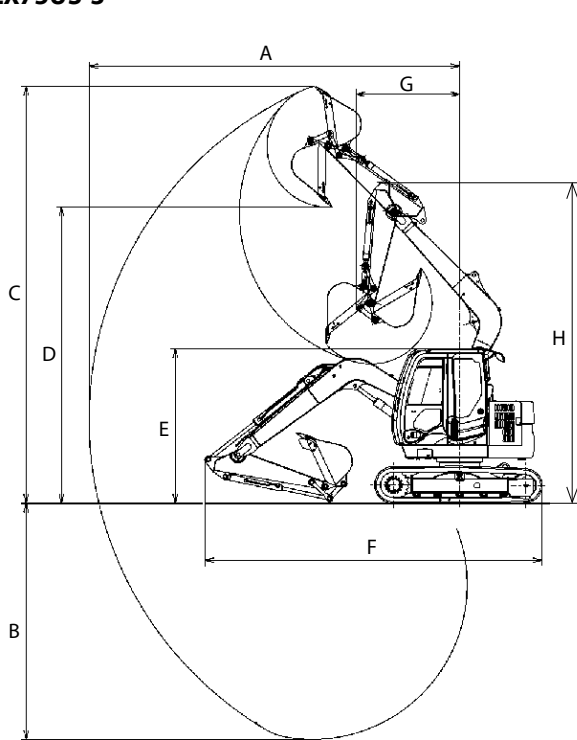
Model	ZX75US-3
Front-End Attachment	1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm
Standard Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	PCSA 0.28 m <sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd <sup>3</sup> ), CECE 0.24 m <sup>3</sup>
Operating Weight	7200 kg (15900 lb)
Base Machine Weight	5800 kg (12800 lb)
Engine	Isuzu AU-4LE2X 40.5 kW/2000 min <sup>-1</sup> (55 PS/2000 rpm)
A : Overall Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
B : Cab Height	2690 mm (8 ft 10 in)
C : Rear End Swing Radius	1290 mm (4 ft 3 in)
D : Minimum Ground Clearance	*360 mm (1 ft 2 in)
E : Counterweight Clearance	*760 mm (2 ft 6 in)
F : Engine Cover Height	*1750 mm (5 ft 9 in)
G : Overall Width of Upperstructure	2250 mm (7 ft 5 in)
H : Undercarriage Length	2920 mm (9 ft 7 in)
I : Undercarriage Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
J : Sprocket Center to Idle Center	2290 mm (7 ft 6 in)
K : Track Shoe Width	450 mm (18 in)
Ground Pressure	31 kPa (0.32 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.5 psi)
Swing Speed	10.5 min <sup>-1</sup> (11.3 rpm)
Travel Speed	5.0/3.1 km/h (3.1/1.9 mph)
Gradeability	35° (tan $\theta$ = 0.70)

NOTE: \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

# SPECIFICATIONS

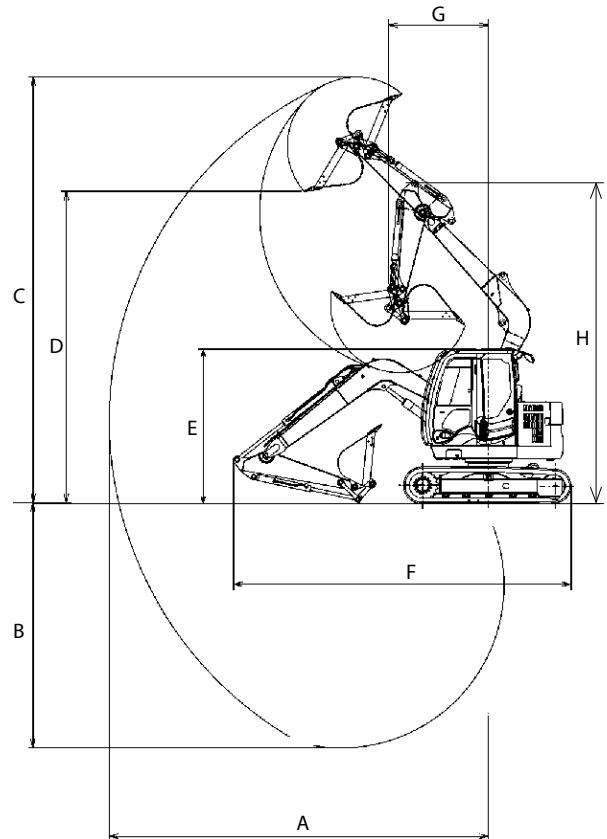
## WORKING RANGES

### ZX75US-3



Backhoe

M1P1-12-007



Face Shovel (Reversed hoe bucket)

M1P1-12-008

Item	Category	1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm				2.12 m (7 ft 0 in) Arm			
		Backhoe		Shovel		Backhoe		Shovel	
		mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in
A: Maximum Digging Reach		6430	21'1"	6570	21'7"	6920	22'8"	7050	23'2"
B: Maximum Digging Depth		4110	13'6"	4250	14'0"	4610	15'2"	4750	15'7"
C: Maximum Cutting Height		7210	23'8"	7370	24'2"	7610	25'0"	7780	25'6"
D: Maximum Dumping Height		5120	16'10"	5390	17'8"	5510	18'1"	5830	19'2"
E: Overall Height		2690	8'10"	2690	8'10"	2690	8'10"	2690	8'10"
						(without Bucket)	(without Bucket)	(without Bucket)	(without Bucket)
						2830	9'3"	2830	9'3"
						(with Bucket)	(with Bucket)	(with Bucket)	(with Bucket)
F: Overall Length		5870	19'3"	5870	19'3"	5950	19'6"	5950	19'6"
G: Minimum Swing Radius		1810	5'11"	1810	5'11"	2170	7'1"	2170	7'1"
H: Minimum Swing Radius Height		5590	18'4"	5590	18'4"	5610	18'5"	5610	18'5"


NOTE: "E: Overall Height" includes the height of shoe lug; Other dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

## SPECIFICATIONS

### SHOE TYPES AND APPLICATIONS

#### ZX75US-3

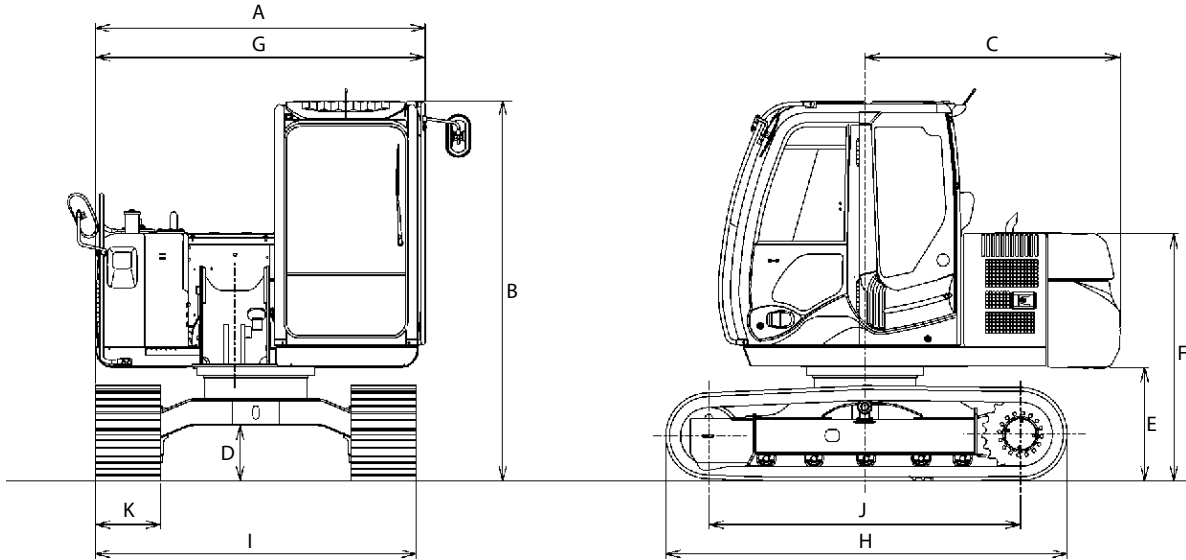
Shoe Width	450 mm (18") Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser Shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Pad Shoe
Application	For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight    kg (lb)	7200 (15900)	7400 (16300)	7400 (16300)	7300 (16100)	7500 (16500)
Base Machine Weight    kg (lb)	5800 (12800)	6000 (13200)	6000 (13200)	5900 (13000)	6200 (13700)
Cab Height            mm (ft-in)	2690 (8'10")	2690 (8'10")	2700 (8'10")	2720 (8'11")	2720 (8'11")
Minimum Ground Clearance            mm (ft-in)	* 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length                mm (ft-in)	2920 (9'7")	2920 (9'7")	2940 (9'7")	2970 (9'9")	2980 (9'9")
Undercarriage Width    mm (ft-in)	2320 (7'7")	2470 (8'1")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")
Ground Pressure	31 kPa (0.32 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.5 psi)	25 kPa (0.25 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3.6 psi)	32 kPa (0.33 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.6 psi)	31 kPa (0.32 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.5 psi)	32 kPa (0.33 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.6 psi)

-  **NOTE:** • The specifications for the front-end attachment is for 1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) arm with PCSA 0.28 m<sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd<sup>3</sup>) bucket.
- 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.
  - \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

# SPECIFICATIONS

## SPECIFICATIONS

### ZX80LCK-3



M1P1-12-001

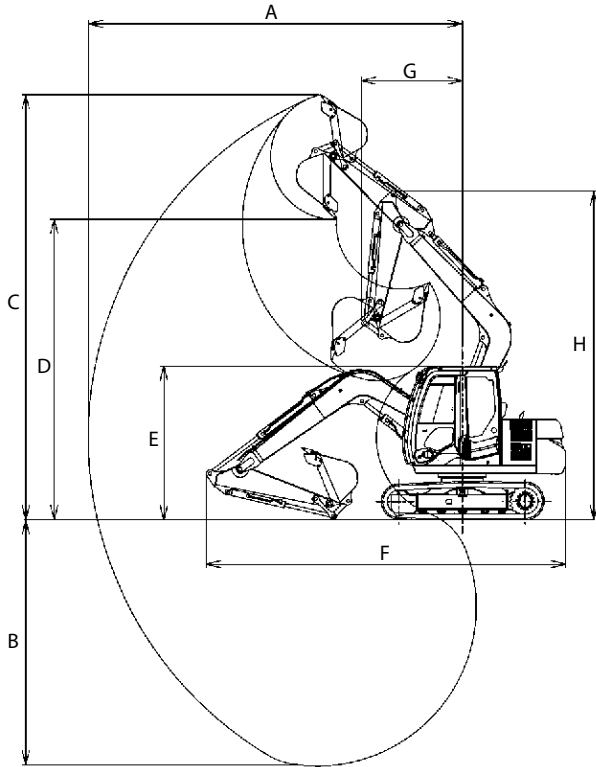
Model	ZX80LCK-3
Front-End Attachment	4.0 m (13 ft 2 in) K Boom, 2.12 m (7 ft 0 in) Arm
Standard Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	PCSA 0.28 m <sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd <sup>3</sup> ), CECE 0.24 m <sup>3</sup>
Operating Weight	7370 kg (16200 lb)
Base Machine Weight	5790 kg (12800 lb)
Engine	Isuzu AU-4LE2X 40.5 kW/2000 min <sup>-1</sup> (55 PS/2000 rpm)
A: Overall Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
B: Cab Height	2730 mm (9 ft 0 in)
C: Rear End Swing Radius	1750 mm (5 ft 9 in)
D: Minimum Ground Clearance	* 360 mm (1 ft 2 in)
E: Counterweight Clearance	* 760 mm (2 ft 6 in)
F: Engine Cover Height	* 1680 mm (5 ft 6 in)
G: Overall Width of Upperstructure	2285 mm (7 ft 6 in)
H: Undercarriage Length	2920 mm (9 ft 7 in)
I: Undercarriage Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
J: Sprocket Center to Idle Center	2290 mm (7 ft 6 in)
K: Track Shoe Width	450 mm (18 in)
Ground Pressure	32 kPa (0.33 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.6 psi)
Swing Speed	10.5 min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm)
Travel Speed	5.3/3.4 km/h (3.3/2.1 mph)
Gradeability	35 degree (70 %)

NOTE: \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

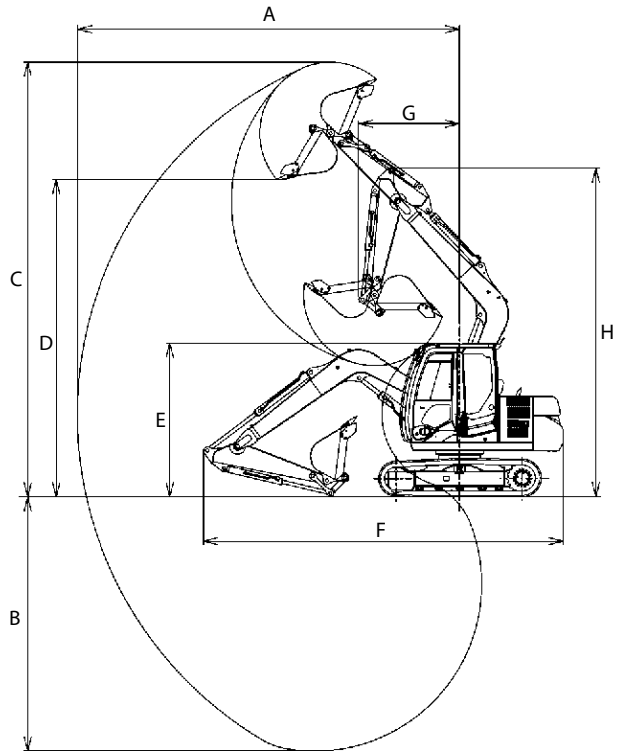
# SPECIFICATIONS

## WORKING RANGES

### ZX80LCK-3



Backhoe



Face Shovel (Reversed hoe bucket)

M1P1-12-002

Item	Category	2.12 m (7 ft 0 in) Arm			
		Backhoe		Shovel	
		mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in
A: Maximum Digging Reach		7130	23'5"	7270	23'10"
B: Maximum Digging Depth		4460	14'8"	4590	15'1"
C: Maximum Cutting Height		8210	26'11"	8350	27'5"
D: Maximum Dumping Height		6090	20'0"	6510	21'4"
E: Overall Height		2730	9'00"	2730	9'0"
F: Overall Length		6470	21'3"	6470	21'3"
G: Minimum Swing Radius		1680	5'6"	1680	5'6"
H: Minimum Swing Radius Height		6010	19'9"	6010	19'9"


NOTE: "E: Overall Height" includes the height of shoe lug; Other dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

## SPECIFICATIONS

### SHOE TYPES AND APPLICATIONS

#### ZX80LCK-3

Shoe Width	450 mm (18") Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser Shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Pad Shoe
Application	For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight    kg (lb)	7370 (16200)	7550 (16700)	7550 (16700)	7430 (16400)	7710 (17000)
Base Machine Weight    kg (lb)	5790 (12700)	5960 (13100)	5960 (13100)	5840 (12900)	6120 (13500)
Cab Height            mm (ft-in)	2730 (9'0")	2730 (9'0")	2740 (9'0")	2760 (9'1")	2760 (9'1")
Minimum Ground Clearance            mm (ft-in)	* 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length            mm (ft-in)	2920 (9'7")	2920 (9'7")	2935 (9'8")	2975 (9'9")	2980 (9'9")
Undercarriage Width    mm (ft-in)	2320 (7'7")	2470 (8'1")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")
Ground Pressure	32 kPa (0.33 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.6 psi)	25 kPa (0.25 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3.6 psi)	32 kPa (0.33 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.6 psi)	32 kPa (0.33 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.6 psi)	33 kPa (0.34 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.8 psi)

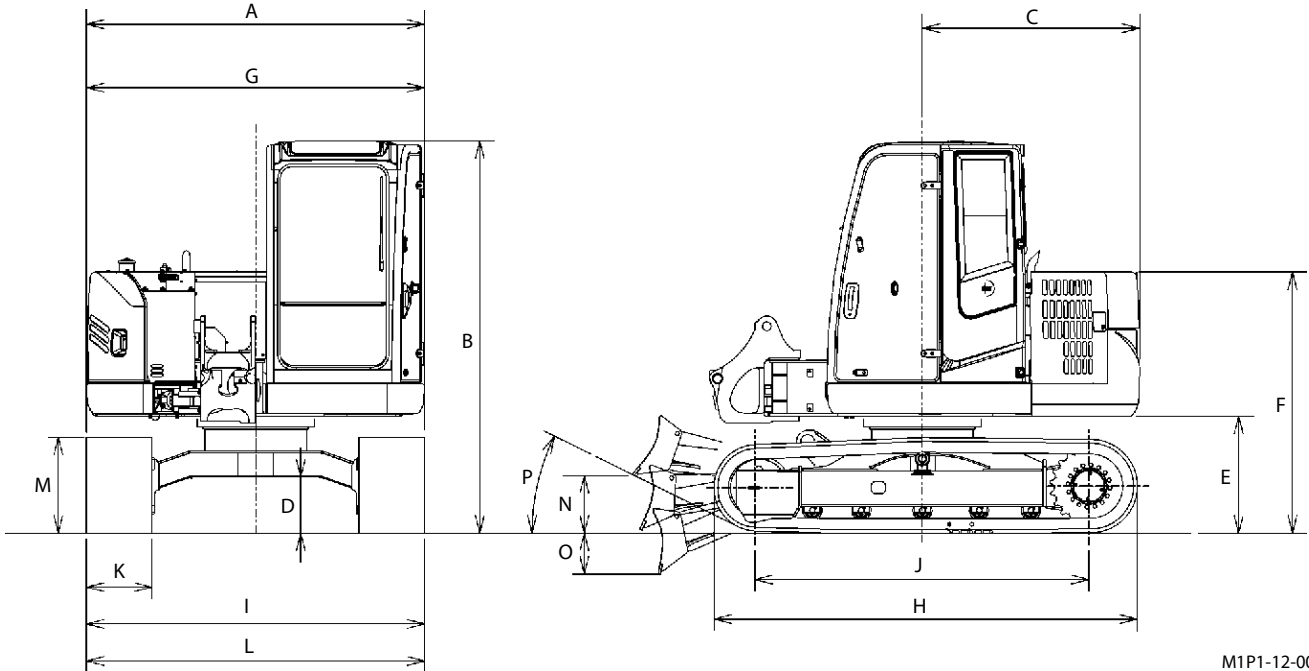
 **NOTE:** • The specifications for the front-end attachment is for 4.0 m (13 ft 2 in) K boom and 2.12 m (7 ft 0 in) arm with PCSA 0.28 m<sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd<sup>3</sup>) bucket.

- 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.
- \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

## SPECIFICATIONS

### SPECIFICATIONS

#### ZX85USB-3



MIP1-12-004

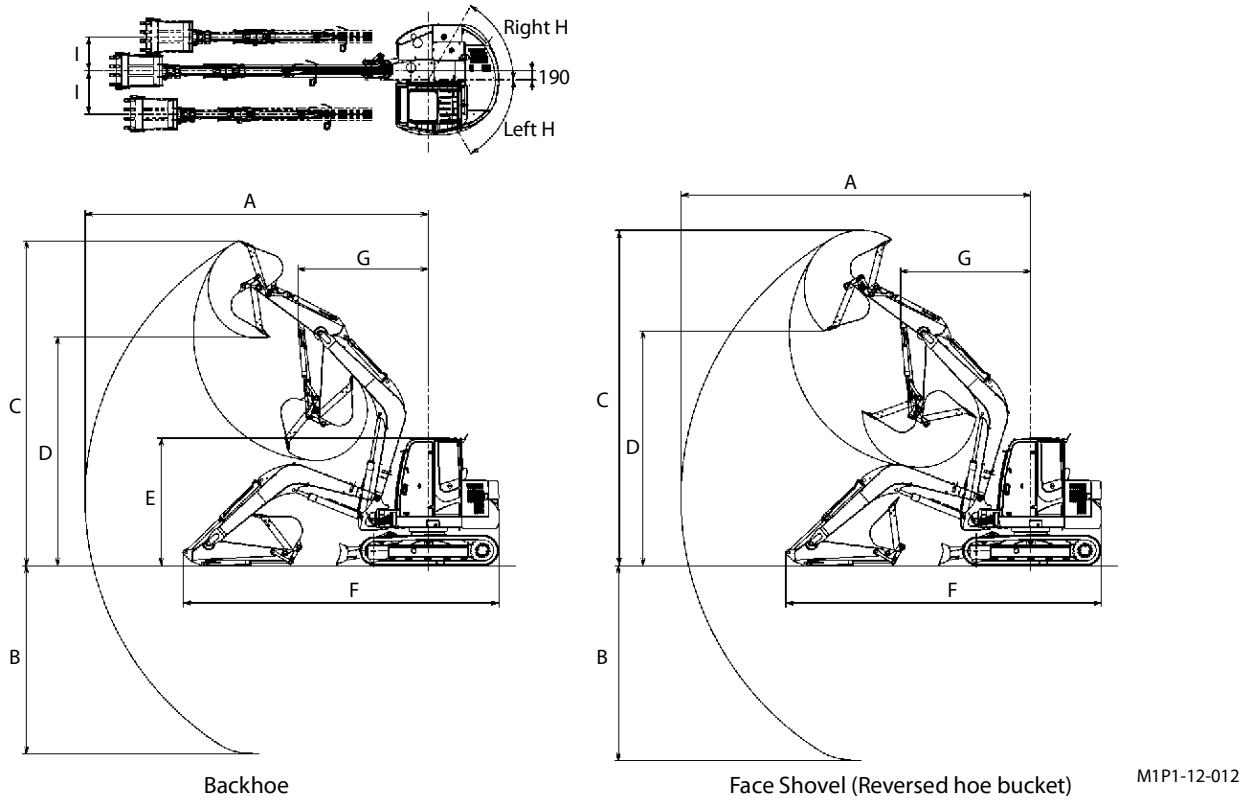
Model	ZX85USB-3
Type of Front-End Attachment	Boom-Swing Type 1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm
Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	PCSA 0.28 m <sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd <sup>3</sup> ), CECE 0.24 m <sup>3</sup>
Operating Weight	8080 kg (17900 lb)
Base Machine Weight	6700 kg (14800 lb)
Engine	Isuzu AU-4LE2X 40.5 kW/2000 min <sup>-1</sup> (55 PS/2000 rpm)
A: Overall Width (Excluding Back Mirrors)	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
B: Cab Height	2690 mm (8 ft 10 in)
C: Rear End Swing Radius	1490 mm (4 ft 11 in)
D: Minimum Ground Clearance	*360 mm (1 ft 2 in)
E: Counterweight Clearance	*760 mm (2 ft 6 in)
F: Engine Cover Height	*1750 mm (5 ft 9 in)
G: Overall Width of Upperstructure	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
H: Undercarriage Length	2920 mm (9 ft 7 in)
I: Undercarriage Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
J: Sprocket Center to Idler Center	2290 mm (7 ft 6 in)
K: Track Shoe Width	450 mm (18 in) (Grouser shoe)
L: Blade Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
M: Blade Height	460 mm (1 ft 6 in)
N: Blade Bottom Highest Position (above ground level)	*360 mm (1 ft 2 in)
O: Blade Bottom Lowest Position (below ground level)	*300 mm (1 ft 0 in)
P: Maximum Approach Angle	26.8 degree (tanθ = 0.51)
Ground Pressure	35 kPa (0.36 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.1 psi)
Swing Speed	10.5 min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm)
Travel Speed (fast/slow)	5.0/3.1 km/h (3.1/1.9 mph)
Gradeability	35° (tanθ = 0.70)

NOTE: \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

# SPECIFICATIONS

## WORKING RANGES

### ZX85USB-3



Item	Category	1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm				2.12 m (7 ft 0 in) Arm			
		Backhoe		Shovel		Backhoe		Shovel	
		mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in
A: Maximum Digging Reach		7210	23' 8"	7350	24' 1"	7700	25' 3"	7840	25' 9"
B: Maximum Digging Depth		3970	13' 0"	4110	13' 6"	4470	14' 8"	4610	15' 2"
C: Maximum Cutting Height		6810	22' 4"	7020	23' 0"	7180	23' 7"	7380	24' 3"
D: Maximum Dumping Height		4790	15' 9"	4910	16' 1"	5140	16' 10"	5300	17' 5"
E: Overall Height		2690	8' 10"	2690	8' 10"	2690	8' 10"	2690	8' 10"
F: Overall Length		6640	21' 9"	6640	21' 9"	6810	22' 4"	6810	22' 4"
G: Minimum Swing Radius		2740	8' 12"	2740	8' 12"	2900	9' 6"	2900	9' 6"
H: Maximum Boom-Swing Angle		Left 60° / Right 60°							
I: Offset Distance		Left 910 (3' 0") Right 720 (2' 4")							

**NOTE:** "E: Overall Height" includes the height of shoe lug; Other dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.




## SPECIFICATIONS

### SHOE TYPES AND APPLICATIONS

#### ZX85USB-3

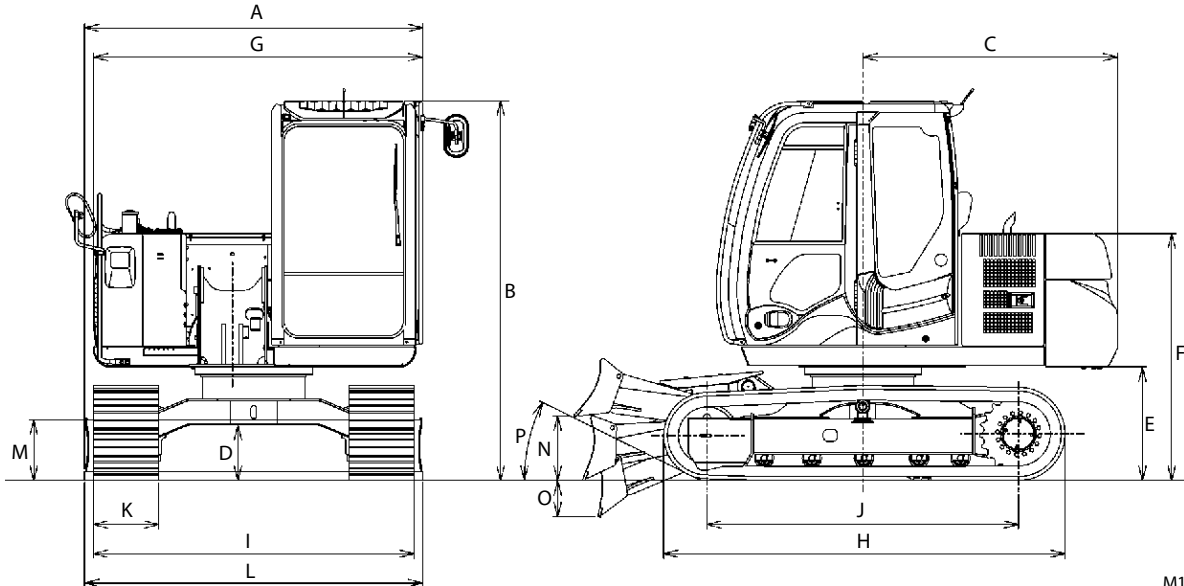
Shoe Width	450 mm (18") Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser Shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Pad Shoe
Application	For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight    kg (lb)	8080 (17900)	8260 (18300)	8250 (18200)	8070 (17800)	8410 (18500)
Base Machine Weight    kg (lb)	6700 (14800)	6890 (15200)	6870 (15100)	7060 (15600)	7030 (15500)
Cab Height            mm (ft-in)	2690 (8'10")	2690 (8'10")	2700 (8'10")	2720 (8'11")	2720 (8'11")
Minimum Ground Clearance            mm (ft-in)	* 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length                mm (ft-in)	2920 (9'7")	2920 (9'7")	2940 (9'7")	2970 (9'9")	2980 (9'9")
Undercarriage Width    mm (ft-in)	2320 (7'7")	2470 (8'1")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")
Ground Pressure	35 kPa (0.36 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.1 psi)	27 kPa (0.28 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3.9 psi)	36 kPa (0.37 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.2 psi)	35 kPa (0.36 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.1 psi)	36 kPa (0.37 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.2 psi)

-  **NOTE:** • The specifications for the front-end attachment is for 1.62 m arm with PCSA 0.28 m<sup>3</sup> bucket.  
 • 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.  
 • \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### SPECIFICATIONS

#### ZX70-3, 70LC-3 (with Blade)



M1P1-13-002

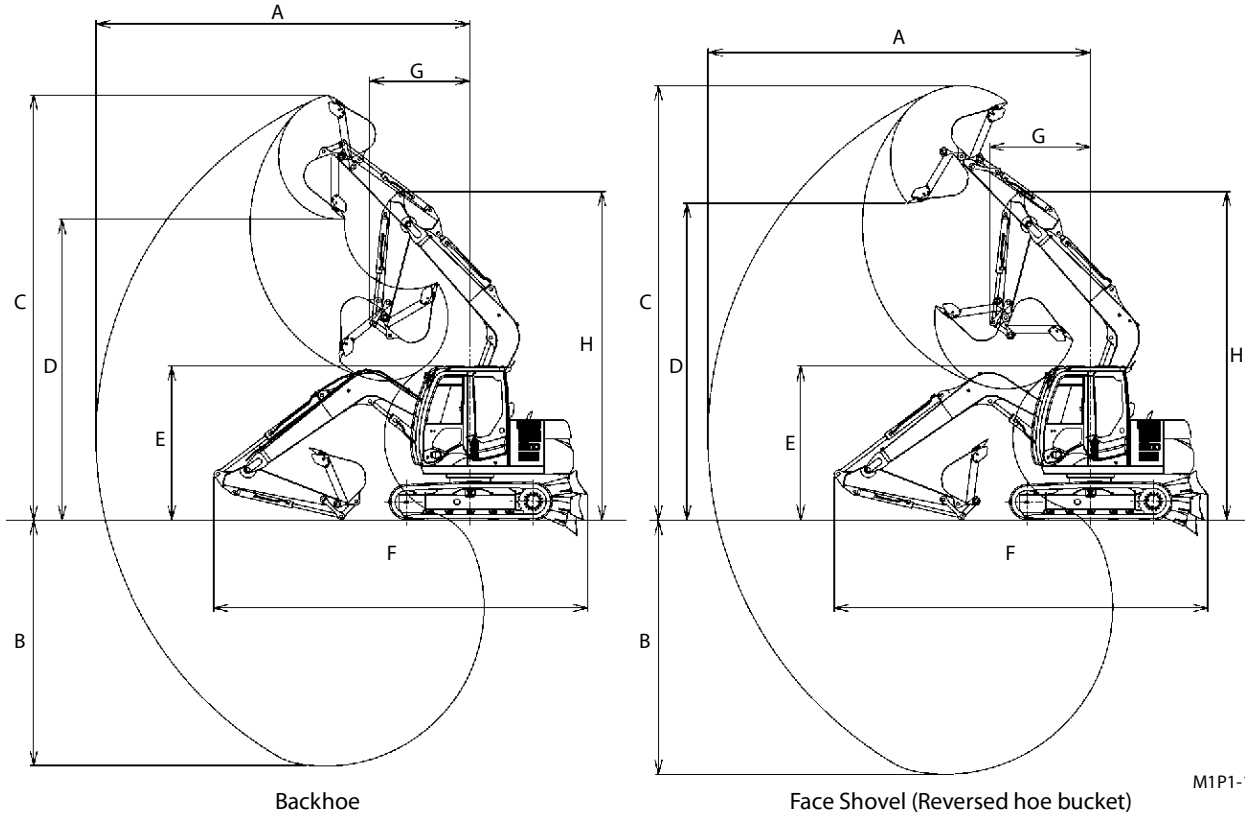
Model	ZX70-3	ZX70LC-3
Front-End Attachment	1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm	
Standard Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	PCSA 0.28 m <sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd <sup>3</sup> ), CECE 0.24 m <sup>3</sup>	PCSA 0.33 m <sup>3</sup> (0.43 yd <sup>3</sup> ), CECE 0.29 m <sup>3</sup>
Operating Weight	7040 kg (15500 lb)	7150 kg (15800 lb)
Base Machine Weight	5650 kg (12500 lb)	5740 kg (12700 lb)
Engine	Isuzu AU-4LE2X 40.5 kW/2000 min <sup>-1</sup> (55 PS/2000 rpm)	
A: Overall Width	2260 mm (7 ft 5 in)	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
B: Cab Height	2600 mm (8 ft 6 in)	
C: Rear End Swing Radius	1750 mm (5 ft 9 in)	
D: Minimum Ground Clearance	* 360 mm (1 ft 2 in)	
E: Counterweight Clearance	* 760 mm (2 ft 6 in)	
F: Engine Cover Height	1680 mm (5 ft 6 in)	
G: Overall Width of Upperstructure	2260 mm (7 ft 5 in)	
H: Undercarriage Length	2765 mm (9 ft 1 in)	2920 mm (9 ft 7 in)
I: Undercarriage Width	2200 mm (7 ft 3 in)	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
J: Sprocket Center to Idle Center	2140 mm (7 ft 0 in)	2290 mm (7 ft 6 in)
K: Track Shoe Width	450 mm (18 in)	
L: Blade Width	2200 mm (7 ft 3 in)	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
M: Blade Height	460 mm (1 ft 6 in)	
N: Blade Bottom Highest Position (above ground level)	* 360 mm (1 ft 3 in)	
O: Blade Bottom Lowest Position (below ground level)	* 300 mm (11 in)	
P: Maximum Approach Angle	26.8 degree (tanθ = 0.51)	
Ground Pressure	32 kPa (0.33 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.6 psi)	30 kPa (0.31 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.4 psi)
Swing Speed	10.5 min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm)	
Travel Speed	5.3/3.4 km/h (3.3/2.1 mph)	
Gradeability	35 degree (70 %)	

NOTE: \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### WORKING RANGES

**ZX70-3, 70LC-3 (with Blade)**



M1P1-13-013

Item	Category	1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm				2.12 m (7 ft 0 in) Arm			
		Backhoe		Shovel		Backhoe		Shovel	
		mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in
A: Maximum Digging Reach		6320	20'9"	6460	21'2"	6810	22'4"	6950	22'10"
B: Maximum Digging Depth		4170	13'8"	4310	14'2"	4670	15'4"	4810	15'9"
C: Maximum Cutting Height		7150	23'6"	7320	24'0"	7550	24'9"	7710	25'4"
D: Maximum Dumping Height		5060	16'7"	5340	17'6"	5450	17'11"	5770	18'11"
E: Overall Height		2600	8'6"	2600	8'6"	2700	8'10"	2700	8'10"
						(without Bucket)	(without Bucket)	(without Bucket)	(without Bucket)
						2880	9'5"	2880	9'5"
						(with Bucket)	(with Bucket)	(with Bucket)	(with Bucket)
F: Overall Length		6270	20'7"	6270	20'7"	6320	20'9"	6320	20'9"
G: Minimum Swing Radius		1720	5'8"	1720	5'8"	2080	6'10"	2080	6'10"
H: Minimum Swing Radius Height		5530	18'2"	5530	18'2"	5550	18'3"	5550	18'3"


NOTE: "E: Overall Height" includes the height of shoe lug ; Other dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### SHOE TYPES AND APPLICATIONS


#### ZX70-3 (with Blade)

Shoe Width	450 mm (18") Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser Shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Pad Shoe
Application	For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight    kg (lb)	7040 (15500)	7230 (15900)	7200 (15900)	7090 (15600)	7360 (16200)
Base Machine Weight    kg (lb)	5650 (12500)	5840 (12900)	5820 (12800)	5700 (12600)	5970 (13200)
Cab Height            mm (ft·in)	2600 (8'6")	2600 (8'6")	2610 (8'7")	2630 (8'8")	2630 (8'8")
Minimum Ground Clearance            mm (ft·in)	* 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length            mm (ft·in)	2765 (9'1")	2765 (9'1")	2780 (9'1")	2820 (9'3")	2825 (9'3")
Undercarriage Width    mm (ft·in)	2200 (7'3")	2350 (7'9")	2200 (7'3")	2200 (7'3")	2200 (7'3")
Ground Pressure	32 kPa (0.33 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.6 psi)	25 kPa (0.25 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3.6 psi)	33 kPa (0.34 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.8 psi)	32 kPa (0.33 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.6 psi)	34 kPa (0.35 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.9 psi)

-  NOTE: • The specifications for the front-end attachment is for 1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) arm with PCSA 0.28 m<sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd<sup>3</sup>) bucket.
- 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.
  - \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

#### ZX70LC-3 (with Blade)

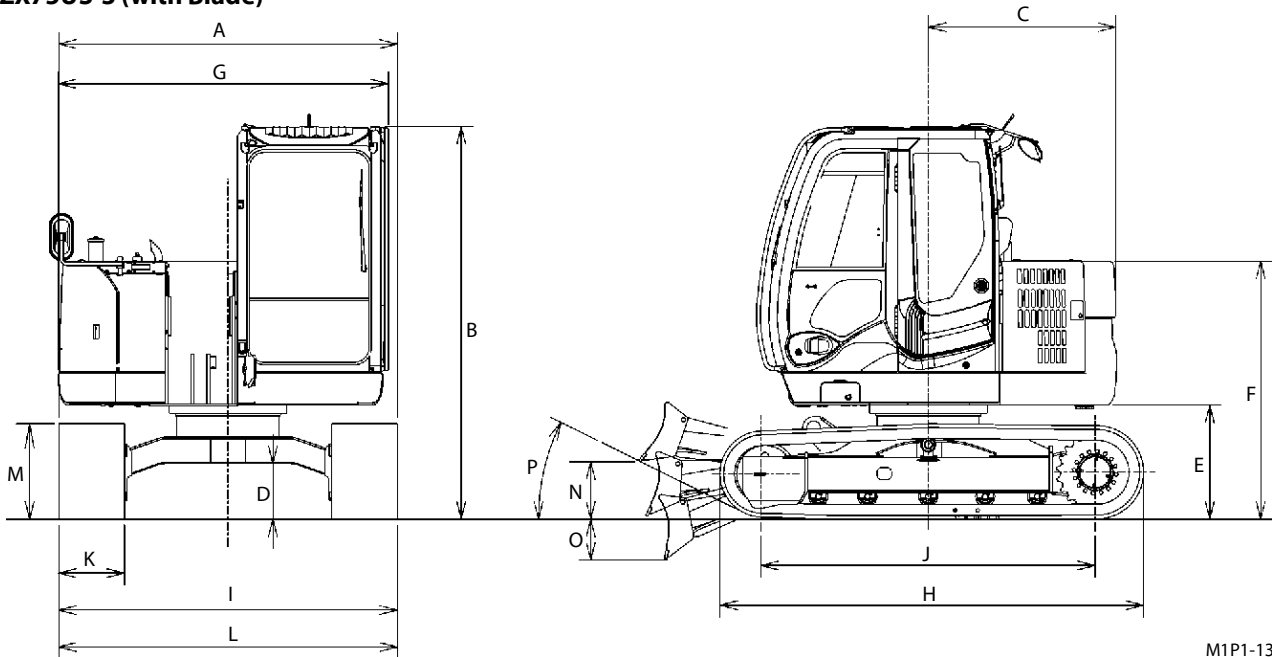
Shoe Width	450 mm (18") Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser Shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Pad Shoe
Application	For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight    kg (lb)	7150 (15800)	7340 (16200)	7320 (16100)	7200 (15900)	7480 (16500)
Base Machine Weight    kg (lb)	5740 (12700)	5930 (13100)	5920 (13100)	5800 (12800)	6080 (13400)
Cab Height            mm (ft·in)	2600 (8'6")	2600 (8'6")	2610 (8'7")	2630 (8'8")	2630 (8'8")
Minimum Ground Clearance            mm (ft·in)	* 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length            mm (ft·in)	2920 (9'7")	2920 (9'7")	2935 (9'8")	2975 (9'9")	2980 (9'9")
Undercarriage Width    mm (ft·in)	2320 (7'7")	2470 (8'1")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")
Ground Pressure	30 kPa (0.31 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.4 psi)	24 kPa (0.24 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3.5 psi)	31 kPa (0.32 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.5 psi)	31 kPa (0.32 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.5 psi)	32 kPa (0.33 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.6 psi)

-  NOTE: • The specifications for the front-end attachment is for 1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) arm with PCSA 0.33 m<sup>3</sup> (0.43 yd<sup>3</sup>) bucket.
- 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.
  - \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### SPECIFICATIONS

#### ZX75US-3 (with Blade)



M1P1-13-004

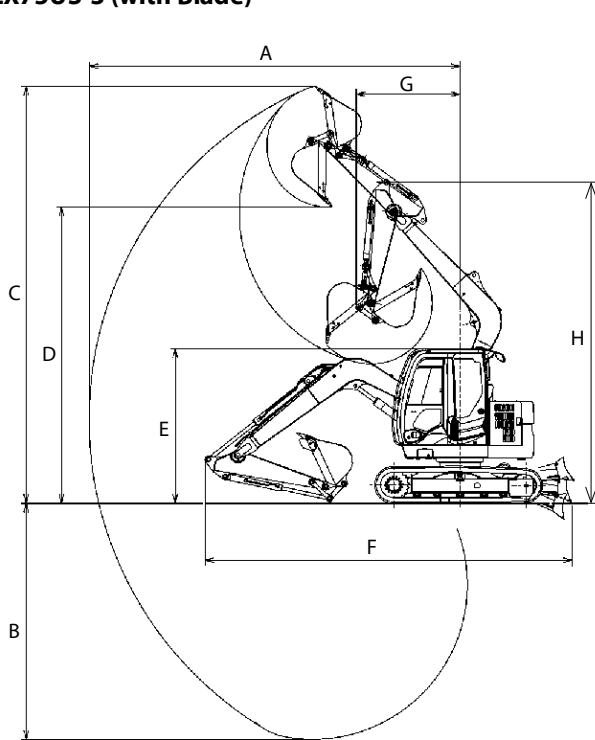
Model	ZX75US-3
Front-End Attachment	1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm
Standard Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	PCSA 0.28 m <sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd <sup>3</sup> ), CECE 0.24 m <sup>3</sup>
Operating Weight	7800 kg (17200 lb)
Base Machine Weight	6400 kg (14200 lb)
Engine	Isuzu AU-4LE2X 40.5 kW/2000 min <sup>-1</sup> (55 PS/2000 rpm)
A : Overall Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
B : Cab Height	2690 mm (8 ft 10 in)
C : Rear End Swing Radius	1290 mm (4 ft 3 in)
D : Minimum Ground Clearance	*360 mm (1 ft 2 in)
E : Counterweight Clearance	*760 mm (2 ft 6 in)
F : Engine Cover Height	*1750 mm (5 ft 9 in)
G : Overall Width of Upperstructure	2250 mm (7 ft 5 in)
H : Undercarriage Length	2920 mm (9 ft 7 in)
I : Undercarriage Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
J : Sprocket Center to Idle Center	2290 mm (7 ft 6 in)
K : Track Shoe Width	450 mm (18 in)
L : Blade Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
M : Blade Height	460 mm (1 ft 6 in)
N : Blade Bottom Highest Position (above ground level)	* 360 mm (1 ft 2 in)
O : Blade Bottom Lowest Position (below ground level)	* 300 mm (1 ft 0 in)
P : Maximum Approach Angle	26.8 degree (tanθ = 0.51)
Ground Pressure	34 kPa (0.35 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.9 psi)
Swing Speed	10.5 min <sup>-1</sup> (11.3 rpm)
Travel Speed	5.0/3.1 km/h (3.1/1.9 mph)
Gradeability	35° (tan θ = 0.70)

NOTE: \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

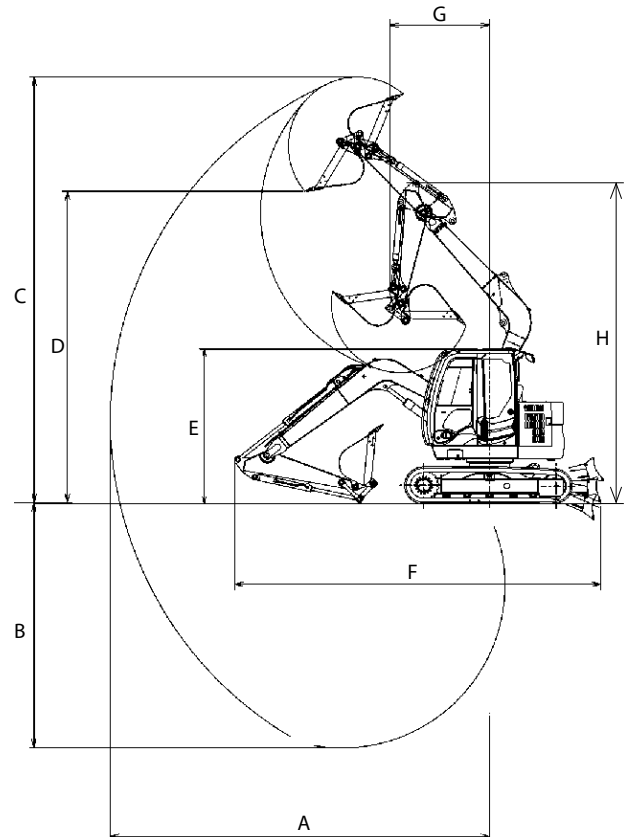
### WORKING RANGES

#### ZX75US-3 (with Blade)



Backhoe

M1P1-13-005



Face Shovel (Reversed hoe bucket)

M1P1-13-006

Item	Category	1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm				2.12 m (7 ft 0 in) Arm			
		Backhoe		Shovel		Backhoe		Shovel	
		mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in
A: Maximum Digging Reach		6430	21'1"	6570	21'7"	6920	22'8"	7050	23'2"
B: Maximum Digging Depth		4110	13'6"	4250	14'0"	4610	15'2"	4750	15'7"
C: Maximum Cutting Height		7210	23'8"	7370	24'2"	7610	25'0"	7780	25'6"
D: Maximum Dumping Height		5120	16'10"	5390	17'8"	5510	18'1"	5830	19'2"
E: Overall Height		2690	8'10"	2690	8'10"	2690	8'10"	2690	8'10"
						(without Bucket)	(without Bucket)	(without Bucket)	(without Bucket)
						2830	9'3"	2830	9'3"
						(with Bucket)	(with Bucket)	(with Bucket)	(with Bucket)
F: Overall Length		6300	20'8"	6300	20'8"	6370	20'11"	6370	20'11"
G: Minimum Swing Radius		1810	5'11"	1810	5'11"	2170	7'1"	2170	7'1"
H: Minimum Swing Radius Height		5590	18'4"	5590	18'4"	5610	18'5"	5610	18'5"


NOTE: "E: Overall Height" includes the height of shoe lug; Other dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### SHOE TYPES AND APPLICATIONS

#### ZX75US-3 (with Blade)

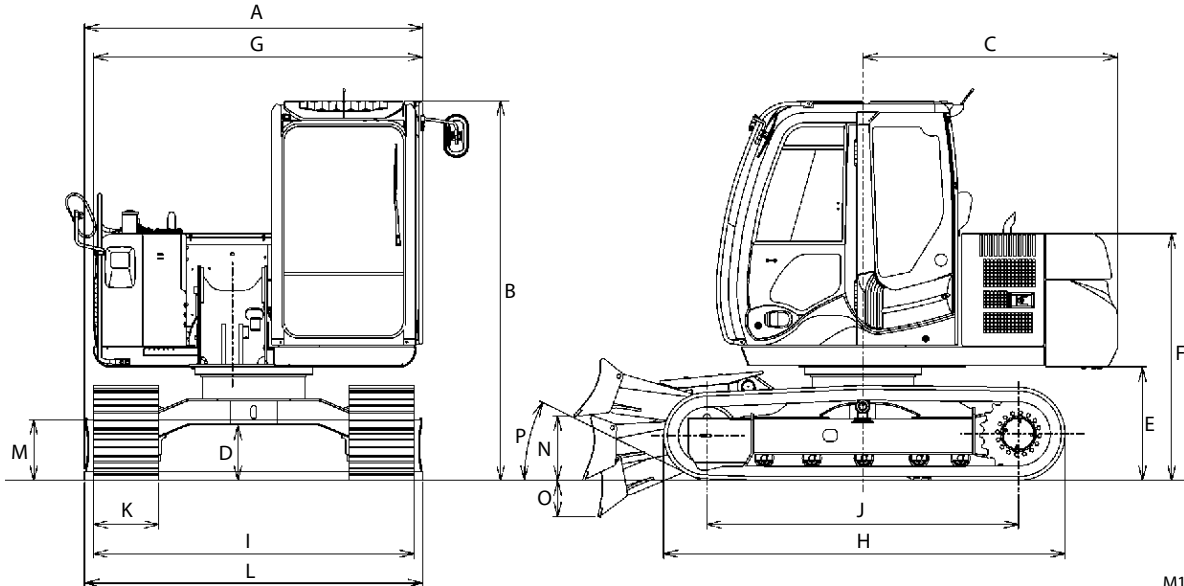
Shoe Width	450 mm (18") Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser Shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Pad Shoe
Application	For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight    kg (lb)	7800 (17200)	8000 (17700)	8000 (17700)	7800 (17200)	8100 (17900)
Base Machine Weight    kg (lb)	6400 (14200)	6600 (14600)	6600 (14600)	6500 (14400)	6700 (14800)
Cab Height            mm (ft·in)	2690 (8'10")	2690 (8'10")	2700 (8'10")	2720 (8'11")	2720 (8'11")
Minimum Ground Clearance            mm (ft·in)	* 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length            mm (ft·in)	2920 (9'7")	2920 (9'7")	2940 (9'7")	2970 (9'9")	2980 (9'9")
Undercarriage Width    mm (ft·in)	2320 (7'7")	2470 (8'1")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")
Ground Pressure	34 kPa (0.35 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.9 psi)	26 kPa (0.27 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3.8 psi)	34 kPa (0.35 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.9 psi)	33 kPa (0.34 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.8 psi)	35 kPa (0.36 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.1 psi)

-  **NOTE:** • The specifications for the front-end attachment is for 1.62 m arm with PCSA 0.28 m<sup>3</sup> bucket.
- 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.
  - \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### SPECIFICATIONS

#### ZX80LCK-3 (with Blade)



M1P1-13-002

Model	ZX80LCK-3
Front-End Attachment	4.0 m (13 ft 2 in) K boom, 2.12 m (7 ft 0 in) Arm
Standard Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	PCSA 0.28 m <sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd <sup>3</sup> ), CECE 0.24 m <sup>3</sup>
Operating Weight	7860 kg (17300 lb)
Base Machine Weight	6270 kg (13400 lb)
Engine	Isuzu AU-4LE2X 40.5 kW/2000 min <sup>-1</sup> (55 PS/2000 rpm)
A: Overall Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
B: Cab Height	2730 mm (9 ft 0 in)
C: Rear End Swing Radius	1750 mm (5 ft 9 in)
D: Minimum Ground Clearance	* 360 mm (1 ft 2 in)
E: Counterweight Clearance	* 760 mm (2 ft 6 in)
F: Engine Cover Height	1680 mm (5 ft 6 in)
G: Overall Width of Upperstructure	2285 mm (7 ft 6 in)
H: Undercarriage Length	2920 mm (9 ft 7 in)
I: Undercarriage Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
J: Sprocket Center to Idle Center	2290 mm (7 ft 6 in)
K: Track Shoe Width	450 mm (18 in)
L: Blade Width	2300 mm (7 ft 7 in)
M: Blade Height	460 mm (1 ft 6 in)
N: Blade Bottom Highest Position (above ground level)	* 360 mm (1 ft 3 in)
O: Blade Bottom Lowest Position (below ground level)	* 300 mm (11 in)
P: Maximum Approach Angle	26.8 degree (tanθ = 0.51)
Ground Pressure	34 kPa (0.35 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.9 psi)
Swing Speed	10.5 min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm)
Travel Speed	5.3/3.4 km/h (3.3/2.1 mph)
Gradeability	35 degree (70 %)

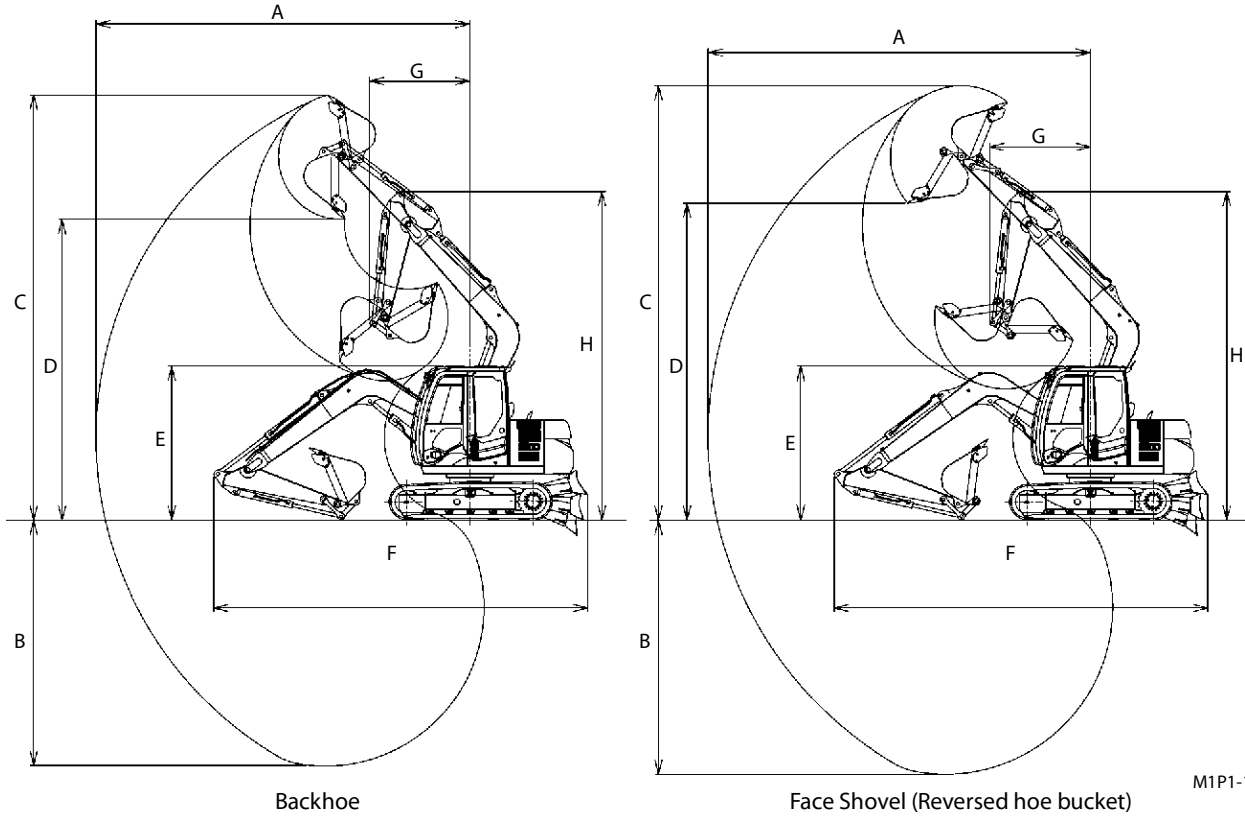
NOTE: \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.



## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### WORKING RANGES

#### ZX80LCK-3 (with Blade)



M1P1-13-013

Item	Category	2.12 m (7 ft 0 in) Arm			
		Backhoe		Shovel	
		mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in
A: Maximum Digging Reach		7130	23'5"	7270	23'10"
B: Maximum Digging Depth		4460	14'8"	4590	15'1"
C: Maximum Cutting Height		8210	26'11"	8350	27'5"
D: Maximum Dumping Height		6090	20'0"	6510	21'4"
E: Overall Height		2730	9'0"	2730	9'0"
F: Overall Length		6650	22'0"	6650	22'0"
G: Minimum Swing Radius		1680	5'6"	1680	5'6"
H: Minimum Swing Radius Height		6010	19'9"	6010	19'9"


NOTE: "E: Overall Height" includes the height of shoe lug ; Other dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### SHOE TYPES AND APPLICATIONS

#### ZX80LCK-3 (with Blade)

Shoe Width		450 mm (18") Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser Shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Pad Shoe
Application		For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight	kg (lb)	7860 (17300)	8050 (17800)	8030 (17800)	7910 (17400)	8190 (18000)
Base Machine Weight	kg (lb)	6270 (13800)	6460 (14200)	6450 (14200)	6330 (14000)	6610 (14600)
Cab Height	mm (ft·in)	2730 (9'0")	2730 (9'0")	2740 (9'0")	2760 (9'1")	2760 (9'1")
Minimum Ground Clearance	mm (ft·in)	* 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length	mm (ft·in)	2920 (9'7")	2920 (9'7")	2935 (9'8")	2975 (9'9")	2980 (9'9")
Undercarriage Width	mm (ft·in)	2320 (7'7")	2470 (8'1")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")
Ground Pressure		34 kPa (0.35 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.9 psi)	26 kPa (0.27 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3.8 psi)	34 kPa (0.35 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.9 psi)	34 kPa (0.35 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.9 psi)	35 kPa (0.36 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.1 psi)

 **NOTE:** • The specifications for the front-end attachment is for 4.0 m (13 ft 2 in) K boom and 2.12 m (7 ft 0 in) arm with PCSA 0.28 m<sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd<sup>3</sup>) bucket.

- 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.
- \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

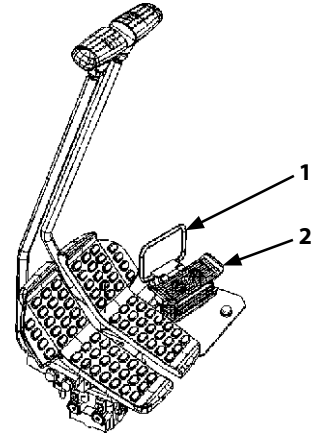
## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### OFFSET ARM FRONT

ZX70-3, 70LC-3, 75US-3

#### Offset Control Pedal

Pedal (2) is located at the operator's right foot.

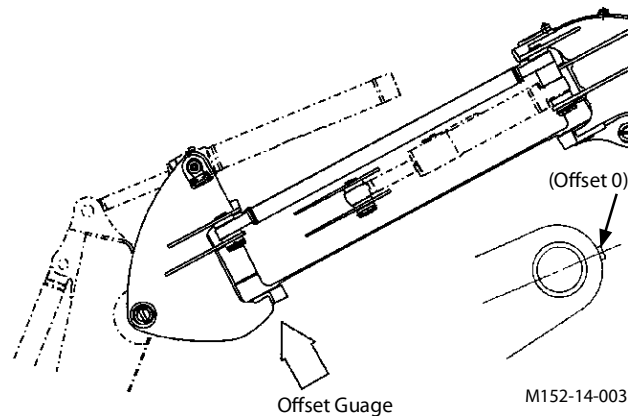


M1P1-13-007

#### Offset Operation

1. Turn cover (1) forward to unlock pedal (2).
2. Push down on the left side of pedal (2) to move the arm to the left offset position.
3. Push down on the right side of pedal (2) to move the arm to the right offset position.
4. Turn cover (1) backward to lock pedal (2) when the arm offset operation is no longer required.

The center position of the arm (offset 0) can be confirmed by consulting the gauge at the top end of the boom.



M152-14-003

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### Offset Direction and Working Range

Right and left offset directions are taken from the point of view of the operator. Accordingly, "left" offset means that the front attachment is moved towards the cab.

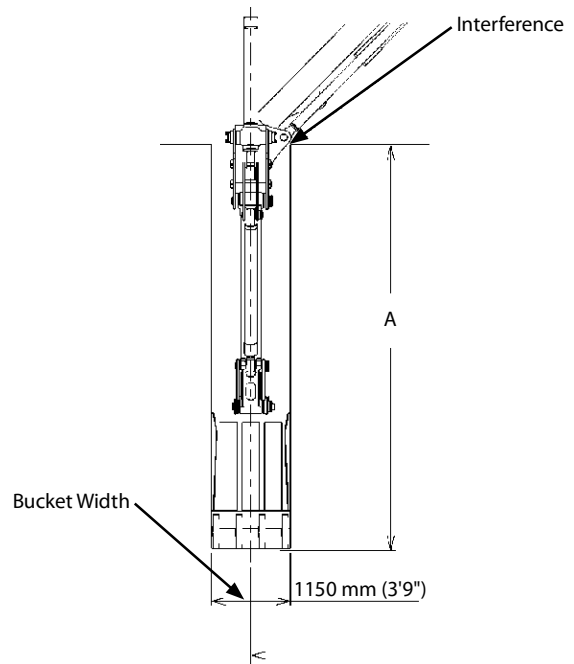
Maximum digging depth with maximum offset distance of 1150 (3'9") mm is A due to interference of the boom with the ground surface, as illustrated.

A : 3160 mm (10'4")

Working Range :

Offset distance can be selected up to a maximum distance of 1150 (3'9") mm for both right and left directions.

1. Maximum digging depth with maximum offset distance using 0.28 m<sup>3</sup> and 0.24 m<sup>3</sup> bucket is as shown in the illustration.
2. Distance L from the end surface of the crawler to the farthest end of the bucket will differ with the width of the bucket and track shoes as shown below.

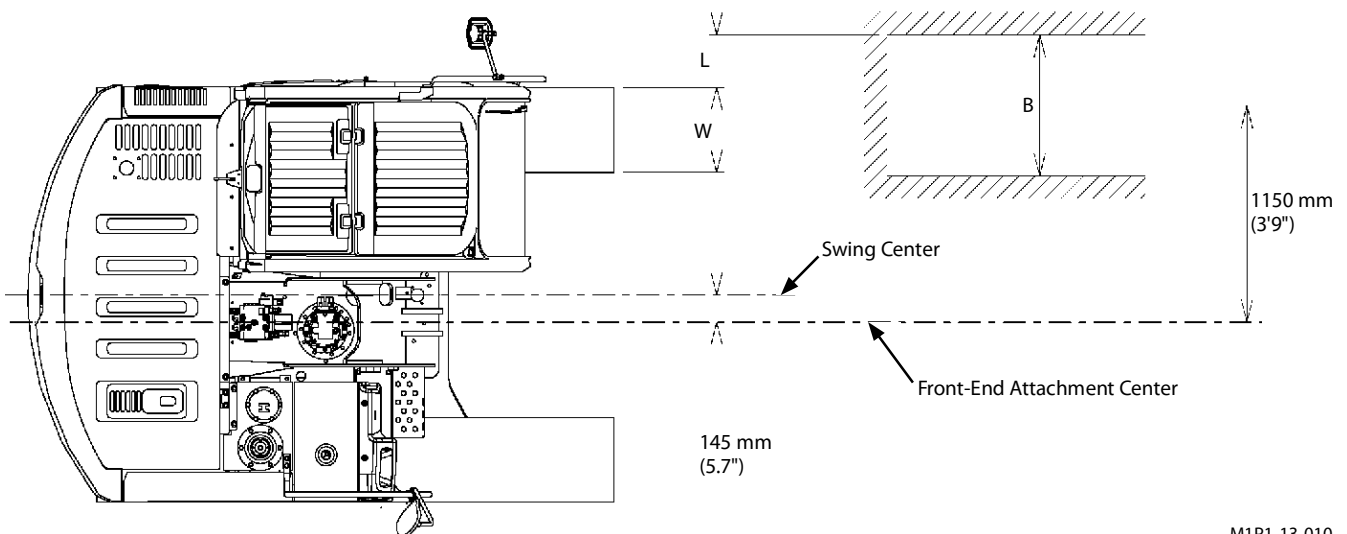


M1CD-12-006

**Dimension L by width of Bucket and Shoe**

Bucket		W: Shoe Width 450 mm (18")	W: Shoe Width 600 mm (20")
Capacity * m <sup>3</sup> (yd <sup>3</sup> )	B: Width mm (in)	L: mm (in)	L: (mm)
0.11 (0.14)	450 (18")	35 (1.4")	-40 (-1.6")
0.24 (0.31)	650 (26")	135 (5.3")	60 (2.4")
0.28 (0.37)	750 (30")	185 (7.3")	110 (4.3")

\* PCSA Heaped



M1P1-13-010

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### PRECAUTIONS FOR OPERATING WITH THE OFF-SET FUNCTION

**WARNING:** In case this machine is equipped with an unspecified attachment such as an oversized bucket or hydraulic breaker, the attachment may come in contact with the cab if the machine is operated with the front attachment offset, possibly causing injury or death as well as damaging the machine

**WARNING:** Never jack up the machine with the front in the offset position. This is extremely dangerous, as the machine is unstable.

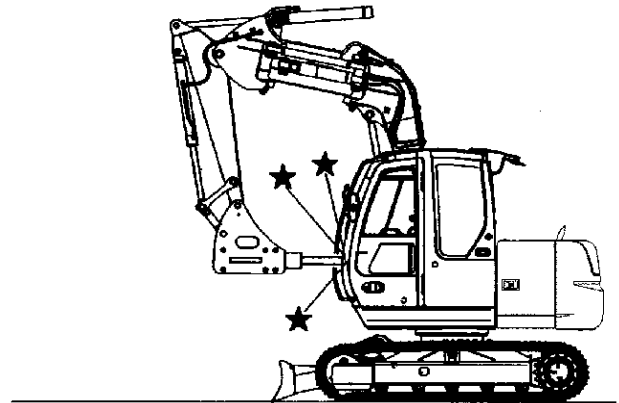
**IMPORTANT:** Do not perform heavy duty work, or dig gravel with the front in the offset position. Do not perform tamping work with a slope-finishing bucket attached. These operation will damage the lower and upper booms.

1. When using unspecified attachments such as oversized buckets or hydraulic breaker, be sure the front attachment dimension does not exceed the specified dimension shown rightward.

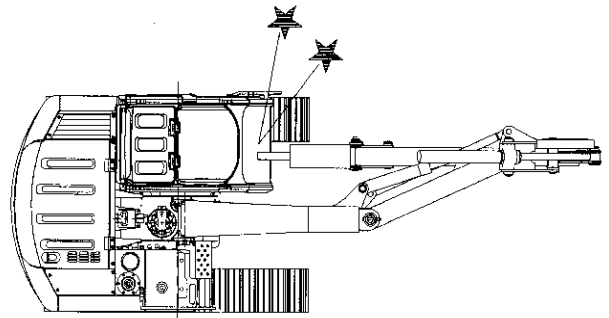
Use an attachment with the dimension between the arm top pin center to the tip end of the attachment 1060 mm or less.

2. When digging with the front in the offset position, the bucket will come in contact with the track link if the arm is crowded. Even if bucket does not touch the track link, watch for the bucket digging under the track, as this will cause instability.
3. Be sure to follow the precautions shown below.
  - (1) Do not use the 2.12 m arm as it will interfere with the cab when in the offset position.
  - (2) Do not use the bucket as a pile driver with the boom in the offset position.
  - (3) When digging with the boom in offset position, be careful not to damage the cylinder stay.

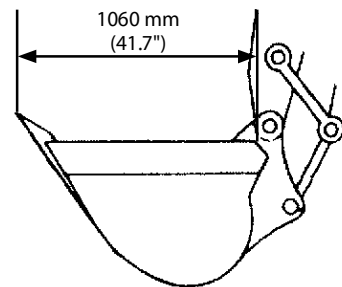
In order to prevent the offset pins from getting rusty, operate the offset function regularly. Check offset function operation every time before starting work.



M1CD-12-008



M1CD-12-009



M1CD-13-003

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### MAINTENANCE

Refer to the Greasing Front Joint Pins pages in the MAINTENANCE section.

#### Boom Foot, Boom Cylinder Bottom Side, Arm Cylinder Rod Side, and Bucket Cylinder Bottom Side Pins:

Refer to the Greasing Front Joint Pins pages in the MAINTENANCE section.

#### Offset Front Attachment Joint Pins --- every 50 hours

Add greasing to all illustrated grease fittings.

Retightening EX Pin.

The EX pin is tightened with a screw. The pin will unavoidably become loose due to permanent set of the parts fastened with the screw during initial operation. Be sure to retighten the pin one time within the first 5 to 20 hours after starting operation to the same tightening torque as specified.

Cylinder Stay and Upper Boom Joint Pin (1)

Tool : 55 mm

Torque : 1050 N·m (105 kgf·m, 770 lbf·ft)

Upper Boom and Lower Boom Joint Pin (2)

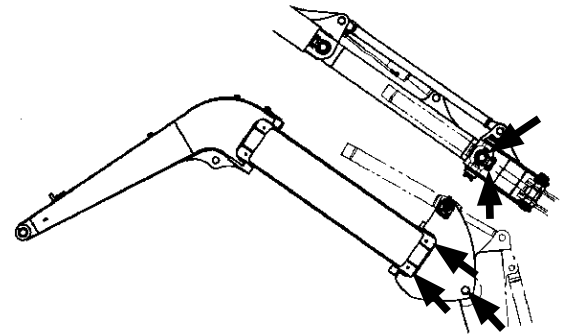
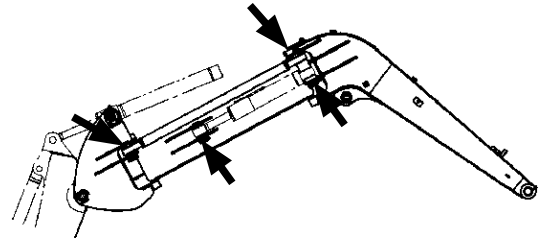
Tool : 55 mm

Torque : 1050 N·m (105 kgf·m, 770 lbf·ft)

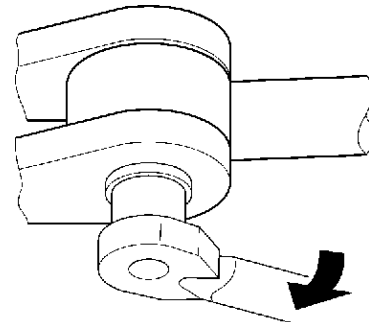
Boom Cylinder Bottom Side and Frame Joint Pin (3)

Tool : 36 mm

Torque : 450 N·m (45 kgf·m, 330 lbf·ft)

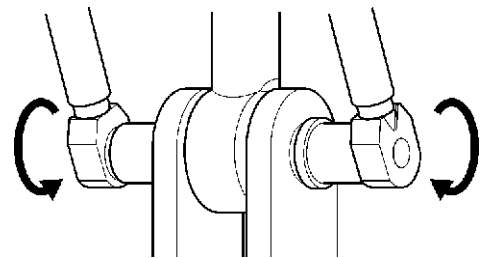


M152-07-049



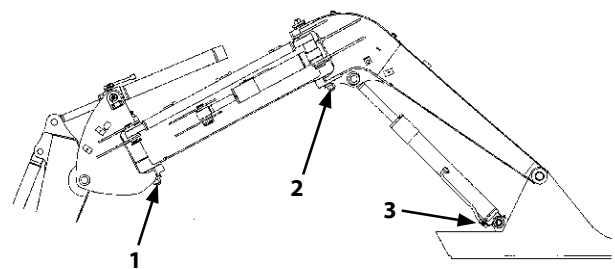
EX Pin for Front

M1CC-13-019



EX Pin for Boom Cylinder

M1CC-13-020



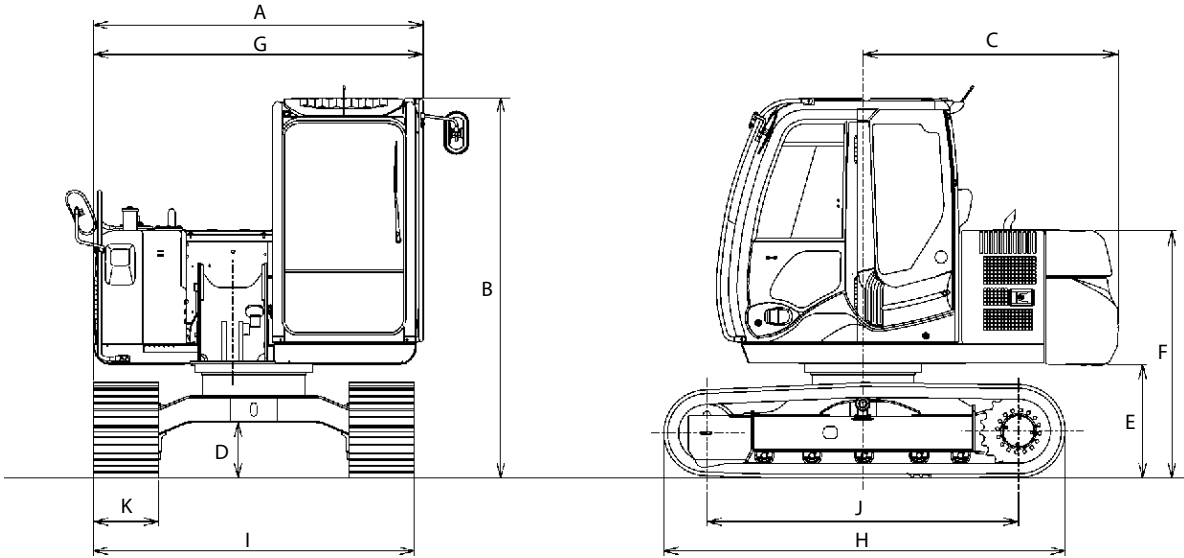
M1CC-13-021

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### SPECIFICATIONS

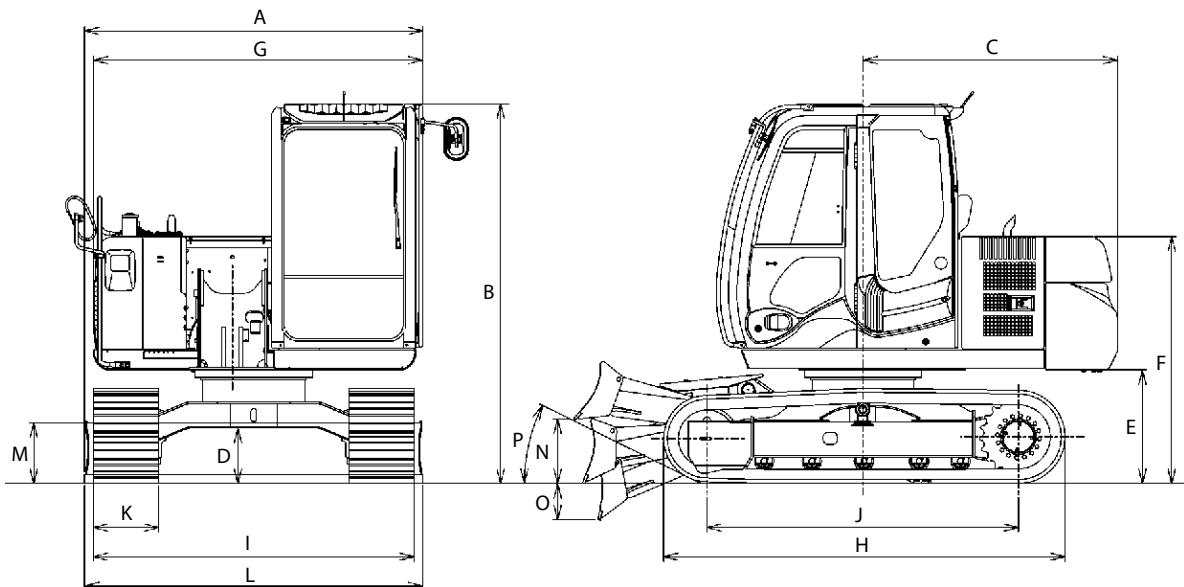
ZX70-3, 70LC-3 (with Offset Arm Front)

ZX70-3, 70LC-3 (without Blade)



M1P1-12-001

ZX70-3, 70LC-3 (with Blade)




M1P1-13-002

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### Specifications

Model	ZX70-3	
	Without Blade	With Blade
Type of Front-End Attachment	Offset Boom 1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm	
Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	PCSA 0.28 m <sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd <sup>3</sup> ), CECE 0.24 m <sup>3</sup>	
Operating Weight	7020 kg (15500 lb)	7590 kg (16700 lb)
Base Machine Weight	5180 kg (11400 lb)	5750 kg (12700 lb)
Engine	Isuzu AU-4LE2X 40.5 kW/2000 min <sup>-1</sup> (55 PS/2000 rpm)	
A : Overall Width (Excluding Rearview Mirrors)	2200 mm (7 ft 2 in)	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
B: Cab Height	2600 mm (8 ft 6 in)	
C: Rear End Swing Radius	1750 mm (5 ft 9 in)	
D: Minimum Ground Clearance	* 360 mm (1 ft 2 in)	
E: Counterweight Clearance	* 760 mm (2 ft 6 in)	
F: Engine Cover Height	* 1680 mm (5 ft 6 in)	
G: Overall Width of Upperstructure	2260 mm (7 ft 5 in)	
H: Undercarriage Length	2765 mm (9 ft 1 in)	
I: Undercarriage Width	2200 mm (7 ft 2 in)	
J: Sprocket Center to Idle Center	2140 mm (7 ft 0 in)	
K: Track Shoe Width	450 mm (1 ft 5 in)	
L: Blade Width	–	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
M: Blade Height	–	460 mm (1 ft 6 in)
N: Blade Bottom Highest Position (above ground level)	–	* 360 mm (1 ft 2 in)
O: Blade Bottom Lowest Position (below ground level)	–	* 300 mm (1 ft 0 in)
P: Maximum Approach Angle	–	26.8 degree (tan $\theta$ = 0.51)
Ground Pressure	32 kPa (0.33 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.6 psi)	35 kPa (0.36 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.1 psi)
Offset Distance	0 to 1150 mm (0 to 3 ft 9 in)	
Swing Speed	10.5 min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm)	
Travel Speed	5.3/3.4 km/h (3.3/2.1 mph)	
Gradeability	35 degree (70%)	


 NOTE: \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.



## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### Specifications

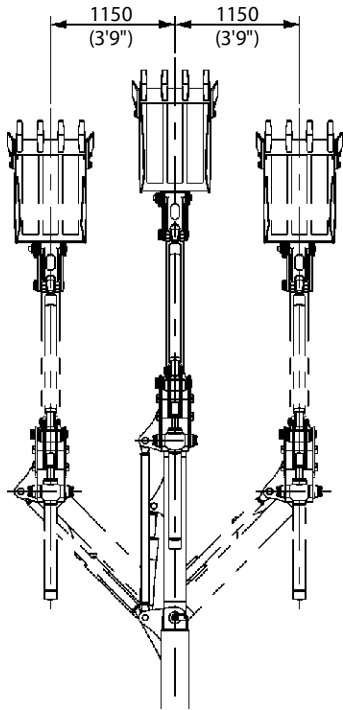
Model	ZX70LC-3	
	Without Blade	With Blade
Type of Front-End Attachment	Offset Boom 1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm	
Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	PCSA 0.28 m <sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd <sup>3</sup> ), CECE 0.24 m <sup>3</sup>	
Operating Weight	7100 kg (15700 lb)	7680 kg (17000 lb)
Base Machine Weight	5260 kg (11600 lb)	5840 kg (12900 lb)
Engine	Isuzu AU-4LE2X 40.5 kW/2000 min <sup>-1</sup> (55 PS/2000 rpm)	
A : Overall Width (Excluding Rearview Mirrors)	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)	
B: Cab Height	2600 mm (8 ft 6 in)	
C: Rear End Swing Radius	1750 mm (5 ft 9 in)	
D: Minimum Ground Clearance	* 360 mm (1 ft 2 in)	
E: Counterweight Clearance	* 760 mm (2 ft 6 in)	
F: Engine Cover Height	* 1680 mm (5 ft 6 in)	
G: Overall Width of Upperstructure	2260 mm (7 ft 5 in)	
H: Undercarriage Length	2920 mm (9 ft 7 in)	
I: Undercarriage Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)	
J: Sprocket Center to Idle Center	2290 mm (7 ft 6 in)	
K: Track Shoe Width	450 mm (1 ft 5 in)	
L: Blade Width	-	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
M: Blade Height	-	460 mm (1 ft 6 in)
N: Blade Bottom Highest Position (above ground level)	-	* 360 mm (1 ft 2 in)
O: Blade Bottom Lowest Position (below ground level)	-	* 300 mm (1 ft 0 in)
P: Maximum Approach Angle	-	26.8 degree (tan $\theta = 0.51$ )
Ground Pressure	30 kPa (0.31 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.4 psi)	33 kPa (0.34 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.8 psi)
Offset Distance	0 to 1150 mm (0 to 3 ft 9 in)	
Swing Speed	10.5 min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm)	
Travel Speed	5.3/3.4 km/h (3.3/2.1 mph)	
Gradeability	35 degree (70%)	

 NOTE: \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

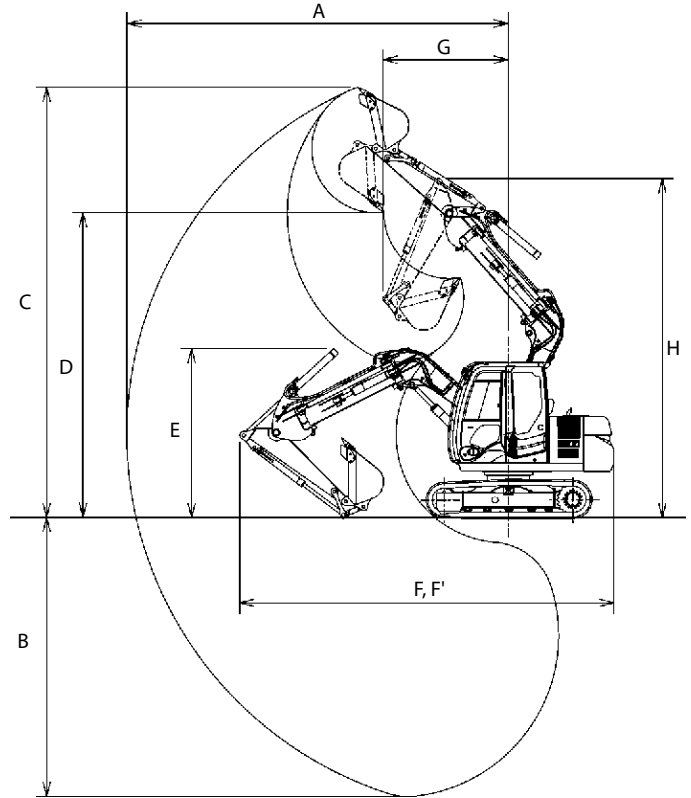
## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### WORKING RANGES

**ZX70-3, 70LC-3 (with Offset Arm Front)**



M1CC-12-010



M1P1-13-011

Item	Category	Working Ranges			
		Off-Set Distance (0 mm)		Max. Off-Set Distance (1150 mm (3'9"))	
		mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in
A: Maximum Digging Reach		6320	20'9"	5875	19'3"
B: Maximum Digging Depth		4160	13'8"	3710	12'2"
C: Maximum Cutting Height		7130	23'5"	6775	22'3"
D: Maximum Dumping Height		5050	16'7"	4700	15'5"
E: Overall Height		2870	9'5"	2850	9'4"
F: Overall Length		6210	20'5"	5790	19'0"
F': Overall Length (with Blade)		6340	20'10"	5920	19'5"
G: Minimum Swing Radius		2150	7'1"	L: 2160 R: 2310	7'1" 7'7"
H: Front-End Attachment Height at Min. Swing Radius		5620	18'5"	5270	17'4"

**NOTE:** "E: Overall Height" includes the height of shoe lug ; Other dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.


## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### SHOE TYPES AND APPLICATIONS

#### ZX70-3 (with Offset Arm Front)

#### 0.28 m<sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd<sup>3</sup>) Bucket Without Blade


Shoe Width	450 mm (18") Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser Shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Pad Shoe
Application	For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight    kg (lb)	7020 (15500)	7190 (15900)	7180 (15800)	7070 (15600)	7340 (16200)
Base Machine Weight    kg (lb)	5180 (11400)	5350 (11800)	5340 (11800)	5230 (11500)	5500 (12100)
Cab Height            mm (ft-in)	2600 (8'6")	2600 (8'6")	2610 (8'7")	2630 (8'8")	2630 (8'8")
Minimum Ground Clearance            mm (ft-in)	* 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length            mm (ft-in)	2765 (9'1")	2765 (9'1")	2780 (9'1")	2820 (9'3")	2825 (9'3")
Undercarriage Width    mm (ft-in)	2200 (7'3")	2350 (7'9")	2200 (7'3")	2200 (7'3")	2200 (7'3")
Ground Pressure	32 kPa (0.33 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.6 psi)	25 kPa (0.25 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3.6 psi)	33 kPa (0.34 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.8 psi)	32 kPa (0.33 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.6 psi)	33 kPa (0.34 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.8 psi)

 NOTE: • 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.

- \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

#### 0.28 m<sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd<sup>3</sup>) Bucket With Blade

Shoe Width	450 mm (18") Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser Shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Pad Shoe
Application	For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight    kg (lb)	7590 (167000)	7780 (17200)	7760 (17100)	7640 (16800)	7910 (17400)
Base Machine Weight    kg (lb)	5750 (12700)	5940 (13100)	5920 (13100)	5800 (12800)	6070 (13400)
Cab Height            mm (ft-in)	2600 (8'6")	2600 (8'6")	2610 (8'7")	2630 (8'8")	2630 (8'8")
Minimum Ground Clearance            mm (ft-in)	* 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length            mm (ft-in)	2765 (9'1")	2765 (9'1")	2780 (9'1")	2820 (9'3")	2825 (9'3")
Undercarriage Width    mm (ft-in)	2200 (7'3")	2350 (7'9")	2200 (7'3")	2200 (7'3")	2200 (7'3")
Ground Pressure	35 kPa (0.36 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.1 psi)	27 kPa (0.28 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3.9 psi)	36 kPa (0.37 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.2 psi)	35 kPa (0.36 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.1 psi)	36 kPa (0.37 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.2 psi)

 NOTE: • 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.

- \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.


## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### SHOE TYPES AND APPLICATIONS

#### ZX70LC-3 (with Offset Arm Front)

#### 0.28 m<sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd<sup>3</sup>) Bucket Without Blade


Shoe Width	450 mm (18") Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser Shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Pad Shoe
Application	For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight    kg (lb)	7100 (15700)	7280 (16100)	7270 (16000)	7150 (15800)	7440 (16500)
Base Machine Weight    kg (lb)	5260 (11600)	5440 (12000)	5430 (12000)	5310 (11700)	5600 (12400)
Cab Height            mm (ft-in)	2600 (8'6")	2600 (8'6")	2610 (8'7")	2630 (8'8")	2630 (8'8")
Minimum Ground Clearance            mm (ft-in)	* 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length            mm (ft-in)	2920 (9'7")	2920 (9'7")	2935 (9'8")	2975 (9'9")	2980 (9'9")
Undercarriage Width    mm (ft-in)	2320 (7'7")	2470 (8'1")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")
Ground Pressure	30 kPa (0.31 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.4 psi)	24 kPa (0.24 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3.5 psi)	31 kPa (0.32 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.5 psi)	31 kPa (0.32 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.5 psi)	31 kPa (0.32 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.5 psi)

 NOTE: • 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.

- \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

#### 0.28 m<sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd<sup>3</sup>) Bucket With Blade

Shoe Width	450 mm (18") Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser Shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Pad Shoe
Application	For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight    kg (lb)	7680 (17000)	7870 (17400)	7860 (17400)	7740 (17100)	8020 (17700)
Base Machine Weight    kg (lb)	5840 (12900)	6030 (13300)	6020 (13300)	5900 (13100)	6180 (13700)
Cab Height            mm (ft-in)	2600 (8'6")	2600 (8'6")	2610 (8'7")	2630 (8'8")	2630 (8'8")
Minimum Ground Clearance            mm (ft-in)	* 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length            mm (ft-in)	2920 (9'7")	2920 (9'7")	2935 (9'8")	2975 (9'9")	2980 (9'9")
Undercarriage Width    mm (ft-in)	2320 (7'7")	2470 (8'1")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")
Ground Pressure	33 kPa (0.34 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.8 psi)	25 kPa (0.25 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3.6 psi)	34 kPa (0.35 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.9 psi)	33 kPa (0.34 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.8 psi)	34 kPa (0.35 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.9 psi)

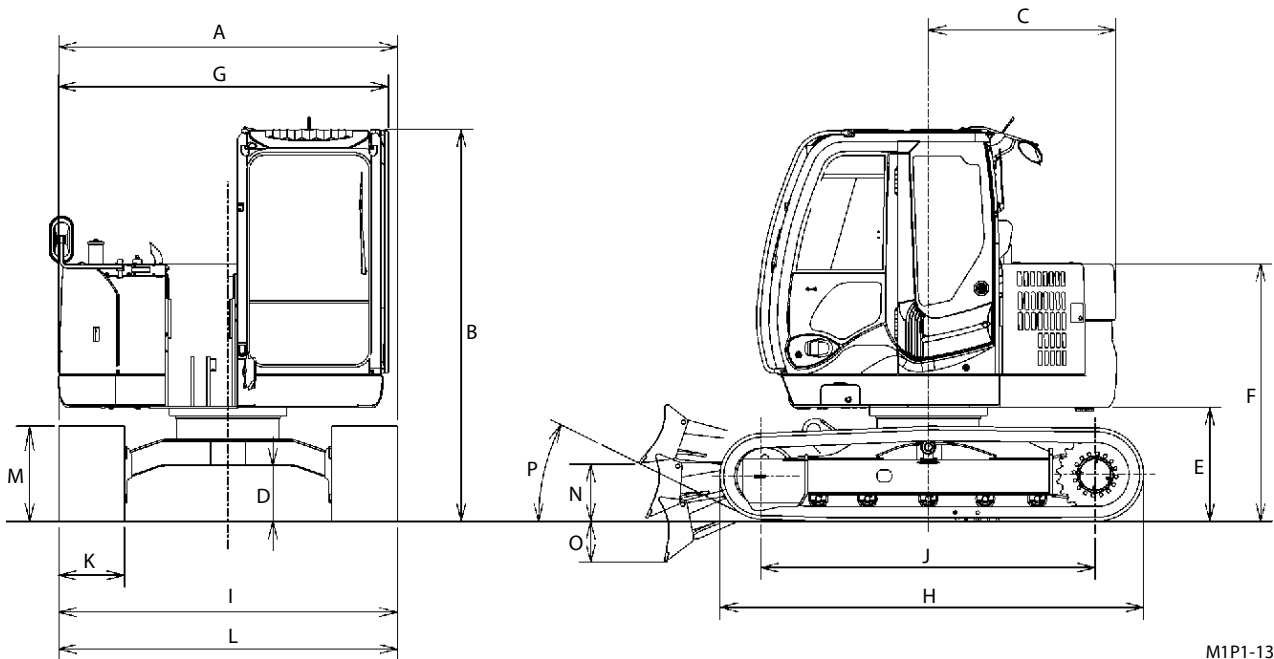
 NOTE: • 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.

- \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### SPECIFICATIONS

#### ZX75US-3 (with Offset Arm Front)



M1P1-13-004

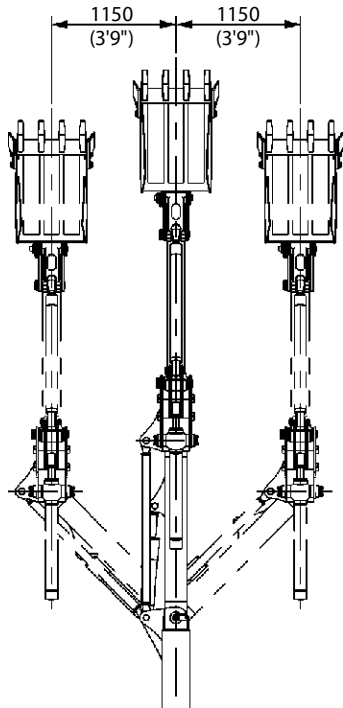
Model	ZX75US-3	
	Without Blade	With Blade
Front-End Attachment	Offset Boom 1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm	
Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	PCSA 0.28 m <sup>3</sup> , CECE 0.24 m <sup>3</sup>	
Operating Weight	7700 kg (17000 lb)	8300 kg (18300 lb)
Base Machine Weight	5800 kg (12800 lb)	6400 kg (14100 lb)
Engine	Isuzu AU-4LE2XYSA-01 40.5 kW/2000 min <sup>-1</sup> (55 PS/2000 rpm)	
A : Overall Width (Excluding Rearview Mirrors)	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)	
B : Cab Height	2690 mm (8 ft 10 in)	
C : Rear End Swing Radius	1290 mm (4 ft 3 in)	
D : Minimum Ground Clearance	*360 mm (1 ft 2 in)	
E : Counterweight Clearance	*760 mm (2 ft 6 in)	
F : Engine Cover Height	*1750 mm (5 ft 9 in)	
G : Overall Width of Upperstructure	2250 mm (7 ft 5 in)	
H : Undercarriage Length	2920 mm (9 ft 7 in)	
I : Undercarriage Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)	
J : Sprocket Center to Idle Center	2290 mm (7 ft 6 in)	
K : Track Shoe Width	450 mm (1 ft 6 in)	
L : Blade Width	-	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
M : Blade Height	-	460 mm (1 ft 6 in)
N : Blade Bottom Highest Position (above ground level)	-	* 360 mm (1 ft 2 in)
O : Blade Bottom Lowest Position (below ground level)	-	* 300 mm (1 ft 0 in)
P : Maximum Approach Angle	-	26.8 degree
Ground Pressure	33 kPa (0.33 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.8 psi)	36 kPa (0.37 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.2 psi)
Offset Distance	0 to 1150 mm (0 to 3 ft 9 in)	
Swing Speed	10.5 min <sup>-1</sup> (rpm)	
Travel Speed (fast/slow)	5.0/3.1 km/h (3.1/1.9 mph)	
Gradeability	35 degree (70 %)	

NOTE: \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

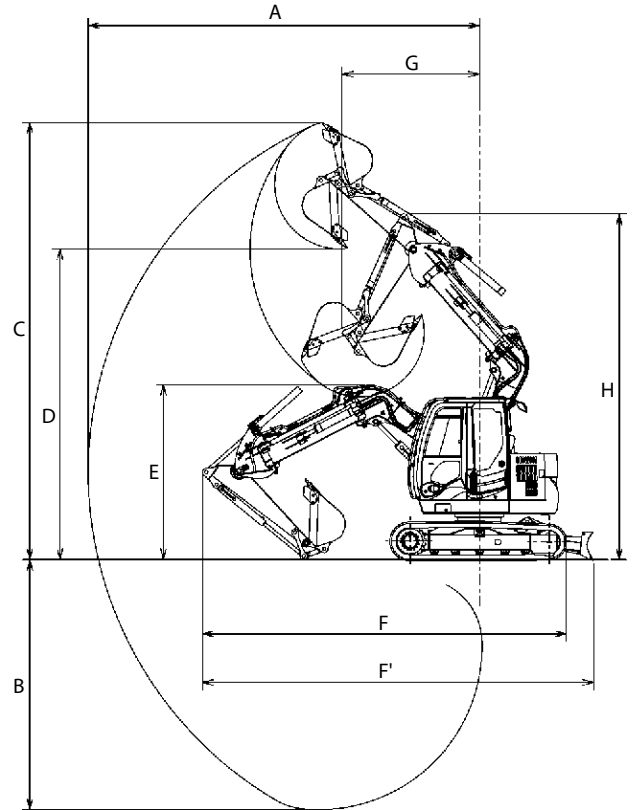
## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### WORKING RANGES

#### ZX75US-3 (with Offset Arm Front)



M1CC-12-010



M1P1-13-014

Item	Category	Working Ranges			
		Off-set Distance (0 mm)		Max. Off-set Distance (1150 mm (3'9"))	
		mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in
A: Maximum Digging Reach		6430	21'1"	5980	19'7"
B: Maximum Digging Depth		4110	13'6"	3650	12'0"
C: Maximum Cutting Height		7190	23'7"	6830	22'5"
D: Maximum Dumping Height		5110	16'9"	4750	15'7"
E: Overall Height		2870	9'5"	2820	9'3"
F: Overall Length (Without Blade)		6040	19'10"	5620	18'5"
F': Overall Length (With Blade)		6440	21'2"	6020	19'9"
G: Minimum Swing Radius		2260	7'5"	L: 2230 R: 2430	L: 7'4" R: 8'0"
H: Front-End Attachment Height at Min. Swing Radius.		5680	18'8"	5330	17'6"

NOTE: "E: Overall Height" includes the height of shoe lug; Other dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.


## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### SHOE TYPES AND APPLICATIONS

#### ZX75US-3 (with Offset Arm Front)

#### 0.28 m<sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd<sup>3</sup>) Bucket Without Blade


Shoe Width	450 mm (18") Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser Shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Pad Shoe
Application	For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight    kg (lb)	7700 (17000)	7900 (17400)	7900 (17400)	7700 (17000)	8000 (17600)
Base Machine Weight    kg (lb)	5800 (12800)	6000 (13200)	6000 (13200)	5900 (13000)	6200 (13700)
Cab Height            mm (ft-in)	2690 (8'10")	2690 (8'10")	2700 (8'10")	2720 (8'11")	2720 (8'11")
Minimum Ground Clearance            mm (ft-in)	* 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length            mm (ft-in)	2920 (9'7")	2920 (9'7")	2940 (9'7")	2970 (9'9")	2980 (9'9")
Undercarriage Width    mm (ft-in)	2320 (7'7")	2470 (8'1")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")
Ground Pressure	33 kPa (0.34 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.8 psi)	25 kPa (0.25 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3.6 psi)	34 kPa (0.35 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.9 psi)	33 kPa (0.34 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.8 psi)	34 kPa (0.35 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 4.9 psi)

 NOTE: • 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.

• \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

#### 0.28 m<sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd<sup>3</sup>) Bucket With Blade

Shoe Width	450 mm (18") Grouser Shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser Shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Pad Shoe
Application	For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight    kg (lb)	8300 (18300)	8400 (18500)	8400 (18500)	8300 (18300)	8600 (19000)
Base Machine Weight    kg (lb)	6400 (14100)	6600 (14600)	6600 (14600)	6500 (14300)	6700 (14800)
Cab Height            mm (ft-in)	2690 (8'10")	2690 (8'10")	2700 (8'10")	2720 (8'11")	2720 (8'11")
Minimum Ground Clearance            mm (ft-in)	* 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length            mm (ft-in)	2920 (9'7")	2920 (9'7")	2940 (9'7")	2970 (9'9")	2980 (9'9")
Undercarriage Width    mm (ft-in)	2320 (7'7")	2470 (8'1")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")
Ground Pressure	36 kPa (0.37 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.2 psi)	27 kPa (0.28 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 3.9 psi)	36 kPa (0.37 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.2 psi)	35 kPa (0.36 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.1 psi)	37 kPa (0.38 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 5.4 psi)

 NOTE: • 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.

• \* The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

---

## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

---

### REGISTRATION/REGISTRATION CANCELLATION OF ORDINARY OPERATION KEY

Be sure to read the following description beforehand.


**Registration:** Makes the machine controller acknowledge the new ordinary operation keys (black) are correctly set to the corresponding registration key.

**Registration Cancellation:**


Makes the registration of the ordinary operation key unavailable in case an ordinary operation key is lost, preventing the lost key from being misused. The remaining ordinary operation keys are re-registered so that the lost key registration becomes null.

#### Preparation for Registration

Check that the engine can be started using the registration key (gray). If not, the key used to start the engine might be the one for another machine. Check whether it is correct one.

 **NOTE:** *Registration cannot be performed if the registration key arranged for the machine is not used.*

Check that the engine can be started with the ordinary operation key having been used. In case the engine does not start, the key used to start the engine might be the one for another machine. Check whether it is correct one.

 **NOTE:** *Do not attempt to re-register the ordinary operation key having been registered for another machine.*

 **NOTE:**

- *The engine cannot be started with an ordinary operation key newly obtained as a service part unless it is registered.*
- *If the engine is attempted to start more than 5 times per 3 minutes with an incorrect key, the security system is activated, causing the horn to sound.*
- *Turn either the registration key (gray) or the ordinary operation key (black) ON to stop the horn.*

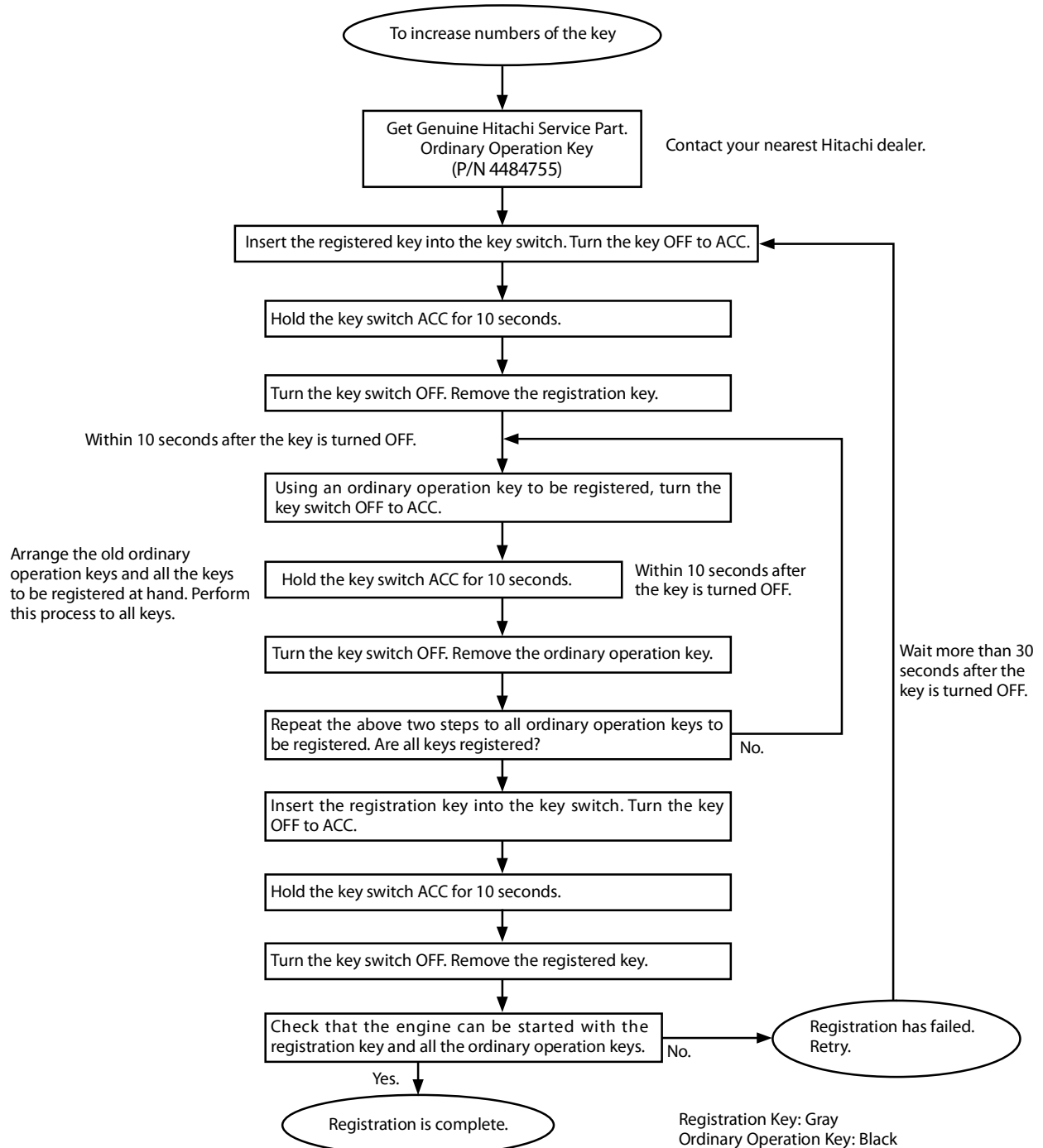


## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### ADDITIONAL REGISTRATION PROCEDURE

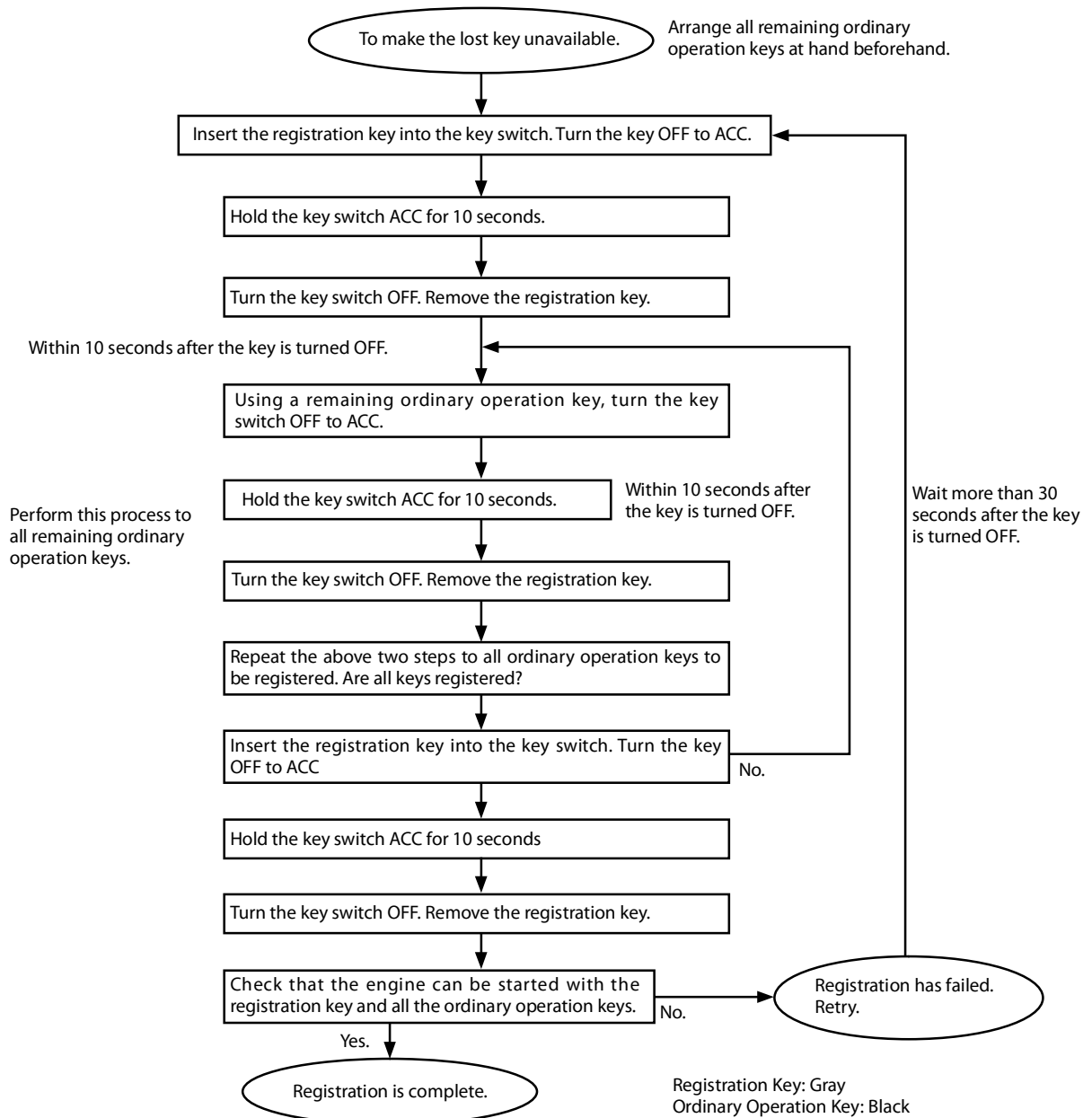
**[To increase the numbers of the ordinary operation keys (black):]**

In case an ordinary operation key was lost, make the lost key unavailable by following the procedure described on next page before performing this registration procedure.



## OPTIONAL ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

### REGISTRATION DEACTIVATION PROCEDURE (To make the lost key unavailable)





# INDEX

<b>A</b>	
Additional Fuse Box (Optional).....	7-64
Additional Registration Procedure.....	13-24
Adjust the Bucket Linkage .....	7-69
Adjust the Operator's Seat .....	5-5
Adjusting Console Height .....	1-79
Adjusting the Seat.....	1-76
Adjusting the Seat (Optional) .....	1-77
After the First 100 Hours .....	2-1
After the First 50 Hours .....	2-1
Air Cleaner .....	7-51
Alarm List.....	1-19
Alarm Occurrence Screen.....	1-18
AM/FM Radio Operation .....	1-64
Attachment.....	5-23
Attachment Connection Parts.....	5-26
Attachment Pedal (Hydraulic Breaker) .....	5-2
Attachment Pedal (Hydraulic Crusher).....	5-3
Auto Air Conditioner .....	1-53
Auto-idle.....	5-8
Auto-idle Switch .....	1-40
Avoid Abusive Operation .....	5-11
Avoid Applying Heat to Lines Containing Flammable Fluids .....	5-29
Avoid Heating Near Pressurized Fluid Lines .....	5-29
Avoid High-pressure Fluids.....	5-25
Avoid Hitting Blade With Bucket.....	5-13
Avoid Hitting Blade With Front-end Attachment .....	5-13
Avoid Injury From Back-over and Swing Accidents.....	5-14
Avoid Injury From Rollaway Accidents .....	5-13
Avoid Power Lines.....	5-18
Avoid Striking The Blade Into A Rock.....	5-13
Avoid Tipping.....	5-16
Avoid Undercutting.....	5-15
<b>B</b>	
Back Monitor Screen Selector (14) (Optional).....	1-10
Back Monitor Setting (Optional) .....	1-32
Basic Screen.....	1-6
Batteries .....	7-58
Before Starting Engine .....	3-2
Beware of Asbestos Dust.....	5-30
Beware of Exhaust Fumes.....	5-28
Blade Lever .....	5-4
Breaker Maintenance .....	5-20, 7-28
<b>C</b>	
Cab Door Release Lever .....	1-67
Cab Features.....	1-3
Cab Heater (Optional) .....	1-60
Cab Heater Operation.....	1-56, 1-62
Cab Light .....	1-49
Change Bucket .....	7-67
Change Coolant .....	7-56
Change Engine Oil .....	7-22
Change Hydraulic Oil .....	7-31
Check and Adjust Fan Belt Tension.....	7-55
Check and Replace EGR Device.....	7-80
Check and Replace Seat Belt Check.....	7-70
Check Bucket Teeth .....	7-65
Check Coolant Level .....	7-54
Check Fuel Hoses.....	7-50
Check Fuel Injection Timing .....	7-80
Check Hoses and Lines .....	7-38
Check Hydraulic Oil Level.....	7-29
Check Injection Nozzle.....	7-80
Check Instruments After Starting.....	3-6
Check Starter and Alternator .....	7-80
Check the Air Conditioner.....	7-78
Check the Hour Meter Regularly.....	7-2
Check Tightening Torque of Bolts and Nuts .....	7-81
Check Track Sag .....	7-72
Check Water Separator .....	7-46
Check Windshield Washer Fluid Level.....	7-71
Cigar Lighter.....	1-48
Clean Air Conditioner Condenser.....	7-57
Clean and Replace Air Conditioner Filter Clean Filter .....	7-74
Replace Filter.....	7-74
Clean Cab Floor.....	7-79
Clean Fuel Solenoid Pump Strainer .....	7-49
Clean Oil Cooler, Radiator and Inter Cooler Front Screen .....	7-57
Clean Radiator Interior .....	7-56
Clean Radiator, Oil Cooler and Inter Cooler Core .....	7-57
Clean the Air Cleaner Outer Element .....	7-51
Clock (13).....	1-8
Clock Setting.....	1-20
Closing Upper Front Window.....	1-70
Components Name .....	1-1
Confirm Direction of Machine to Be Driven.....	5-10
Control Levers.....	11-9
Control Lever (ISO Pattern) .....	5-1
Convert Bucket Connection Into Face Shovel.....	7-68
Coolant Temperature Gauge (21) .....	1-8
Cooling Operation .....	1-57
Cooling System .....	7-53
Correct Maintenance and Inspection Procedures .....	7-1
<b>D</b>	
Defroster Operation .....	1-58, 1-63
Dig with Caution.....	5-17
Displaying Basic Screen .....	1-7
Dispose of Waste Properly.....	5-31
Drain Fuel Tank Sump .....	7-45
Drain Hydraulic Oil Tank Sump.....	7-31
Drive Machine Safely.....	5-11
Drive the Machine Carefully .....	4-1

## INDEX

<b>E</b>	Electrical System ..... 7-58, 11-6	Keep Riders Off Machine ..... 5-7
	Emergency Boom Lowering Procedure (Without Hose-rupture Safety Valve) ..... 5-29	Key Switch ..... 1-47
	Emergency Exit ..... 1-74	<b>L</b>
	Engine ..... 7-21, 11-2	Language Setting ..... 1-35
	Engine Control Dial ..... 1-40	Layout ..... 7-3
	Engine Oil Level ..... 7-21	Loading/Unloading on a Trailer ..... 6-1
	Engine Speed Control ..... 5-7	<b>M</b>
	Engine Stop Knob ..... 1-51	Machine Lifting Procedure ..... 6-5
	Ensure Safety Before Rising From or Leaving Operator's Seat ..... 5-5	Mail (Optional) ..... 1-27
	Equipment of Head Guard, Rops, Fops ..... 5-10	Maintenance ..... 13-13
	Evacuating in Case of Fire ..... 5-28	Maintenance Blade Joint Pins ..... 7-20
	Every 8 Hours or Daily ..... 2-1	Maintenance Guide ..... 7-11
<b>F</b>		Maintenance Guide Table ..... 7-4
Face Shovel Operation ..... 5-11		Maintenance Setting ..... 1-21
Fasten Your Seat Belt ..... 5-6		Maintenance Under Special Environmental Conditions .. 9-1
Follow Safety Instructions ..... 5-2		Measure Engine Compression Pressure ..... 7-80
Front Joint Pins ..... 7-16		Menu Key (15) ..... 1-10
Fuel Gauge (10) ..... 1-8		Menu Screen ..... 1-13
Fuel System ..... 7-43		Miscellaneous ..... 7-65
Fuse Box ..... 1-52		Mode Selection ..... 11-8
<b>G</b>		Monitor Operation ..... 1-7
Getting ON/OFF the Machine ..... 1-2		Monitoring ..... 1-37
General Precautions for Cab ..... 5-4		Move and Operate Machine Safely ..... 5-6
Grading Operation ..... 5-10		Multi Function Monitor ..... 1-5
Greasing ..... 7-16		<b>N</b>
<b>H</b>		Never Position Bucket Over Anyone ..... 5-15
Handle Chemical Products Safely ..... 5-31		Never Undercut a High Bank ..... 5-16
Handle Fluids Safely—avoid Fires ..... 5-19		<b>O</b>
Handle Starting Aids Safely ..... 5-6		Object Handling ..... 5-18
Hood and Access Covers ..... 7-7		Object Handling --- If Equipped ..... 5-30
Horn Switch ..... 1-47		Observe Engine Operation Closely ..... 2-1
Hour Meter (8) ..... 1-8		Offset Arm Front ..... 13-10
Hydraulic Breaker and Hydraulic Crusher ..... 5-14		Opening Side Windows ..... 1-72
Hydraulic System ..... 7-26, 11-10		Opening Upper Front Window ..... 1-68
<b>I</b>		Opening/Closing Overhead Window ..... 1-73
Impossible to Start the Engine ..... 11-1		Operate Only From Operator's Seat ..... 5-7
Inspect and Adjust Valve Clearance ..... 7-80		Operate with Caution ..... 5-17
Inspect Machine ..... 5-4		Operating Backhoe ..... 5-10
Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting ..... 3-1		Operating in Water or Mud ..... 4-8
Inspection and Maintenance of Hydraulic Equipment... 7-26		Operating on Soft Ground ..... 4-6
Installing Fire Extinguisher (Optional) ..... 1-49		Operating Tips ..... 5-12
Investigate Job Site Beforehand ..... 5-9		Optional Function Keys (16, 17, 18 and 19) ..... 1-10
<b>J</b>		Overnight Storage Instructions ..... 5-28
Jump Starting ..... 5-7		<b>P</b>
<b>K</b>		Park Machine Safely ..... 5-19
Keep Person Clear From Working Area ..... 5-15		Parking the Machine ..... 4-9
		Parking the Machine on Slopes ..... 4-9
		Password Revising (Optional) ..... 1-29
		Periodic Replacement of Parts ..... 7-9
		Pilot Control Shut-off Lever ..... 1-50, 5-5

## INDEX

---

Pipings for Breaker and Crusher.....	5-15	Service Air Conditioning System Safely .....	5-30
Power Mode .....	5-9	Service Recommendations for Hydraulic Fittings .....	7-41
Power Mode Switch.....	1-41	Shackle Hole Usage .....	5-28
Practice Safe Maintenance .....	5-21	Shoe Types and Applications (with Blade) (ZX75US-3) .....	12-6
Precaution for Arm Roll-in/bucket Roll-in Combined Operation --- If Headguard-integrated Cab or Rainguard is Equipped .....	5-27	Shoe Types and Applications (ZX70-3, 70LC-3).....	12-3
Precautions For Blade Operation .....	5-4	Shoe Types and Applications (ZX70-3, 70LC-3) (with Blade).....	13-3
Precautions for Breaker Operation.....	5-17	Shoe Types and Applications (ZX70-3,70LC-3) (with Offset Arm Front).....	13-18
Precaution for Communication Teaminal Equipment ....	5-32	Shoe Types and Applications (ZX75US-3) (with Blade) .....	13-6
Precautions for Crusher Operation .....	5-21	Shoe Types and Applications (ZX75US-3) (with Offset Arm Front).....	13-22
Precautions for Lightning.....	5-18	Shoe Types and Applications (ZX80LCK-3) .....	12-9
Precautions For Operating With The Offset Function ...	13-12	Shoe Types and Applications (ZX80LCK-3) (with Blade) .....	13-9
Precautions for Operations .....	5-8	Shoe Types and Applications (ZX85USB-3).....	12-12
Precautions for Welding and Grinding .....	5-28	Specifications (ZX70-3, 70LC-3).....	12-1
Prepare for Emergencies.....	5-3	Specifications (ZX70-3,70LC-3) (with Offset Arm Front).....	13-14
Prepare Machine for Maintenance .....	7-6	Specifications (ZX75US-3) .....	12-4
Prevent Battery Explosions .....	5-30	Specifications (ZX75US-3) (with Offset Arm Front).....	13-20
Prevent Burns.....	5-24	Specifications (ZX80LCK-3) .....	12-7
Prevent Fires.....	5-26	Specifications (ZX70-3, 70LC-3) (with Blade).....	13-1
Prevent Parts From Flying .....	5-23	Specifications (ZX75US-3) (with Blade) .....	13-4
Protect Against Flying Debris .....	5-19	Specifications (ZX80LCK-3) (with Blade) .....	13-7
Protect Against Noise .....	5-3	Specifications (ZX85USB-3).....	12-10
Provide Signals for Jobs Involving Multiple Numbers of Machines.....	5-10	Starting in Cold Weather.....	3-5
		Starting the Engine in Ordinary Temperature.....	3-3
<b>R</b>		Stay Clear of Moving Parts .....	5-22
Raise One Track Using Boom and Arm .....	4-6	Steering the Machine Using Levers .....	4-3
Recognize Safety Information .....	5-1	Steering the Machine Using Pedals .....	4-2
Registration Deactivation Procedure (To Make The Lost Key Unavailable) .....	13-25	Stopping the Engine .....	3-9
Registration/Registration Cancellation Of Ordinary Operation Key .....	13-23	Store Attachments Safely .....	5-23
Remove Paint Before Welding or Heating .....	5-29	Storing the Machine.....	10-1
Remove the Travel Levers.....	7-70	Suction Filter Cleaning .....	7-31
Removing and Storing Lower Front Window .....	1-71	Support Machine Properly .....	5-22
Removing the Machine from Storage.....	10-2	Swing Bearing.....	7-18
Replace Batteries .....	7-61	Swing Internal Gear .....	7-19
Replace Engine Oil Filter .....	7-22	Switch Panel .....	1-38
Replace Fuel Filter Element.....	7-48	Switch Panel (Optional).....	1-45
Replace Hydraulic Oil Tank Filter.....	7-34		
Replace Pilot Oil Filter .....	7-35		
Replace Rubber Hoses Periodically.....	5-24		
Replace Swing Drain Filter Element.....	7-36		
Replace Air Breather Element .....	7-37		
Replace the Air Cleaner Outer and Inner Elements .....	7-51		
Replacing Fuses .....	7-62		
Retighten Cylinder Head Bolt .....	7-80		
Return to basic Screen Key (20).....	1-10		
<b>S</b>			
Safety Signs .....	5-33		
Seat Belt .....	1-80		
Secondary Relief Pressure Adjustment .....	5-16		
Select Correct Track Shoes .....	5-12		

---

## INDEX

---

### T

Tips for Optimal Air Conditioner Usage .....	1-58
Towing Machine a Short Distance.....	4-7
Transmission .....	7-24
Transport Safely .....	S-20
Transporting by Road .....	6-1
Travel Alarm (Optional) .....	4-5
Travel Mode Switch .....	1-41, 4-4
Travel Reduction Gear .....	7-24

### U

Understand Signal Words.....	S-1
Use Correct Fuels and Lubricants .....	7-2
Use Electrical Outlet .....	7-10
Use Handholds and Steps .....	S-5
Using Booster Batteries .....	3-7

### W

Warming-up Operation.....	5-6
Warn Others of Service Work .....	S-22
Wear Protective Clothing.....	S-3
When Installing an Attachment Longer Than Standard Bucket.....	5-27
Wiper/Washer Switch.....	1-43
Work Light Switch .....	1-42
Working Ranges (ZX70-3, 70LC-3).....	12-2
Working Ranges (ZX70-3,70LC-3) (with Offset Arm Front).....	13-17
Working Ranges (ZX75US-3) (with Offset Arm Front).....	13-21
Working Ranges (ZX80LCK-3) .....	12-8
Working Ranges (ZX70-3, 70LC-3) (with Blade).....	13-2
Working Ranges (ZX75US-3) (with Blade) .....	13-5
Working Ranges (ZX75US-3) .....	12-5
Working Ranges (ZX80LCK-3) (with Blade) .....	13-8
Working Ranges (ZX85USB-3).....	12-11

